

THE
HISTORY
OF THE
EMPIRE:

CONTAINING

Its Rise, Growth, Revolutions,
Form of Government, Policy,
Alliances, Negotiations, and the
New Regulations made at the TREATIES
of *Westphalia*, &c.

V O L. I.

Comprehending the HISTORY of the several
EMPERORS who have enjoy'd the Imperial
Throne from the Time of CHARLEMAIN
to ALBERT of *Austria*.

By the *SIR* H. HEISS.

Done into English from the BEST EDITION,
and continu'd down to this Time, with divers Re-
marks, and New AUTHENTICK PIECES.

L O N D O N,

Printed for G. STRAHAN in Cornhill; C. KING in *Westminster-Hall*;
W. MEARS at the *Lamb* without *Temple-Bar*; J. CROKATT at the
Golden-Key over-against *St. Dunstan's Church*; J. ROBERTS in
Warwick-Lane; and W. ROBERTS on *Lambeth-Hill*. MDCCLXXVI.

HISTORY

EMPIRE





To the RIGHT HONOURABLE
Sir ROBERT WALPOLE,
KNIGHT of the most Noble
ORDER of *the* GARTER, &c.
SIR!

A S You honour the
Translation of the
Roman History with
Your Patronage, which is pro-
pos'd to be brought down to
Charlemain ; This, which
commences from that Date,
and contains the History of
the *Roman-German* Empire for

DEDICATION.

near a Thousand Years, aspires to the same Honour; and doubts not, whilst an AUGUSTUS sits on the Throne, to find a MÆCENAS in You: Especially, since this Work is Publish'd at the Expence of a Set of Gentlemen, to bring so valuable a Treasure into our Language.

THE *Former* includes a vast Variety of Counsels and Events in the greatest and wisest Government; and *This* would not dare to beg the Countenance of a Personage of such Rank and Eminence, if it did not contain many important Affairs and Transactions, Treaties and Alliances, which perhaps may *more* concern

DEDICATION.

cern a Minister of State at this Time than the *Roman History* it self.

HOWEVER, the whole Work is a compleat and regular History of above Two Thousand Years, from the Foundation of *Rome* to this Period: And such an Offering, as may, in some Sort, claim Your Honour's Notice and Regard, as being such a one as was never before inscrib'd to One Patron.

THE various Modes and Schemes of Empire, and Fates of Great Men, as appear thro' the Series of this Undertaking, shou'd incline Chief Ministers, above all others, to think of the Chances of this Life, and take Care what Men they Entrust and Advance. a 3 BUT,

DEDICATION.

BUT, whatever other Maxims alter'd with the Face of Time, This was unalterable thro' all Ages: -- *Those who violated Publick Treasure and Credit, were always severely Punish'd; and the Preservers thereof Rewarded with the highest Dignities.*

AND, what then must be due to that *Great Man*, Who, amidst the most distracted State of Publick Treasure and Credit which was ever known, sav'd his distress'd Country from Ruin; and not only dissipat'd all the Clouds, by reforming and settling the *Funds* on the firmest Basis, but, to the Wonder of all *Europe*, rais'd the Public Faith and Credit to an higher Pitch of Reputation than ever appear'd

DEDICATION.

appear'd in any Nation? In such a PRESERVER of his Country, there must be a vast Genius, Resolution and Conduct!

AND, whatever Honours, due to such Merit, are yet wanting, Royal Favour, and the Thanks of the People, will in Time pay, as a just Recompence to Desert, and to set a good Example to Future Ages!

BUT a Private Person shou'd only presume to hint *This*; and think it sufficient to say, that he is,

SIR!

YOUR HONOUR'S

Feb. 13.

1726-7.

Most Obedient,

Humble Servant.

THE

Translator's Preface.



THE following Preface, and Advertisement, and Contents of the Chapters, shew the Scope and Design of this Work, and that it is an History of the Empire of Germany from the Time of Charlemain to Charles VI.

IF the World encourages the Undertaking, the Whole shall be faithfully translated, and published with all convenient Speed; and the Thread of the Story continued to the present Time, upon the Model laid down in French, by an English Hand. There is nothing of this Sort extant in our Language, tho' the Affairs of the EMPIRE take up so much of our Discourse, except the History of Germany, publish'd in 1702, in two Octavo Volumes, which is only a very imperfect Abridgment: Neither is there any Thing, but This, as our Author informs us, professedly written upon this Subject in any other Language. The

Roman

The TRANSLATORS Preface.

Roman History, from the Foundation of *Rome* down to *Charlemain*, which is Publish'd Monthly, and allow'd by the best Judges to be carefully and well perform'd, is propos'd to end where this begins: So that these Works, put together, may be truly call'd a compleat History of the *Roman* Empire from its first Rise to this Time. This Volume contains the History from 768, when *Charlemain* began his Reign, to 1473, when the *Austrian* Family ascended the Imperial Throne; which includes above 700 Years.

WE see here what Honour was formerly done by the *Empire* to the Royal Blood of *England*, by chusing Emperors from hence: And likewise to the present Royal Family, when, in the Year 1400, *Frederick*, Duke of *Brunswick* and *Lunenbourg*, an experienc'd and brave Prince, was Elected to the Imperial Dignity: Whereas the House of *Austria*, who lay so much Claim to Antiquity and Precedency, reach'd not that High Station, so as to fix the Imperial Diadem more in that Family than others,

till

The TRANSLATORS Preface.

till the Year of our LORD 1473; and then only by its Marriage with *Elizabeth*, Daughter of the Emperor *Sigismund*.

THE Reader will find this Note made in Page 369. "*Some Notice was taken of this, and the following Reflections on the Dawn of the Reformation, in the Preface.*" — Our Historian seems to be very impartial in all Cases, making an Allowance for the usual Style and Asperity of *Roman-Catholicks* when they speak of the *Reform'd*. What he says of the Pope, and his Authority, is not immoderate in one of his Persuasion. It would but ill become the Temper and Charity of our Religion, to return any Invectives. Nor let us wonder to find these Reflections on us, even from a Person of such great Abilities and Experience as our Author was, since the Vehemence of those Tenets leads Men to calumniate, without Reason or Justice, all who *differ* from them: Nor is the Translator to be blam'd for giving a genuine Version of the Original. It was intended, when the abovesaid Note was made, to give a short Answer to the usual

Ob-

The TRANSLATORS Preface.

Objections, urg'd against the *Reformation*, in this Place: But as nothing in this Volume reaches within about 100 Years of *Martin Luther*, it is judg'd proper, on second Thoughts, to defer it to a more convenient Place, which may be found in the Course of this Undertaking. In the mean time, as to what is said here of *John Wickliff*, *John Zisca*, *John Hus*, *Ferome of Prague*, and the Council of *Constance*, the Reader is desir'd, for the Sake of Brevity, to consult Mr. *Collier's* Historical Dictionary, and Bishop *Burnet's* Preface to the History of the Reformation, where he will find a sufficient Account, and what Faults there were on both Sides. Yet it may be just hinted here, that the Council which was held at *Constance* in 1414, was call'd to put an End to the Schism which divided the *Romish* Church, that then had Three Popes all at a Time, wherein *Wickliff's* Memory was condemn'd, and *Hus*, and *Ferome of Prague*, order'd to be burnt alive: That the Reformation arose first from *Wickliff* in *England*, whose Doctrine was carry'd into *Bohemia* and the *Empire*; and

~~The~~ TRANSLATORS Preface.

and many Years after sent back from thence to us : That this Council thought it self superior to his Holiness in all Things : And that the Encroachments which the *Turks* and *Saracens* made at this Time upon *Christendom*, were chiefly owing to the Divisions occasioned by the Three Popes, and not without Suspicion of some secret Encouragement given them from *Rome*, in order to support the Papal Authority against the *Eastern* Emperor : Who being subdu'd and enslav'd, together with Four of the Patriarchs, the subtil *Italians*, who had thus out-witted the *Greeks*, took upon them the sole Sovereignty and Supremacy of the *Western* World. But the Holy Religion which, notwithstanding all their Policy, GOD has planted among us, and was brought in by so many concurring Providences, is still so dear to Him, that if We, by our own Unworthiness, do not render our selves incapable of so great a Blessing, we may reasonably hope that He will continue it to Us as long as the Duration of the WORLD.

THE



THE
PREFACE
OF THE
ORIGINAL AUTHOR
MR. HEISS.



Do not think my self at all oblig'd to declare the Motives that induc'd me to write the History of the Empire; the Dignity of so great a State, the Difficulty of diving into its fundamental Maxims, and the present Juncture of the Affairs of *Europe*, are a sufficient Excuse for me. I even hope that the Publick, knowing I am a *German* born, and have always been employ'd in the Affairs of the Princes of the Empire, will receive this Work more favourably from my Hands, than if it was written by an Author that collects only from the Writings of others. However it be, I do not pretend to escape the Reader's Examination. He may, if he pleases, use me with the same Severity wherewith 'tis common to treat those who publish

b

P R E F A C E.

lish Writings; and as I do not flatter my self with the Hopes of Favour, I will not ask it.

I shall rest satisfy'd with telling him, that my Design is not only to humour the Curiosity of such who live in Idleness, and inform themselves of publick Affairs purely for the Pleasure of learning and relating them, whose Taste may be too delicate to dispense with a Stile so unpolish'd as mine, and who, without Doubt, will condemn my Rashness for undertaking to write in the *French* Tongue; but also to inform such as desire to be acquainted with the Truth. And I flatter my self, that they will think themselves oblig'd to me for the Pains I have taken, without criticizing upon the improper Terms, or the Uncoothness of my Expressions: To such I particularly address my self, in giving here a general Idea of this History.

I have divided it into six Books; In the three first I give an Account of the Establishment of the Empire, its Rise, Progress, and Revolutions under the *French* and *German* Emperors, that possess'd the Throne either by hereditary or elective Right from the Time of *Charlemagne*. In the three last will be seen what Alterations the Treaties of *Westphalia*, and the new Regulations made thereupon, occasion'd in the Affairs and States of the Empire.

I have carefully, not only explain'd therein the particular Interests of the different Potentates who acknowledge the Imperial Authority, which could not be done without touching upon the Genealogy of divers great Princes, but also have shewn in what Assemblies, and after what Manner the Deliberations are held, and the Resolutions taken, that regard the common Welfare of the Empire, together with the Ceremonies observ'd in the principal Tribunals of Justice.

And

P R E F A C E.

And, in order to set these Affairs in the clearest Light, I have added certain authentick Acts; such as the *Golden Bull*, *Transactions* relating to the *Publick Peace*, and *Religion*, the *German Concordats*, the *Imperial Capitulations*, and the *Treaties of Westphalia*, with those that regard the Execution thereof, as also other *Imperial Capitulations*, and *Pieces*, which, I hope, will be agreeable to the Reader. This I thought my self the more oblig'd to do, because most of these *Pieces* never yet appear'd in *French*; and those which were published, have been attended with such considerable Omissions, that I thought it absolutely necessary to rectify them.

All these Subjects have indeed been treated of separately by several Authors, in divers Languages; but I can aver, that never any one reduced them into a Body like this, wherein the Reader will find many Observations which have escap'd the Care of those who have written before me.





ADVERTISEMENT

TO THE

R E A D E R

Concerning the Dutch Edition.



HIS History terminates about the Middle of the last Century, viz. at the Treaty of *Westphalia*, concluded in 1648, without taking Notice of the Decease either of *Ferdinand III.* or IV; which last had been elected King of the *Romans*. It was thought necessary, on publishing this new Edition, to continue it down to the Present Times (beginning with the remaining Part of the Life of *Ferdinand III.* the Lives of the Emperors *Leopold* and *Joseph* his Successors) with the same Brevity us'd by Mr. *Heiss* throughout this History; and therefore you'll find that we have but just touch'd upon the principal Events and Causes which carry'd Fire and Sword thro' *Europe*, during the Reigns of the last mentioned Emperors.

To this is added the Succession of the *German* Archbishops, Bishops, and Prelates, and the Genealogies of the Electors and Princes of the Empire, with the greatest Exactness. And, for the

ADVERTISEMENT.

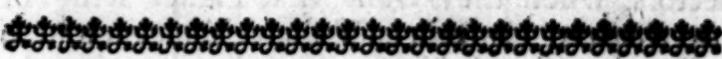
the better Information of the Reader, we have subjoin'd short and curious * Notes, in the Places which were thought necessary, and especially in the Treaties of *Westphalia*, which are, beyond Contradiction, the Foundation of the Liberty of *Germany*, together with some Notes upon the *Golden Bull*: There is also inserted the *Truce* of 1634, and the *Capitulation* of the Emperor *Joseph*, wherein we have made Remarks on the Distinctions, and Additions made by the Electors, when they chose that Prince King of the *Romans*. In short, We have endeavour'd to collect in this Abridgment, all that was thought would contribute to the Satisfaction of the Curious, and the Knowledge of the Present State of *Germany*.

* The Notes, Additions, and Continuations of this new Edition, were done by the *Sieur Bourgeois du Chastenet*, Deputy Plenipotentiary from their Royal Highnesses Monsieur and Madam d'Orleans, at the Conferences of Frankfort for the Affairs of the Palatinat.





T H E C O N T E N T S.



B O O K I.

*The Rise, Growth, and State of the
Empire under CHARLEMAGNE,
and his Successors, to the Time that the
Imperial Dignity was no more Hereditary.*

*Emperors
began to
Reign.*

An.Dom.

| | Pag. |
|---|------|
| C H A P. I. <i>The Origin of the Empire.</i> | 1 |
| 768. Chap. II. <i>Charlemagne.</i> | 11 |
| 814. Chap. III. <i>Lewis the Debonnair.</i> | 59 |
| 840. Chap. IV. <i>Lotbair.</i> | 85 |
| 855. Chap. V. <i>Lewis II.</i> | 90 |
| 875. Chap. VI. <i>Charles II. Sirnam'd the Bald.</i> | 92 |
| 878. Chap. VII. <i>Lewis III. call'd the Stammerer, and Carloman.</i> | 94 |
| 880. Chap. VIII. <i>Charles III. nam'd the Gros, or the Fat.</i> | 96 |
| 888. Chap. IX. <i>Arnold.</i> | 98 |
| 900. Chap. X. <i>Lewis IV.</i> | 100 |
| Chap. XI. <i>The Genealogy of the French Empe- rors.</i> | 106 |

B O O K

CONTENTS.

BOOK II.

Emperors of different Families that have possess'd the Imperial Throne by Election, till the Time of the House of AUSTRIA.

| <i>A. D.</i> | | <i>Pag.</i> |
|--------------|---|-------------|
| 912. | C HAP. I. <i>Conrad I.</i> | 111 |
| 920. | Chap. II. <i>Henry I.</i> | 114 |
| 936. | Chap. III. <i>Otho I. call'd the Great.</i> | 117 |
| 974. | Chap. IV. <i>Otho II.</i> | 130 |
| 983. | Chap. V. <i>Otho III.</i> | 133 |
| 1002. | Chap. VI. <i>Henry II.</i> | 139 |
| 1024. | Chap. VII. <i>Conrad II.</i> | 142 |
| 1040. | Chap. VIII. <i>Henry III.</i> | 146 |
| 1061. | Chap. IX. <i>Henry IV.</i> | 151 |
| 1106. | Chap. X. <i>Henry V.</i> | 193 |
| 1125. | Chap. XI. <i>Lothaire II.</i> | 211 |
| 1139. | Chap. XII. <i>Conrad III.</i> | 216 |
| 1152. | Chap. XIII. <i>Frederick I.</i> | 222 |
| 1190. | Chap. XIV. <i>Henry VI.</i> | 244 |
| 1198. | Chap. XV. <i>Philip I.</i> | 253 |
| 1208. | Chap. XVI. <i>Otho IV.</i> | 260 |
| 1218. | Chap. XVII. <i>Frederick II.</i> | 267 |
| 1250. | Chap. XVIII. <i>Conrad IV.</i> | 289 |
| 1254. | Chap. XIX. <i>William of Holland.</i> | 291 |
| 1257. | Chap. XX. <i>Richard and Alphonso.</i> | 294 |
| 1260. | Chap. XXI. <i>Interregnum.</i> | 297 |
| 1273. | Chap. XXII. <i>Rodolphus of Hapsbourg, call'd the Merciful.</i> | 301 |
| 1292. | Chap. XXIII. <i>Adolphus of Nassau.</i> | 313 |
| 1298. | Chap. XXIV. <i>Albert I.</i> | 317 |
| 1309. | Chap. XXV. <i>Henry VII.</i> | 324 |
| 1314. | Chap. XXVI. <i>Lewis V. of Bavaria, and Frederick III. of Austria, call'd the Fair.</i> | 333 |
| 1348. | Chap. XXVII. <i>Charles IV.</i> | 348 |

C O N T E N T S.

| | | |
|-------|----------------------------------|----------|
| 1378. | Chap. XXVIII. <i>Wenceslaus.</i> | Pag. 358 |
| 1401. | Chap. XXIX. <i>Robert.</i> | 364 |
| 1410. | Chap. XXX. <i>Sigismund;</i> | 367 |

B O O K III.

Emperors of the House of AUSTRIA.

| | |
|-------|---------------------------------|
| 1437. | C H A P. I. <i>Albert II.</i> |
| 1440. | Chap. II. <i>Frederick III.</i> |
| 1493. | Chap. III. <i>Maximilian I.</i> |
| 1519. | Chap. IV. <i>Charles V.</i> |
| 1556. | Chap. V. <i>Ferdinand I.</i> |
| 1564. | Chap. VI. <i>Maximilian II.</i> |
| 1576. | Chap. VII. <i>Rodolphus II.</i> |
| 1612. | Chap. VIII. <i>Matthias.</i> |
| 1619. | Chap. IX. <i>Ferdinand II.</i> |
| 1637. | Chap. X. <i>Ferdinand III.</i> |
| 1657. | Chap. XI. <i>Leopold.</i> |
| 1705. | Chap. XII. <i>Joseph.</i> |

B O O K IV.

*Of the MODERN EMPIRE, and of
the Changes made therein, both with Re-
gard to the Head, and its Members.*

| | |
|---|--|
| C | H A P. I. <i>The Causes and Motives of this Change, and wherein it consists.</i> |
| | Chap. II. <i>Of the Modern Empire.</i> |
| | Chap. III. <i>of the Emperor, and his Election.</i> |
| | Chap. IV. <i>Of the Emperor's Coronation.</i> |
| | Chap. V. <i>Of the Emperor's Preheminence, Rights, and Prerogatives.</i> |
| | Chap. VI. <i>Of the King of the Romans.</i> |

B O O K

CONTENTS

BOOK V.

CHAP. I. *Division of the States of the Empire into three Colleges.*

Chap. II. *Of the College of Electors.*

Chap. III. *Of the College of Princes.*

Chap. IV. *Of the College of the Imperial Cities.*

Chap. V. *Of the Imperial Diets, and other Assemblies of the States of the Empire in general, and of the States of the Circles or Provinces in particular.*

Chap. VI. *Of the Circles in general.*

Chap. VII. *Of the Circles in particular.*

Chap. VIII. *Of the Re-partition, or extraordinary Distribution made by the Circles of the Empire, for the Satisfaction of the Suedish Troops.*

Chap. IX. *Of the Tribunals of Justice in the Empire.*

BOOK VI.

Of the Princes, States, Cities, and other Members of the Empire, in particular.

CHAP. I. *Of the Archbishop of Mentz.*

Chap. II. *Of the Archbishop of Treves.*

Chap. III. *Of the Archbishop of Cologn.*

Chap. IV. *Of the other Archbishops now remaining in Germany.*

Chap.

C O N T E N T S.

- Chap. V. *Of the Grand Master of the Teutonic Order.*
Chap. VI. *Of the Bishops who are Princes of the Empire.*
Chap. VII. *Of the Abbots, and other Prelates, Princes of the Empire.*
Chap. VIII. *Of the King of Bohemia, and House of Austria.*
Chap. IX. *Of the House of Bavaria.*
Chap. X. *Of the House of Saxony.*
Chap. XI. *Of the House of Brandenburg.*
Chap. XII. *Of the House of the Palatine of the Rhine.*
Chap. XIII. *Of the States of the King of Sweden in Germany.*
Chap. XIV. *Of the House of Brunswick and Lünenbourg.*
Chap. XV. *Of the House of Mecklenbourg.*
Chap. XVI. *Of the House of Wirtembourg.*
Chap. XVII. *Of the House of Hesse.*
Chap. XVIII. *Of the House of Baden.*
Chap. XIX. *Of the Dukes of Saxe-Lawembourg.*
Chap. XX. *Of the House of Holstein.*
Chap. XXI. *Of the House of Savoy.*
Chap. XXII. *Of the Princes of Anhalt.*
Chap. XXIII. *Of the other Princes and Marquises of the Empire.*
Chap. XXIV. *Of the Counts, Barons, and Gentlemen, who belong immediately to the Empire.*
Chap. XXV. *Of the Imperial Cities.*
Chap. XXVI. *Of the Hanse Towns.*
Chap. XXVII. *Of the Republick of Switzerland.*



CONTENTS.

The GOLDEN BULL, or Constitution of the Emperor CHARLES IV. on Account of the Elections of Emperors; of the Functions of the Electors; of the Dominions and Rights of the Princes of the Empire, made partly at Frankfort the tenth of January 1356, partly at Metz the twenty fifth of December in the same Year.

CHAP. I. *How, and by whom, the Electors ought to be conducted to the Place where the Election of the King of the Romans is to be made.*

Chap. II. *Of the Election of the King of the Romans.*

Chap. III. *Of the Rank of the Archbishops of Mentz, Cologn, and Treves.*

Chap. IV. *Of the Princes and Electors in common.*

Chap. V. *Of the Rights of the Count Palatine of the Rhine, and the Duke of Saxony.*

Chap. VI. *Of the Comparison of the Princes who are Electors with the other Princes in common.*

Chap. VII. *Of the Succession of the Princes who are Electors.*

Chap. VIII. *Of the Immunities of the King of Bohemia, and the Inhabitants of the said Kingdom.*

Chap. IX. *Of the Mines of Gold, Silver, and other Metals.*

Chap. X. *Of the Coin.*

Chap. XI. *Of the Election of the Electors.*

Chap. XII. *Of the Assembly of the Electors.*

Chap. XIII. *Of the Revocation of Privileges.*

Chap.

C O N T E N T S.

- Chap. XIV. *Of those who are depriv'd of their Fiefs, as being unworthy.*
- Chap. XV. *Of Conspiracies.*
- Chap. XVI. *Of the Pfalburgbers, or Persons who forfeit their Right of Freedom in their respective Cities.*
- Chap. XVII. *Of Defiances.*
- Chap. XVIII. *Of Letters of Notification.*
- Chap. XIX. *Of the Form of full Powers to be given by any Elector who shall send his Ambassadors to the Election.*
- Chap. XX. *Of the Union of the Principalities of the Electors, and the Rights thereunto annex'd.*
- Chap. XXI. *Of the Order of the Archbishops March.*
- Chap. XXII. *Of the Order of the March of the Electors, and by whom the Ensigns of Honour are born.*
- Chap. XXIII. *Of the Archbishops Benedictions in the Emperor's Presence.*
- Chap. XXIV. *Laws publish'd at the Diet of Metz on Christmas-Day, A. D. 1356. by the Emperor Charles IV. assisted by all the Electors of the Empire.*
- Chap. XXV. *Of the preserving the Dominions of the Electors entire.*
- Chap. XXVI. *Of the Imperial Court, and its Manner of sitting.*
- Chap. XXVII. *Of the Offices of the Electors on such Occasions, as the Emperors, or King of the Romans, hold their Court solemnly.*
- Chap. XXVIII. *Of the Imperial and Electoral Tables.*
- Chap. XXIX. *Of the Fees of the Officers, when the Princes do Homage for their Fiefs to the Emperor, or King of the Romans.*

A TABLE

CONTENTS.

A TABLE of the Pieces that serve to prove the HISTORY of the EMPIRE.

*The Articles mark'd with * have been added to this new Edition.*

The German Concordat, or Agreement made between Pope NICHOLAS V. on one Part, and the Emperor FREDERICK III. and the Empire, on the other, on the Manner of filling up the Benefices in Germany, confirm'd by a Bull of the same Pope's the tenth of March, 1448.

Declaration of Pope GREGORY VIII. concerning the Decree made by NICHOLAS V. relating to the Collation of vacant Benefices, during the Months reserv'd for the Apostolick See, according to the Agreements made with the German Nation.

The Transaction concluded and ratify'd at Passaw, under the Authority of the Emperor CHARLES V. between FERDINAND King of the Romans, and some States of Germany, call'd the PUBLICK PEACE, the second of August, 1552.

CHAP. I. *Of the Disbanding of the Troops, and Enlargement of the Landgrave PHILIP of Hesse,*

Chap.

C O N T E N T S.

Chap. II. *Of the Things relating to Religion, the Confirming of the Peace, and the Exercise of Justice.*

Chap. III. *Of the Liberties of the German Nation.*

Chap. IV. *Of the Security and Return of such as have been put to the Ban of the Empire on Account of the War.*

Chap. V. *Of the Abolition of all the Actions and Injuries committed during the War.*

Chap. VI. *Of the Count Palatine OTHO HENRY.*

Chap. VII. *Of the Provision made for the Safety of all concern'd in the War.*

Chap. VIII. *Of the Cities of Goslar and Brunswick,*

Chap. IX. *Of his Imperial Majesty's Obligation to keep the Treaties.*

Chap. X. *Of the Consent given by the Princes, Authors of the War, to the Treaty.*

Chap. XI. *Of the Reciprocal Consent of the King of the Romans, and the Electors who were Arbiters.*

Extract of the Result or Agreement concluded between FERDINAND King of the Romans, and the States of the Empire, in the Diet of Augsbourgh, A. D. 1555, which is commonly call'd the PEACE of RELIGION.

Declaration made by King FERDINAND to the States of the Empire in the Diet at Augsbourgh the fourteenth of September, 1555, which regulates the Manner how the Roman Catholick Prelates must treat their Subjects, who have embraced the Confession of Augsbourgh, with Regard to their Religion.

The Treaty of Peace sign'd at Munster in Westphalia, the 24th of October 1648, by the Ambassadors Plenipotentiaires to their Imperial and most Christian Majesties, and by the other Depu-

C O N T E N T S.

Deputies Plenipotentiaries to the Electors, Princes, and States of the Empire.

The Treaty of Peace between the Empire and Sweden, concluded and sign'd at Osnaburg in Westphalia, the 24th of October, 1648.

The Pope's Protest against the Pacification of Westphalia.

The Capital and principal Agreement for the Execution of the Treaty of Westphalia, concluded in the City of Nuremberg, the twenty sixth of June 1650, and afterwards ratify'd and exchanged by the Generals and Plenipotentiaries of the Armies of the Emperor and Sweden, in Presence, and by the Consent of the Ambassadors, Councillors, and Deputies of the Electors, Princes, and States of the Empire.

Appointment of such as were to be restor'd in three Terms, by Virtue of the Capital Agreement mark'd with the Letter A.

Appointment of those who were to be restor'd in three Months, who are mark'd in the principal Agreement.

The publick Convention concluded at Nuremberg the second of July 1650, between the Ambassadors of the Emperor and the most Christian King, by the Consent, and in Presence of the Ambassadors of the Electors, Princes, and States of the Empire, concerning the Occasion of the Peace of Westphalia.

The Disbanding of both the Imperial and Swedish Troops, in Execution of the Treaties of Westphalia.

* The

C O N T E N T S.

- * *The Treaty between the most Christian King, and divers Princes and States of Germany, sign'd at Mentz the fifteenth of August 1658, commonly call'd, The Alliance of the Rhine.*
- * *Capitulation made between the most Christian King and the Princes of the League of the Rhine, with Relation to the Army to be rais'd by them.*
- * *The Treaty of Truce made between the Emperor and Empire on one Part, and the King of France on the other Part, at Ratisbon, the 15th of August 1684.*
- * *Capitulation made by the Emperor Leopold at his Election at Frankfort, A. D. 1658.*
- * *Capitulation made by the Emperor Joseph, when he was elected King of the Romans at Augsbouurg, the twenty fourth of January, 1690.*
- * *The Privileges and Prerogatives granted to the City of Aix la Chapelle, and its Collegiate Church of Notre Dame, by the Emperors Charlemagne, Frederick I, and Frederick II.*

Pieces added to the Dutch Edition.

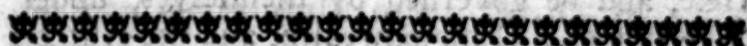
- * *Capitulation of CHARLES VI.*
- * *The Treaty of Peace between his Imperial and Catholick Majesty, and the most Christian King.*
- * *Separate Articles.*

The History and Treaties of the Empire brought down to this Time by an English Hand.

T H E

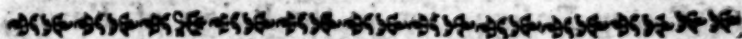


THE
HISTORY
OF THE
EMPIRE.



BOOK I.

The Rise, Growth, and State of the
Empire under CHARLEMAGNE,
and his Successors, to the Time that
the Imperial Dignity was no more
Hereditary.



CHAP. I.

The Origin of the Empire.



IN order to make a compleat Hi-
story of the *German Empire*, 'tis
absolutely necessary to shew how
it received Birth, and the Name
of the *Roman Empire*, though it
had neither the Extent, Power,
nor Dignity of that ancient and vast Empire,
to which so many different Nations were sub-
ject.

ject. And therefore I shall not content my self with deriving its Establishment from the Decline and Ruin of others, but shall go even back to the Origin of the first *Cæsars*, and relate so much of the old *Roman History* as is proper for our present purpose.

ROMULUS laid the Foundation of the City and Kingdom of *Rome* in the Year of the World 3198. Six Kings, his Successors, enlarged its Bounds for about two hundred and fifty Years before the Birth of JESUS CHRIST. But the *Roman People*, being no longer able to bear the Tyranny and Pride of *Tarquin*, the last of their Monarchs, resolved to shake off the *Roman Yoke*, and be governed by themselves, under the Name of a Commonwealth, and the Authority of two Magistrates, whom they called Consuls. This sort of Government was found so beneficial to her, that it lasted near four hundred Years, during which she not only subdued *Italy*, but also many other Provinces in *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, where she carry'd her Eagles.

BUT before I proceed farther, 'twill not be improper to observe, that the Eagle was not always the *Roman Ensign*; for in the Reign of *Romulus* they had no other Banner but a Handful of Hay or Straw, fasten'd to the End of a Rod, called in *Latin*, *Manipuli*, from whence came the Name of their first Troops, which they called *Manipulares*; but afterwards they followed the Example of their Neighbours, and used the Figures or Images of divers Animals fastened to a sort of Pike, ferrul'd at the Bottom, that it might stick in the Ground. Among these were the Figures of Wolves and Vultures; the first to commemorate the Wolf which suckled their Founder, and the other on
account

Chap. I. of the EMPIRE.

account of twelve Vultures, by whose auspicious Omen he obtained the Preference of his Brother *Remus*. When *Tarquinius Priscus* became the fifth King of *Rome*; they chose the Eagle for their principal Ensign, being inform'd by the *Etrurians*, that *Jupiter* was the first Inventor of this Banner, and had taken it for his Standard in his War against the *Titans*. From thence, they said, that the Eagle was carried to the *Cretans*, since called *Candians*, from them to the *Trojans*, thence to the *Latins*, to whom it was brought by *Eneas*, and, in short, from the *Latins* to the *Etrurians*, whose Example was followed by the *Romans*. They did not immediately reject the use of their former Ensigns; but 'tis thought that *Caius Marius*, in the War he waged so successfully against the *Cimbrians*, obliged his Legions to leave all their private Ensigns in the Camp, and only carry to the Battle the Eagle, which was made of Silver, that it might give the greater Lustre, and be more easily discerned by the Soldiers. Each Legion had one; but they were distinguish'd from each other by different Ornaments, to denote the Order and Rank of the Legions, and teach them to know their own with more Ease. The first Cohort of the Legion carry'd it, but that did not hinder the other Cohorts from having their particular Ensigns, according to the Fancy of the Officers who commanded them. Thus the Eagle became the principal Banner of the *Romans*, and remained so; which was afterwards held in such great Veneration, that the Generals of the Armies, who aspired to the supream Power with the Assistance of the Legions, took care to possess themselves of the Eagle first, well knowing that all the World would immediate-

ly take Arms for that Side which was in Possession of the Eagles. It has hardly ever been known that the *Roman* Senate and People, who had the Right to appoint the Emperors and Generals of the Armies, ever refus'd to confirm, or consent to those whom the Legions elected on extraordinary Occasions: Such was the Respect they preserv'd for the Eagles.

WE here, with a good deal of Reason, use the Title *Emperor*; the Word then signify'd no more than *General of an Army*, and only conferr'd an absolute Command and Authority over the Troops; although afterwards it was the Appellation given to the Sovereigns of *Rome*, and Provinces subject to the Empire.

THOUGH its Territories, whilst a Commonwealth, were prodigiously enlarged, and the Republick thereby raised to such a Pitch of Grandeur, as to become formidable to the whole World under the Consular Government; yet such Confusion ensued, that several of the Chiefs of Parties entertained Thoughts of taking the Advantage, and seizing the Sovereign Power; and Attempts were accordingly made. But Fortune at last declared for *Julius Caesar*, who, having triumph'd over the *Gauls*, *Britain*, *Spain*, and Part of *Germany*, defeated *Pompey*, an Assertor of the Liberty of his Country, gain'd of him the famous Battle of *Pharsalia*; and, having no more Competitors that could dispute the Empire with him, became Sovereign Prince, and enjoy'd it peaceably four Years, under the Title of PERPETUAL DICTATOR, whereunto they added that of EMPEROR, which was retain'd by his Successors with the Empire, and all the Marks of Sovereignty.

Chap. I. of the EMPIRE.

THIS first Founder of the Empire was kill'd eight Years after his Return to *Rome*, in the Year of the World four thousand and ten, forty four Years before the Birth of *JESUS CHRIST*, at the Age of fifty six: And this Murder was committed in the Senate-house by *Brutus* and *Cassius*; of whom he was the less suspicious, as having done them many Services, and therefore ranked them among the number of his best Friends. *Brutus* was incited to this bloody Action by his Zeal for the Liberty of his Country; and *Cassius*, through Ambition, though veil'd under the same Pretence of Liberty: Whence one might reasonably judge, that, on *Caesar's* Death, the Sovereign Power would have reverted to the *Roman* Senate and People, as before; but nothing could alter the Destiny of that great Empire.

AUGUSTUS, the adopted Son of *Caesar*, reveng'd his Death: joining with *Anthony* and *Lepidus*, and creating the *Triumvirate*. But as he could not call himself truly Master, whilst the Sovereignty was thus divided, he began to diminish the Power of *Lepidus*, by inticing away his Forces, that he might rid his Hands of him with more Ease; which being effected, he depriv'd him of the Provinces fallen to his Lot, and sent him to *Rome*, where he was reduced to a private Station. This Design having succeeded, he rejoiced at the War's breaking out between him and *Anthony*, wherein he manag'd himself with so much Courage and Conduct, that he became Victor; which Overthrow was soon after followed with the Death of his unfortunate Colleague. Thus *Augustus* became sole Master of the Empire, whose great Success was attended with so much good Fortune and Glory, that, after he

The Death
of Julius
Caesar.
4019.

4111.
Augustus.

The HISTORY Book I.

had enlarged the Empire by several Conquests, he established a general Peace, in the Year of Rome's Foundation, 750, about the Time that JESUS CHRIST, came into the World to give it to all Mankind: and, after having reigned fourteen Years more with all the good Fortune imaginable, he died in the seventy sixth Year of his Age.

A. D. 14. THE Heathen Emperors, who succeeded him in the Empire, did not inherit his Virtue. Most of them, at first, shew'd a great deal of Prudence and Generosity, to gain the Affections of the Senate and People; which being done, and they settled on the Throne, soon indulged their Passions, and thereby plunged themselves into all sorts of Vice, and thence into Tyranny, its inseparable Companion: Insomuch that, as their Lives were lewd and barbarous, so their Deaths were miserable, some being kill'd by their Soldiers, their Guards or Domesticks, and others laying violent Hands upon themselves.

A. D. 306. FROM the Death of *Augustus* they reckon thirty nine Heathen Emperors, who reigned but two hundred ninety two Years, to the time of *Constantine*, surnamed the *Great*, who succeeded his Father *Constantius Chlorus*, and was elected in the Year 306. He was the first Christian Emperor; and he embraced the Christian Religion on a very remarkable Account: Being on full March to fight the Tyrant *Maxentius*, he saw, at Noon-day, the Sign of a Cross in the Heavens, around which, in the Greek Language, were these Words: *Under this Banner thou shalt overcome.* This Prodigy created an equal Astonishment in him, and his whole Army, who saw it, not at first understanding what it meant. But the Night following,

Chap. I. of the EMPIRE.

7

lowing, JESUS CHRIST appeared to him in his Sleep, and commanded him to make a Standard in the Shape of a Cross, after the same manner as that which he had seen the Day before in the Skies, and carry it in his Army on the Day of Battel, if he desir'd to be victorious over his Enemy.

THIS Vision he related to his Friends when he awaked, and at the same time sent for Workmen, and, describing the Form of the Sign he had seen, order'd them to make him one of the same Figure in Gold set with Jewels.

'Twas like a long Pike, the top whereof was cross'd with a piece of Wood like a Crucifix, over which was a golden Crown set with precious Stones of infinite Value, artfully interwoven with the two first *Greek* Letters of the Name of JESUS CHRIST in a Cypher. From the Staff that cross'd the top of the Pike, a Flag of Purple, imbroidered with Gold and Jewels, wav'd in the Wind, at the bottom whereof the Emperor had his own, and his Childrens Pictures imbroidered at half length. This was the Figure of that famous Standard, which was called by the Name of *Labarum*, and which he carry'd at the Head of his Army, as a Pledge of his good Fortune, and a Presage of Victory. In effect, depending upon this, he continued his March, offer'd Battle to *Maxentius*, and entirely routed him. This was the Occasion of this great Emperor's Conversion, and made this Standard revered and respected till the Time of *Julian the Apostate*, who abolish'd the Use of it in his Armies.

A. D. 312.

SOME Years after, he transferred the Seat of the Empire from *Rome* to *Byzantium*, changing its Name to *Constantinople*, that is to say, the City of *Constantine*. He thought that Situation

The Establishment of the Eastern Empire.

most convenient; because from thence he could easily transmit his Orders either to *Europe*, *Asia*, or *Africa*, and could better defend his Frontiers against the Irruptions of the *Persians*, and other foreign Nations.

An. 330.

HAVING named his new City in the Year three hundred and thirty, he divided the Empire into two Parts, the *Eastern* and *Western*, which were afterward called the *Eastern* and *Western* Empires, and often govern'd by two *Cæsars*. Some Authors pretend that 'twas He, who (on account of this Division) made the Alteration which is yet to be seen in the Imperial Arms; that is, that, instead of a plain black Eagle, which former Emperors had always born in their Ensigns from the time of *Augustus*, who (as they say) bore the same; he had a Spread Eagle, with two Heads, crown'd with a close Imperial Crown, as at present; instead of a Laurel Wreath, which was before in Use on all his Standards; and, amongst several Reasons given for this Alteration, the most credible is, that he intended it as a Sign, that both the East and the West had submitted to his Power.

An. 337.

HE died in the Year 337, at the Age of sixty five, not without Suspicion of being poisoned, memorable, amongst other great Actions, for having called the *Council of Nice*.

*Dissentions
between the
Sons of Con-
stantine the
Great about
their Inhe-
ritance.*

A YEAR before his Death, foreseeing the Disorders that might happen in his Family, he endeavoured to prevent them, by dividing his Empire amongst his three Sons. But this Precaution could neither restrain their Ambition, nor curb their Avarice. *Constantine*, the eldest, not content with the Share his Father had given him, wanted to make himself Master of *Italy*, which was the Lot of *Constantine*,
stantius,

Chap. I. of the EMPIRE.

stantius, his younger Brother; and, taking Advantage of his Absence, he march'd that way purposely with a powerfvl Army. *Constantius*, being appriz'd of his Design, sent his Troops to oppole him, under the Conduct of one of his Generals; and the Armies meeting near *Aquileia*, gave Battel, where *Constantine* lost both the Day and his Life.

CONSTANTIUS, seeing himself thus Master of *Italy*, *Gaul*, and *Spain*, with all his Father possessed from the Gulph of *Venice* to the Ocean, and from the *Mediterranean* Sea to *Germany*, took upon himself the Title of *Emperor of the West*, which he lost soon after, together with his Life, by *Magnentius*, who depriv'd him of them both; but he did not long enjoy the Fruits of his Infidelity: *Constans*, the only surviving Son of *Constantine* the Great, finding himself obliged to revenge his Brother's Death, pursued the Tyrant, met him in *Pannonia*, and defeated him in a pitched Battel near the City of *Mursa*. *Magnentius* escaped from the Action, and retired into *Italy*, where he was follow'd by *Constans*, who drove him thence, oblig'd him to fly to the *Alps*, and there entirely routed him in a third Battel. *Magnentius*, finding no further Refuge, threw himself into the City of *Lyons*, where, having first killed his own Mother in a Fit of Despair, he laid violent Hands upon himself; by whose Death *Constans* remained the sole Possessor of all *Constantine* the Great's Dominions. From that Time the Eastern and Western Empires were often separated from each other, and afterwards reunited till the Year 397, when the Emperor *Theodosius* divided them before his Death between his two Sons *Arcadius* and *Honorius*, giving the Eastern Empire to the former,

The two Empires reunited in the Person of *Constantine*, the last of *Constantine* the Great's Sons.

An. 353.

Another
Division of
the Empire
made by
Theodosius
the Great.
An. 397.

400.

476.

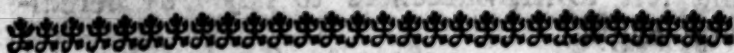
The Empire
is invaded
by several
foreign Na-
tions.

489.

mer, and the Western to the latter. But as they were yet young, and consequently incapable of governing for themselves, they were attack'd by divers Nations, and, not being able to assist each other, the two Empires sustain'd great Losses, especially that of the West, the Successors of *Honorius* retaining hardly any more than the Title of Emperors of the West, nor did they long preserve even that; for, about fifty Years after the Death of *Honorius*, *Augustulus*, the last of these Emperors, being taken Prisoner, and confin'd in a Castle near *Naples*, by *Odoacer*, King of the *Herules*, the latter made himself Master of *Italy*, and gave Rise to the Kingdom of the *Herules*, which did not continue long; for, a few Years after, the *Ostrogoths* entring, with the Consent of the Emperor *Zeno*, in the Year four hundred eighty nine, under the Conduct of their King *Theodorick*, he conquer'd, and put to Death *Odoacer* with his Son, and made himself Master of the Kingdom, without assuming the Title of Emperor, though it was offer'd him.

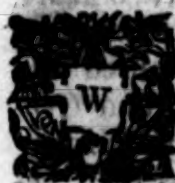
NEITHER was the Government of the *Goths* of long Continuance in *Italy*; they remained there but about fifty eight Years, when that People were almost entirely exterminated by *Belisarius* and *Narses*. The *Lombards* establish'd themselves upon their Ruins, and were Masters of *Italy* till the Time of *Charlemagne*, who freed *Rome* from that shameful Bondage, under which she had groan'd for many Ages, and re-established the Western Empire, as will be seen in the sequel of this History.

CHAP.



CHAP. II.

CHARLEMAGNE.



WE shall no longer mention the Emperors of the East, because their Empire was entirely at an End in the West, under the Reign of *Constantine the Younger*, and his Mother *Irene*, and devolv'd upon the Person of *Charlemagne*. The Valour and prudent Conduct of this Prince obscured and obliterated their Memory in such a manner, that, in a little time, they were hardly known; and as, on the one hand, his Reign was but a continued Series of Victories and Conquests; so, on the other, the Reigns of those Emperors were but a Chain of Losses and Misfortunes. Whilst they were thus hurrying on to their utter Ruin, let us see by what Means *Charles* recovered the Empire of the West, and to what a pitch of Grandeur he carry'd it, till he had it declared the only *Roman Empire*. But, in order to set in a clear Light what promoted this great Establishment, and to illustrate this Prince's Virtue, his Zeal for Religion, his heroick Actions, and all the other extraordinary Qualities that were conspicuous in his Person, I shall be obliged to enter into a Detail of his whole Life: For this end I shall enlarge a little upon his principal Actions, especially upon his Conquests, that we may the better know what this his glorious Inheritance consisted of, which he held only of God, and his Sword,

CHARLE-
MAGNE.
An. 552.

and

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

and left to his Successors to enjoy by hereditary Right.

His Mother, *Bertrade*, who was of the Blood Royal, and lawful Queen to *Pepin*, King of *France*, brought him into the World the twenty eighth of *January*, 747, in the Palace of *Ingelheim*, two Leagues from *Mentz*, though some will have it that he was born at *Constance*, and others affirm that it was at *Carlsberg* near *Munich* in *Bavaria*. This Birth caused the more Joy in the Christians of *France* and *Germany*, because a new Star, of an extraordinary Brightness, appearing in the Heavens both before and at the Time of his coming into the World, they reckoned it as a certain Presage that the Child would be made the Instrument by God to carry the Light of the Gospel amongst the *German* Heathens, which accordingly happened.

PARTICULAR Care was taken of his Education; of which he made so good Use, that he became the Admiration of the whole Court for his Wisdom. He had from his Youth the BIBLE and a SWORD carried before him, declaring that he would edify Christians by the one, and defend them by the other. His good Temper won him the Heart of King *Pepin*, his Father, who, from the Moment that he saw him capable of acting, thought he could not trust the Command of his Armies in *Gascony* in better Hands than his Son's; where *Charles* gave the first Proofs of his Courage.

An. 768.

PEPIN dying the twenty eighth of *October*, 768, his two Sons, *Charles* and *Carloman*, divided his Dominions. *Charles* had the Western *France*, and *Carloman* the East, or *Austrasia*: They were both acknowledged as Kings, and crowned;

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

13

crowned; the first at *Worms*, others say at *Noyon*, and *Carloman* at *Soissons*.

CHARLES-
MAGNE.

CHARLES being desirous to continue the War he had begun in his Father's Life-time against *Hunold*, Duke of *Aquitain*, who persisted in his Revolt, endeavour'd by his Ambassadors to gain over his Brother *Carloman's* Consent. But finding he could not compass his Design that way, because *Carloman* being of an odd Temper, and susceptible of bad Impressions, had conceived a violent Jealousy of him; he resolv'd to go in Person to visit him, that he might remove that Jealousy, and that the World might believe there was a good Understanding between them. He had a Conference with him about this Enterprize, and, in order jointly to bring it to a Conclusion, he prevail'd so far upon *Carloman*, that he engaged him to join Forces with him; who, falling again into Distrust of his Brother, left him half way. However, this did not hinder *Charles* from continuing his March at the Head of a considerable Army, towards the Capital of *Aquitain*, whereof he soon made himself Master, together with all the rest of the Province; he even drove his Enemies beyond the *Garonne*, where they retir'd to *Wolf*, Duke of *Gascony*. But *Charles*, not content with an imperfect Victory, and, depending upon the Justice of his Cause, summon'd the Duke, demanding *Hunold* to be delivered up to him, threatening, on Refusal, to come himself and take him out of his Custody: *Wolf*, terrify'd at this Menace, not only sent *Hunold*, with his Wife and Children, but also put himself under the Protection of *Charles*, that he might not expose either his Person or his Country to the Resentment of the Conqueror.

An. 769.

THUS

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

THUS *Aquitain* lost for that Time the Title of a Dukedom; but some time after, *Charles* erected it into a Kingdom in favour of one of his Sons; but he nevertheless created Counts, and made them Sub-Governors of this Province. These Counts, as well as the Dukes and Marquisses, were at first generally liable to be turned out, according to the Pleasure of the Sovereign.

THE Dukes were superior in Dignity to Counts, and had the Government of Provinces, the Command of Armies, and the principal Administration of Justice; they had usually Counts with them, who were called in *Latin*, *Comites*, that is to say, Companions; because they were given to the Dukes as Assistants to do Justice; however, when these Dukes were either wanting or absent, they had often Authority to command the Forces and Provinces where they were settled. The Word *Duke* came from the *Latin*, *Dux*, which is a General; because the chief Employment of the Dukes was to command Provinces and Armies. The Office of Marquisses was to be Governors of the Frontiers called *Marches*; for which reason they who had such Governments, were styled Marchis, and afterwards, by Corruption, Marquisses, or, in the *German* Tongue, Markgraves, that is to say, Counts of the Frontiers. There were Dukes, whose Power was much superior to the others, being sometimes Governors even of many Provinces; but of these there were very few. There were Counts also, who had greater Jurisdiction than others; as the Counts of the Kings or Emperors Palace, whence came the Title of Counts Palatine, who administer'd Justice in case of their Absence, or any other Hindrance, and had the Cognizance of supream Causes,

Causas. The other Counts were settled in the Provinces, and from them are deriv'd the *Land-graves*, a German Word which signifies the Counts of the Country. Some were likewise often sent into Towns (whence comes the Title of *Burgrave*) to distribute Justice, take care of the Prince's Revenue, and superintend the raising of the publick Money. In the Beginning, these Titles of Dukes, Marquisses, Counts, Land-graves, and Burgraves, were but Titles of Offices and Governments, not of Inheritance; and were only granted for a limited time, sometimes more, sometimes less, according to the Merit or Quality of the Persons, or other Motives; but, in Process of Time, the Properties of Provinces, Countries, Lands, and Cities, were annex'd to these Titles, before which these Dukes, Counts, and others, were but Administrators of the publick Affairs: And these Provinces, &c. with these Titles, were granted to some Noblemen for their Lives, to others for ever in their Families from Male Heir to Male Heir, or otherwise, on Condition of defending the Country, and of holding them by Fealty and Homage to the Sovereign. As to the regal Dignity, it was absolutely perpetual and independent, unless it had been conferr'd on such as were invested with it, on Condition of holding it of him from whom they had received the Crown.

CHARLES
MAGNE.

As soon as Charlemagne had settled Affairs in An. 770
Aquitain, he return'd into *Germany*, and went to pass the *Christmas* at *Mentz*, and the *Easter* at *Heristal*. Herein he, and his Successors, imitated his Father *Pepin*, who celebrated these Festivals with the greatest Solemnity. On these Festival-days they appeared in all their Royal Robes and Ornaments, having the Crown upon

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

An. 771.

upon their Heads, and attended by all their Officers and Grandees of the Kingdom, who were all invited thereto. This was called holding a plenary Court, which the Historians of that Time never fail to mention every Year, and even so much as the Place where 'twas held. From thence he went to *Worms*, where the Assembly of the States General of the Empire (since term'd the Diet) was called together. Herein he deliberated with them upon, and consulted proper Means for keeping the *Saxons* within their due Limits, and to reduce that fierce, idolatrous People, who only liv'd upon the Spoils of their Neighbours. Whilst he was preparing for this Expedition, he received News that his Brother *Carloman* was dead of a Bleeding at the Nose, which could not be stopped. This Accident obliged him to defer the Execution of his projected Scheme, till after he had secured to himself the Succession to his Brother's Dominions. It was of the utmost Importance to him to become Master of them; and the Occasion was favourable: Most of the *Austrasian* Nobility and Prelates demanding him for their King. He therefore repaired to the Dominions of his Brother, and took Possession thereof with the joint Consent of the States and People, who submitted voluntarily to his Obedience, whereby all the Provinces, whereof his Father *Pepin* was possessed, were reunited under his sovereign Power. *Gerberge*, *Carloman's* Widow, called by some *Berte*, or *Bertrade*, had taken flight before the coming of *Charles*, for fear of being seiz'd, and sought Refuge with her Children in *Bavaria*. From thence she retired with them to *Didier* King of *Lombardy*, who received them very honourably, espoused their Interest, and even solicited the Pope

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

17

Pope to crown the Sons of *Carloman* Kings; but though he made his Addresses for that purpose in a very polite manner, yet could not prevail. As there had been already great Causes of Enmity between *Charles* and *Didier*, the chief whereof was, that *Charles*, having married that King's Daughter, nam'd *Theodore*, or, as others say, *Hermengarde*, had put her away a Year after, on pretence of her having the Leprosy, the Refuge and Protection which the *Lombard* had granted to *Gerberge* and her Children, exasperated *Charles* afresh; and made him think of revenging himself on him. He strengthened himself the more in this Resolution, being at that Time powerfully solicited by the Pope; and the *Romans*, to pass the Mountains immediately, and deliver them from the Tyranny of the *Lombards*, and the Oppression under which they had long made the Holy See to groan. But he was willing, before he set in earnest about the Affairs of *Italy*, to consummate the Marriage that had been proposed to him with *Hildegarde*, Daughter of *Hildebrand* Duke of *Suabia*; and also to execute the Resolutions he had made a Year before in the Diet held at *Worms* against the *Saxons*, for the Reduction of those Barbarians, even by Fire and Sword. To this end he march'd against them with a powerful Army; but he was oblig'd to halt at the Head of the River *Lippa*, near *Hermenfeil*, on account of an excessive Drought, which would infallibly have destroyed his Forces, if God, by a miraculous Providence, had not three Days after sent down Water enough from the top of a Hill to refresh the whole Army. 'Twas not till the fourth Day that he advanced towards the *Weser*, where he obliged the *Saxons*, being terrified at the Sight

CHARLES
MAGNE.

An. 772;

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

Charles-
magne's
Expedition
into Italy,
to revenge
himself on
Didier, and
re-establish
the Pope.
773.

Sight of so many Forces as they had drawn up on their backs, to submit themselves, and give him twelve Hostages, as an Assurance of their Fidelity.

IN the mean while *Didier* persisted in persecuting the Pope and the Romans: He even ridicul'd the French, and said, he did not value the barking of those Curs, trusting to his Forces, and the Difficulty of passing the Alps; but *Charles* made him soon change his Tone. He undertook the Expedition into Italy with two Armies, which he caused to pass the Alps, one at Mount *Cenis*, commanded by himself in Person, and the other at Mount *Jou*, under the Conduct of his Uncle, Prince *Bernard*. They forced the Barricades and the Passes with more Labour and Expence than Bloodshed, meeting with but little Resistance. On their Arrival in *Lombardy*, *Didier* quitted the Field, and threw himself into *Pavia*, with his Queen *Gausa*, his Children, and best Troops. *Charles* immediately made himself Master of *Verona*, and, without Loss of Time, laid siege to *Pavia*, whereof *Didier* made such an obstinate Defence, that *Charles* had leisure enough to go to *Rome*, where he met with a very magnificent Reception from Pope *Adrian I.* and the whole Roman People. During his Stay there, some Authors affirm that the Pope, the Senate, and the Roman People, looking upon *Charles* as their Deliverer, and come on purpose to free them from the Oppression of the *Lombards*, submitted themselves to him, and tender'd him the same sovereign Power as the former Emperors had over them and their City. Pursuant to this they took the Oath of Allegiance to him in *St. Peter's Church*, and upon his Tomb, as to their Sovereign; and ratified the whole solemn-

Charles
goes to
Rome,
which sub-
mits to him,
and con-
firms the
Gift of King
Pepin to
the Pope.

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

solemnly by an authentick Act, which is the famous Decree of *Adrian I.*

CHARLES-
MAGNE.

By this Title, besides his sovereign Power over *Italy*, as his undoubted Conquest, he was declared a *Patrician* of the City of *Rome*, which was the next Degree to the Empire; and in this Quality he had a Right, as well as the former Emperors above two hundred Years before, to confirm the Election of the Pope, and to give the Investiture of Bishopricks throughout all his Dominions.

CHARLES, on his side, confirm'd, in favour of the Church of *Rome*, the Gift his Father *Peppin* had made her of the *Exarchate* of *Ravenna*, after he had conquer'd it from *Astolphus*, King of the *Lombards*; as also of the Marquisate of *Ancona*, of the Cities of *Bologna*, *Mantua*, *Cesenna*, *Modena*, *Regio*, *Parma*, *Piacenza*, *Ferrara*, *Farnese*, and some other Places and Castles belonging to this *Exarchate*, which deriv'd its Name from the Title of *Exarch*, which the Emperors gave to their Prefects, Governors, or Lieutenants, whom they appointed to command those Parts in their Name.

774

Thus the *Exarchate*, which the Emperors, and after them the *Lombards*, had possessed for the space of seven hundred and fifty Years, was transferr'd from their Hands into the Pope's. *Charlemagne* added also the Gift of several other States; as also of the Island of *Corfu*, of the River of *Genoa*, the upper *Tuscany*, the State of *Urbino*, and other Places; and, having thus settled Affairs, return'd with all speed to *Pavia*, to put an End to the Siege.

THE greatest Part of the Soldiers and Inhabitants that were in the Town, were dead either of the Plague or Famine. This extream Misery obliged *Didier* to surrender at Discretion,

The Reduction of Pavia and King Didier.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

tion, and *Charles* banish'd him with his Wife to *Liege*, where he ended his Days in the Year 782. His Son *Adalgises* dy'd at *Constantinople*, whither he had withdrawn, and settled, after having receiv'd the Title of *Patrician*, where-with the Emperor of the East had honour'd him.

CHARLES having reduc'd *Pavia*, and all *Lombardy*, and having fortify'd the Places, and restored to the Pope and the *Romans* all that the *Lombards* had taken from them, return'd into *Germany*, where his Presence was extremely necessary.

War with
the Saxons.

THE Saxons persisted in their natural Perfidiousness, in spite of all the Assurances they had given *Charlemagne*, that they would keep their Words faithfully. He had persuaded them to live in Peace; but they, being willing to take advantage of his Absence, would not hearken to his Persuasions, but continued their IncurSIONS and Ravages in *Franconia* more obstinately than ever. To suppress these Disorders, this great Prince therefore assembled his Council, and took a Resolution to declare War once more against them. In the following Year, 775, he took the Field, with an Intent to bring them to Reason, and particularly to make them renounce their Idolatry, which was the Source of their Insolence and Rebellions; and one may easily judge of the Obstinacy of these *Barbarians*, by the length of the War, which lasted thirty Years, whereby the Christians gained great Advantages, and that Prince the greater Glory, having, by the singular Grace of God, more Courage to enable him to overcome this fierce Nation, than they had Obstinacy to resist him. In fine, after abundance of Success, and, gaining two
signal

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

221

signal Battles, wherein the Saxons lost above eighty thousand Men, he reduced them to his Obedience, and not only made them deliver up the Chiefs of their Country as Hostages, for an Assurance of their Fidelity; but, to deprive them of any Opportunity to break out again into Rebellion, he transported into *France* and *Italy* above twenty thousand of the best Families that lived along the *Elbe*. By which means he put it out of their Power to violate the Treaty just made with them, whereof one of the principal Conditions was, *That they should renounce their Idolatry; and that the CHRISTIAN Religion should be establisht throughout Saxony.*

CHARLES
MAGNE.

IF any one would dive into the Reasons which induced him to undertake this extraordinary Enterprize, there would be found three principal Motives. The first, was his Design to root out the Idolatry of these People, who had always refused to acknowledge the true God; instead of whom they adored the Statue of *Mars*, which was erected upon a Pillar, adorned with Flowers, as their Deity. This Statue had in its Right Hand a Banner, whereon a Rose was painted, and in the Left a pair of Scales; and its Breast cover'd with a Bear's Skin, with an Escutcheon, whereon a Lion was represented; this Idol was plac'd before the Castle of *Heersbourg*, so fortified by the Saxons, that they thought it impregnable. They took Refuge there as in an *Asylum*, where they expected to find both Safety and Happiness. They called the Sanctuary by the German Name, *Federmanseil*, or, by an Abbreviation, *Femansseil*, or *Hermanseil*. The second Motive was, because they would never acknowledge him for their Sovereign; but chose a

Motives
that enga-
ged Charles
in the War
with the
Saxons.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

Chieftain from amongst themselves, whom they obeyed with this Reserve nevertheless, that they would be subject to him no longer than they thought proper. The third Reason was their Treachery; having broken their Word so often, and even their Promises which they had sign'd, seal'd, and sworn to, insomuch that he was at last obliged by force to bring them under Subjection.

I will not here enlarge upon the other Wars which *Charlemagne* carry'd on, even during the Time that he was employ'd against the *Saxons*. The Duke of *Lutgard*, on whom he had conferr'd the Government of *Friuli*, was one of those who took advantage of the Business those People cut out for him, by revolting and seizing on some Cities in *Italy*; of which *Charles* being appriz'd, march'd against him, conquer'd, and condemn'd him to Death, and gave the Government of that Province to Counts whom he had established there; which done, he return'd into *Germany* the same Year seven hundred seventy six.

776. THE Count *Ibinalarabi*, Governor of several Provinces and Places in *Spain* for the *Saracens*, came to *Paderborn* in *Westphalia*, with a great Number of Noblemen his Friends, offering *Charles* the Places under his Government, together with the sure Means to reduce others in the Power of the *Mahometans*. *Charles* accepted the Offer, and levied in the Beginning of the Year 778 a great Body of Forces, which he divided into two Bodies. The one he ordered to pass thro' *Roussillon*, and, not meeting with any Resistance, he easily possessed himself of *Saragoza*, and all the Country on this Side the *Ebro*. The other, which he commanded in Person, advanced by *Navarre* as far

as *Pampeluna*, which he took, but upon Terms, and after a very long Siege. This Success was follow'd by a Disgrace; for, at his Return, the *Gascons* being informed which way he march'd, rush'd out on a sudden from their Rocks, so that they fell upon his Rear at the Pass of *Roncevalles*, and put it to the Rout. In this Onset he lost a great many brave Men, among whom were not only *Egbart* and *Anselm*, the one Major, the other Count of the Palace, but the famous *Rowland*, his Nephew by his Sister, who was Marquis or Governor of the Marches or Coasts of *France*, the whole Length of the *British* Channel.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

Defeat of
Charle-
magne's
Rear.

THIS did not prevent his continuing his Rout, and, having reach'd *France*, he directed his March towards the Western Ocean, in order to gain *Brittany* with all speed, those People having rebelled against him; but, on his Arrival, his Arms soon forced them to return to their Duty; and then return'd into *Saxony*, from whence he went to *Franconia*, with an intent to prepare all things for a Journey into *Italy*.

IN the Year 780 he set forward on his Way, out of a Motive of Devotion, with his Wife and Children; and was received by Pope *Adrian* at *Rome* with all possible Honour; and, on *Easter* Day, his Holiness performed the Ceremony of baptizing and crowning this Prince's two Sons, viz. *Pepin*, the eldest, who was proclaimed King of *Italy*; and *Lewis*, the youngest, who was declared King of *Aquitain*.

Charle-
magne's
second Tour
into Italy.

AFTER the Holy-Days *Charles* sent Ambassadors to *Tassilon*, Duke of *Bavaria*, to invite him to pay Homage, and take an Oath of Allegiance to the new Kings, *Pepin* and *Lewis*, whom

CHARLES-
MAGNE.

781.

A new War
against the
Saxons.
782.

whom he would have acknowledged through-
out his Dominions. *Tassilon* promised he would,
and did it accordingly at *Worms* in the Year
781, when *Charles* was returned from *Italy*.
But *Tassilon*, as we shall see, did not continue
long in his Duty.

THE Year following 782, *Charles* sent Or-
ders, towards the End of the Spring, to his
Troops to march against the *Saxons*, who had
again taken the Field. He had drawn toge-
ther his Army in the Eastern *France*, and
Thuringia, by the Help of his principal
Officers, *Adalgises*, his Chamberlain; *Geilon*,
his Master of the Horse; and *Wolrad*, Mar-
shal of his Court. He had also command-
ed *Thierry* his Relation to form another Army
in *Ripuarua*, which then comprehended all the
Countries situated between the *Elbe* and the
Rhine. *Thierry* was upon March to join the
other Troops near the River *Weser*, which was
the Place of Rendezvous. The chief Comman-
ders, jealous of his Arrival, resolv'd, without
waiting for him, to attack the *Saxons*, who
were incamp'd near *Sintal*. *Adalgises* there-
fore, with *Geilon* and *Wolrad*, order'd their
Forces to pass the *Weser*, and posted themselves
along this River. But they were defeated by
the *Saxons*, and the Runaways were obliged to
take Refuge even in *Thierry's* Camp. The
French and *Thuringians* lost in Battel above
ten thousand Men, most Part whereof were
kill'd upon the spot, and almost all the others
died of their Wounds. *Adalgises* and *Geilon*,
with four Counts, twenty Knights, and above
one hundred Gentlemen, were of this Num-
ber.

UPON the News of this Defeat, *Charles* march-
ed with another Army to *Thierry's* Assistance;
where-

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

25

whereupon the Saxons, being informed of the Arrival of all these Forces, against whom they were no ways able to make head, thought it would be more proper to have recourse to an Accommodation, by a voluntary Submission, than to be obstinate, and expose themselves, by a vain Resistance, to harder Terms. Hereupon they resolved to send to him their principal Officers to ask Pardon for their Disobedience. But, instead of granting their Request, he caus'd them to be seiz'd, and, without accepting of the Excuse they brought, which was, *That through the Advice of their Duke Witelkind they had persisted in their Revolt; and that He, as the Author of that Mischief, had immediately fled to the Normans to implore their Protection,* Charles was determin'd to make an Example of these Rebels, and to chastise, by a publick Punishment, their Breach of Faith, and frequent Insurrections: And that it might be the more memorable, he caus'd five thousand five hundred, or, as others say, four thousand five hundred Saxons to be beheaded in the City of *Ferden, or Werden, near the River Aller.*

CHARLES-
MAGNE.

THIS Execution did not prevent these People from relapsing again the following Year 783, into their usual Disloyalty; whereby he was again obliged to march against them. This fell out after he had celebrated the Funeral of his Wife *Hildegarde*, who died the last of *April* the same Year at *Tbionville*, where he had spent the Winter. The Rebels were divided into two Bodies, the one was posted at *Tiſmel* in *Westphalia*, and the other near the River *Hafs.*

783.

Death of
Hildegarde
Charles-
magne's se-
cond Wife.

CHARLES having received this Information, resolv'd to attack them whilst separate; here-
upon

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

Defeat of
the Saxons
in West-
phalia.

Charle-
magne
marries a
third time.

upon he advanced with his whole Army to-
wards *Tidmel*, and overthrew them. From
thence he passed on to the *Hafs* beyond *Pader-
born*, where he put the rest of their Troops to
the Sword: And after this successful Expedi-
tion, he went to *Franconia* to marry *Fastrade*,
Daughter to *Rodulphus*, Count of that Province,
who had, through the paternal Care of her
Father, all the Advantages of a polite Edu-
cation; of which she made so good a Use, that
she not only gained the entire Affection of
Charlemagne's Children by his second Wife,
and particularly *Charles* the eldest, but the
Esteem and Love of all the World.

784.
He con-
tinues the
War a-
gainst the
Saxons, and
reduces
them.

CHARLEMAGNE being returned into the
Territories of *Liege* in the Year 784, to cele-
brate the Holy-Days of *Christmas*, and *Easter* at
Heristal, found himself again obliged to pass
the *Rhine* at *Lippenheim*, to reduce the Saxons
in *Thuringia*. Nevertheless he could only har-
rass them by divers Skirmishes, being hin-
dered from giving them Battel by the conti-
nual Rains in Autumn. He submitted to his
Fate, (which is what must be done when Acci-
dents render ineffectual all the Efforts of hu-
man Prudence) and, quitting the Field, took up
his Winter Quarters at *Eresbourg*, called at
present *Mersbourg*, and gave the Command of
his Army in *Westphalia* to *Charles* his Son. The
Saxons coming upon the young Prince, at-
tacked him in his Camp; he expected them,
fought them with incredible Courage, and beat
them; the Rebels lost in this Battel above
seventeen thousand Men upon the spot.

785.

WINTER being over, *Charlemagne*, leaving
at *Eresbourg* Provision and Forces sufficient for
the Defence of the Place, at the Beginning
of the Year 785 met the Diet which he had
assem-

assembled at *Paderborn*; where it was resolved to make head against the Saxons commanded by *Witilkind* and *Elbion*, who were moving on towards *Upper Saxony*. These he put himself in Readiness to meet, but thought it proper at first to try fair means; to this end he sent to them *Almavin*, one of his principal Councilors, not only to persuade them to return to their Obedience, but also to embrace the Christian Religion. In short, after a great many Meetings, and a number of Entreaties, they submitted to *Charles*, promised to be baptized, and the Deputy gave them his Master's Word for their Lives, with those of all their Adherents. These Assurances, and Hostages being given on each Side, Peace was re-established in *Saxony* for a long Time; *Charles* having chosen this Way of Negotiation with them, foreseeing that he should want his Forces elsewhere.

CHARLES
MAGNE.

Agreement
with the
Saxons.

IN effect, whilst he was intent upon this Accommodation, he received Advice of another Insurrection hatching in *Franconia*; whereupon he immediately sent one of his Officers to inform himself of the Reason of their Commotion; and, being appriz'd of it, managed Matters so well, that he depriv'd those People of the Power of either maintaining or increasing their Sedition, by stifling it in the Birth, and chastizing the Authors of the Disorders; *Arnold*, one of his Generals, in the like manner put an End to the Revolt in *Brittany*, by his Address. And thus *Charles* left no means untry'd to appease domestick Troubles, finding it proper to take this Method, that he might be in Readiness to oppose the Attempts that were forming abroad against his Authority.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

His third
Tour into
Italy.

786.

ARGISES, Duke of *Apulia*, had a Design to make himself Sovereign of that Province; but *Charlemagne's* Courage and Vigilance again quash'd this Project: for he appear'd in so short a Time with a powerful Army in the *Campagna di Roma* in the Year 786, that every one was surpriz'd thereat. From thence he went and encamped before *Cadna*, and in the mean while dispatch'd Ambassadors to the Magistrates of *Benevento*, to summon them to surrender up their City to him, that he might open himself a Passage to *Apulia*. On the Arrival of these Ambassadors, and upon their Summons, Duke *Argises* deliberated with his Council and the People, what was to be done; and it was resolv'd that *Argises* should send his two Sons *Rumold* and *Grimoald*, as Hostages to *Charles*, together with a considerable Sum of Money, to assure him, that he was ready to obey all his Commands, provided he would not insist on his coming himself to him.

THOUGH *Charles* knew very well that *Argises* only endeavour'd to gain Time, and that he had Reason enough to chastize him, yet, having a particular View to the extricating himself from this Affair, he prefer'd the publick Tranquillity to his own private Relentment, and contented himself with keeping *Argises's* youngest Son, with twelve of the People, as Hostages. The eldest he sent back to his Father, and, accepting of the Duke's Protestations, dispens'd with his coming to him. Nevertheless he insisted that his Ambassadors should have Homage paid them in his Name by the Burgeesses of *Benevento*, and that they should take an Oath of Allegiance to him; which was done: At which Time the Emperor of *Constantinople's* Ambassadors arriv'd at *Charles's* Court,

Court, and were receiv'd, and sent back, with abundance of Civility; but without granting them his Daughter, whom they came to demand in Marriage for the Emperor their Master,

CHARLES-MAGNE.

Charles refuses his Daughter in Marriage to the Emperor of Constantinople. The Romans pay him Tribute.

HAVING thus settled the Affairs of the Kingdom of Naples, he repair'd to Rome, where he receiv'd from the Romans the usual Tribute of twenty five thousand Ducats, which they were oblig'd to pay him yearly. He staid there but few Days, being in haste to return to Germany, upon receiving Advice that Tassilon, Duke of Bavaria, had some Designs against him.

IN effect, this Duke, who had a great deal of Pride and Ambition, and was continually sollicitated by Luitpurge his Wife, Daughter of Didier King of Lombardy, to take Arms against him, in revenge of the ill Usage she pretended this Prince had shewn her Father, in keeping him always in Banishment, had resolv'd to wage War against him; and, in order to strengthen his Party, had already made an Alliance with the Huns, his Neighbours in the East. But Charles, being fully inform'd of his Designs and Practices, was so much incens'd, that he would not defer taking the Field with his Army one Moment, but march'd without stopping to the River Lech, which separates Bavaria from Suabia, formerly call'd *Almania*, whence comes the Word *Allemane*, which in the old Frank Tongue signifies any Man, whereby the Germans meant that all sorts of Men were welcome amongst them. He incamp'd then along this River, and sent his Ambassadors into Bavaria, not so much to sound Tassilon's Intentions, which he knew were very contrary to his Duty, as to discover the Sentiments of his chief Ministers, and the People, in this

Charles reduces Tassilon, Duke of Bavaria, to his Duty. 787.

Juncture

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

Juncture of Affairs. This Conduct, the Prudence whereof was supported with a great Courage, brought *Tassilon* to himself. As he was better acquainted than any other with the State of Affairs, and knew that if he persisted obstinately in his Rebellion, he should expose this Province to the Discretion of the Emperor's Army, he chang'd his Mind, and resolv'd to submit to the Ambassadors Demands. And as they told him that there was no other Way but to throw himself at *Charles's* Feet, ask Pardon for his Infidelity, and give him Hostages, amongst which his Son *Theodon* must be one; the Duke submitted to these Conditions, being incapable of doing better, and went to *Charles*, accompany'd by the chief Men of his Country; but being accused of Rebellion, by those very Persons that attended him, was deprived of the Government of *Bavaria*, and also impeach'd in a Diet call'd for that Purpose at *Ingelheim*, where he was condemn'd to lose his Head for high Treason, and Rebellion, whereof he was attainted and convicted. However, when they were going to proceed to the Execution of that Sentence, *Charles*, following the Dictates of his natural Clemency, gave him his Life, and by a peculiar Favour satisfy'd himself with confining the Criminal and his Son in a *Monastery* call'd *Carsta* upon the *Rhine*, in the *Palatinate*, where they both dy'd. As for his Wife, she was shut up in a Convent, where she ended her Days soon after.

788.
War with
the Slavo-
nians, and
their Sub-
mission.

THIS good Prince had no sooner suppressed one Insurrection, than he was forced to resume his Arms to quell another. The *Slavonians*, call'd also the *Wilfes*, *Valelobes*, and *Vandals*, which are now the Inhabitants of *Silesia* and *Pomerania*, along the *Baltick* Sea, in
Imi-

Imitation of the *Saxons*, made Incursions into the Provinces of the *Abotrites*, a People in Alliance with the *Franks*. And as *Charles* interested himself as much in defending his Allies, as in preserving his own Territories, he resolv'd to reduce the *Slavonians*, and to engage the *Saxons* either voluntarily, or by Force in the Expedition.

CHARLES
MAGNE.

THEY could not avoid sending him some of their Troops, which had no sooner join'd his Army, but he march'd strait against the *Slavonians*; who, perceiving that he intended to attack them in earnest, were seiz'd with Terror, and sent the Heads of the City of *Dragovitz* to meet him, and testify that they were all disposed to obey his Orders; whereupon, they giving him an Assurance thereof by Oath, he granted them Peace.

TASSILON, a little before his Disgrace, having made a League with the *Huns*, to wage War with *Charles*, these Barbarians accordingly had arm'd powerfully. And as they saw that *Charles*, after deposing *Tassilon*, had retired from *Bavaria* to carry his Arms elsewhere, they were willing to take Advantage of his Removal, and march'd with two Armies, to penetrate with one into *Carniola* and *Friuli*, and with the other into *Bavaria*. But he had provided so well for the Defence of these Provinces, that the Governors sustain'd both Armies without Difficulty, and defeated them. This nevertheless did not hinder these Barbarians from making another Attempt, some while after, with more Forces; but they were routed a second Time in *Bavaria*, and most part of them, endeavouring to escape, either kill'd or drown'd in the *Danube*.

War against the
Huns, and
their Reduction.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

IN the mean while, the Emperor *Constantine*, Son of *Irene*, being incensed at *Charles* for refusing to give him his Daughter in Marriage, sent Orders to *Theodore*, Governour of *Sicily*, with some other Generals; to make a Descent upon the Duchy of *Benevento*, with as many Troops as they could gather together, and put all to Fire and Sword. They obey'd, and, to execute their Design, invaded *Calabria*. But *Grimoald*, whom *Charles* had made Duke of *Benevento*, in his Fathers Stead; and *Hildebrand*, Duke of *Spoletto*, march'd immediately to meet them in *Calabria* with all the Forces they could draw out of their Provinces, and defeated them entirely in a pitch'd Battel. The Enemy were most of them either kill'd or taken Prisoners, and lost their Baggage; and *Charles*, who was already upon the March to reinforce these Dukes, hearing of the Success of the War, return'd back into *Bavaria*. There he had leisure to appoint after what Manner he would have them rule, to keep the People quiet, and constituted Count *Gerald*, Brother to his second Wife *Hildegard*; a Man of Experience and Resolution, Governour of that Province.

The Eastern
Emperor's
Troops de-
feated in
Italy.

788.

789.

THESE fortunate Expeditions were attended with several as successful. *Charles* very bravely repuls'd the *Saracens*, who had made an Incursion into *France*, and at the same Time he also reduced some Nations of *Saxony*, who had revolted, to their Duty.

790.
A danger-
ous War
with the
Avarians
and Hun-
garians,
and their
Reduction.

791.

THE Year after, the *Avarians* and *Huns*, now the *Austrians* and *Hungarians*, commenced a War, which was one of the most dangerous and bloody that *Charles* had been ever engaged in. In order to oppose these Enemies, he took the Field with two more powerful Armies than he had ever yet rais'd. With the

one

one he march'd along the *Danube*, sending all necessary Ammunition and Provision down that River. The other was commanded by his Son *Pepin*, who was by his Order attended by Count *Theodorick de Minfred* his Chamberlain, and other Generals, to act on the Western Side. This War lasted eight Years with abundance of Courage and Resolution on both sides; and many Engagements and Battles were fought, with so much Rage, that the Provinces were laid entirely desolate, insomuch that in several Places there were no Remains of Towns and Villages. All the Inhabitants, Men, Women, and Children, especially the Heads, and Noblemen of the first Rank amongst them, having been either kill'd, or driven from their Estates. Their principal Cities, *Comagene* and *Regino*, where their Kings and Tribunals of Justice took up their Residence, were ruin'd in such a manner, that there remained only Heaps of Rubbish. The Riches, whereof they had pillag'd their Neighbours, and heap'd up by them into an immense Treasure, were deliver'd up as Plunder to the *French*; so that Gold, Silver, Jewels, and rich Furniture, became so common as not to be valued; besides which Riches, the victorious Army found there a prodigious Quantity of Corn, Wine, and all sorts of other Provisions. These People, before this Misfortune, were the most happy and formidable of any Nation in the World. They had preserved themselves in Peace and Prosperity above two hundred Years; no one ever overcoming them, nor so much as daring to attack them, or approach their Frontiers. So well were they fortify'd, that it was not thought possible to force them.

D

THEIR

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

THEIR Provinces were surrounded with an Intrenchment made after this manner: Nine Avenues, by which only there was an Entrance, were inclosed with a Barrier forty Foot high, and as much in Breadth, made of large Stakes fixed in the Earth, and not only strengthen'd by great Beams of Oak interwoven in each other, but also supported by Stones of a prodigious Bigness, cover'd with Thorns and quick-set Hedges. Between these Avenues, which were distant from each other twenty German Leagues, was a large Ditch, with a Mole cover'd with a strong Thicket, which was very deeply rooted. Behind this Intrenchment a considerable Body of Troops was placed as a Guard, in proper Distances, and disposed in such a manner that they might the one assist the other, and even be reinforced by the Inhabitants, by making them a Signal. The Towns and Villages were so well situated, that the People might have a ready and easy Communication with each other, and assemble together to make Sallies through private Passages, thro' which they enter'd in all the Safety imaginable, with the Booty they got of their Neighbours.

THE last Engagement which *Charlemagne* had with them near *Raab*, at the beginning whereof he lost two brave Generals, *Henry*, Duke of *Friuli*, and *Gerald*, Governor of *Bavaria*, who were kill'd with some Soldiers. Above sixty thousand of the Enemy were slain upon the spot; without reckoning their Kings, Generals, and other Officers: After which Victory *Charlemagne* remained Master of all the Country, and disposed of it at Pleasure. Part of their Estates and Goods he distributed amongst the Churches, Monasteries, and Hospitals,

tals, and Part amongst the Troops which he left in the Country. Some Furniture he carried away into *Germany*; amongst the rest, a Table of massy Gold, whereon a Globe, representing the World, was very artfully engrav'd. Mention is made of this Distribution in the Will which *Charles* sign'd a little before his Death, in the Presence of several Bishops, and of his Generals and Ministers, the executing whereof he recommended very expressly to his Son *Lewis*.

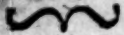
CHARLE-
MAGNE.



WHILST *Charlemagne* was thus taken up against the *Avarians*, *Godefrid*, King of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, being incited by a vain Presumption, thought he might easily make himself Master of *Germany*. He began by attacking *Friezland* and lower *Saxony*, and having laid them waste by his continual Incursions, he believ'd himself already in the Possession of them. He also subdued the Towns and Villages in the Province of *Mecklembourg*, and bragg'd in his Discourse, and Writings which he dispers'd, that he would in a few Years establish his Residence at *Aix la Chappelle*. This was the more easily believ'd by many, because that some *Germans*, being jealous of *Charlemagne's* Power and Glory, or perhaps being brib'd by *Godefrid*, favour'd the Enterprize, and flatter'd themselves with Hopes of Success.

The Design
of the King
of Den-
mark, Swe-
den, and
Norway,
proves a-
bortive.

THIS Rumour likewise reviv'd the *Saxons*: They wanted only an Opportunity to shake off the Yoke of *Charlemagne*, and they did not fail to solicit *Godefrid* secretly to pursue his Design. To this End *Witilkind* their chief Leader went to *Sigisfrid*, King of the *Normans*, to gain him over to their Interests. In short, according to all Appearance their Project would

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

have succeeded, had not a tragical Accident interven'd, viz. the Death of *Godefrid* by one of his own Domesticks, who strangled him, at the Instigation and Order of the Prince his Son, out of spite that he had divorced the Queen his Mother, to take another Wife. Some say that the young Prince himself committed that Parricide by the Advice of the Queen his Mother; but if 'tis doubtful who was the Author of that Action, 'tis at least certain that this Prince's Death put an End to the War in *Saxony*, and the Neighbouring Provinces. As *Charles* had rais'd an Army to oppose him, that is, to maintain the Peace in *Germany*, and deliver *Friezland*, and lower *Saxony* from Oppression, he easily retook the Provinces and Cities which *Godefrid* had usurped, and reunited them to the Empire. This done, he made what Regulation and Laws he thought proper for the People of those Countries to observe, to maintain and preserve a good Understanding and Union amongst themselves.

Pepin's
Conspiracy
against
Charles his
Father dis-
cover'd and
punish'd.

DURING these Transactions, *Pepin*, *Charles-magne's* natural Son, form'd a Conspiracy in *Italy* with great Secrecy, together with some *French*, and *Germans*, in order to attempt his Father's Life, and make himself Master of some Provinces. *Charles* being appriz'd thereof by *Arnold* Prince of *Lombardy*, march'd immediately into *Italy*, suppress'd the Rebellion, oblig'd *Pepin* to implore his Mercy, and gave him his Life, but confin'd him in the Abbey of *St. Gal*, there to end his Days. As for his Accomplices, they were declared guilty of high Treason, and condemn'd some to Death, and others to perpetual Exile. As for *Arnold*, he was rewarded with the Abbey of *St Dennis*, as a Recompence for the Service done on this Occasion.

THIS

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

37

CHARLES-
MAGNE.

793.

THIS Conspiracy was dispers'd in less than a Year, and the *Italians* having promis'd to preserve, for the future, an inviolable Fidelity, both to him and his Children, he set forwards for *France*, to oppose the *Saracens*, who had made an Irruption into *Provence*. He had hardly got thither, but he drove them before him; which done, he took his Way back to *Germany*, where his Presence was the more necessary, as he design'd to put an End to the Council of *Frankfort*, where 300 Bishops were assembled. During his stay in that City, he lost his third Wife *Fastrade*; and he had no sooner celebrated her Funeral Rites, and seen the Council break up, but being inform'd that the *Saxons* made their utmost Attempts, to shake off their Allegiance, and the Christian Religion, he march'd to their Territories with two Bodies of Forces, whereof he commanded the one, and his Son the other. Hereby he spread such a Terrouir over the Country, that instead of thinking on Resistance, they had recourse to his Clemency, and obtain'd Pardon for their Rebellion. This did not hinder them from taking up Arms again the Year following, and defeating the Troops of the *Abotrites*, whom *Charles* had sent for to his Assistance, in an Expedition against the *Avarians*, which incens'd him so highly, that he resolv'd to abandon all *Saxony* to the Sword, and extirpate the most mutinous of these Barbarians, whereof they were accordingly made sensible, by the loss of above thirty thousand of their Men who were able to bear Arms.

794.

795.

ON his return from this Expedition, he pass'd his Winter in the Dutchy of *Fuliers*, at a Place with which he was extreamly delighted, remarkable for excellent Waters, and hot Baths. It was call'd in *Latin*, *Aquis Granum*, and

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

and in *French*, *les Eaux de Granus*; because in the Time of the *Romans* one *Granus*, a Governor of this Province, had fitted up these Baths, and adorn'd them with divers handsome Buildings. *Charlemagne* added to it a large Palace, and a very handsome Church, in Honour of the Blessed Virgin, from whence it was since called *Aix la Chapelle*, and he from that Time made it his principal Residence.

795. POPE *Adrian* dying towards the End of the Year 795, the *Roman* Senate and Clergy elected *Leo* the III^d. in his room, who immediately sent his Legates to *Charles* to give him Advice of his Election. They had at the same time in

796. Charge to present him with *St. Peter's* Keys and the City Standard, with order to desire him to send some Person to receive the Oath of Allegiance from the *Roman* People in his Name; which is a sufficient Proof that *Charlemagne*, in Quality of *Patrician*, was Sovereign of the

798. City of *Rome*. Hereupon some time after he sent his Ambassadors for this purpose, during whose Stay a violent Insurrection was there rais'd against the Pope; they were even guilty of such enormous Cruelties against his Person, that all honest Men were shock'd at them. The Nephews of the deceas'd Pope *Adrian*, with those of their Faction, had incited the *Roman* People to reclaim the Imperial Authority, which they had yielded up to *Charlemagne*, in the Presence of the late Pope, and with his Consent; but *Leo* opposed this Design with abundance of Resolution. As the chief of these Mutineers were already his declared Enemies, they conceived such a Hatred against him, that they attack'd him in the open Street, as he was assisting at a solemn Procession on *St. Mark's* Day. They fell upon him, beat him

799.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

him outrageously, and even attempted to pull out his Eyes, and cut off his Tongue, and drew him to St. Stephen's Monastery, with so much Inhumanity, that they left him half dead upon the spot. But, whether it was by Miracle or otherwise, it was found, when he came to himself, that he was not maim'd, as was thought; and his Friends being come to his Assistance, drew him from thence, and carry'd him for Refuge to St. Peter's, at the French Ambassador's, who lodg'd there. From thence they found means to convey him to Spoleto, whence he flew for Refuge with a good Convoy to Charlemagne in Saxony, where he was magnificently receiv'd at Paderborn; and, upon hearing his Complaints, he promis'd him solemnly, that he would take a Progress to Rome on purpose to see Justice done him for the Outrages which had been offer'd. Upon this Assurance the Pope took again the Road to Rome, * whilst Charles put a Period to the Affairs he had both in Spain and Brittany, and along the French Coasts; all which he visited, and afterwards went to a Diet he had call'd at Mentz, upon account of his Italian Expedition.

* Novem-
ber, 799.

His Resolution being approv'd of therein, he got his Army in Readiness to march, and took his Way through Suabia, thence through Friuli, the Inhabitants whereof he punish'd for the Murther committed by them on the Person of their Duke. Thence he advanced as far as Ancona, where he left his Son with his Army, and Orders to chastize Grimoald, Duke of Benevento, who was disaffected to his Interest. As for himself, he took the Road to Rome, where he was receiv'd the next Day very honourably. Some Days after Charles call'd an Assembly in

800.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

St. Peter's Church, whereat all the Bishops and great Men who were then at *Rome* assisted, as did the Pope also, to examine into the Crimes whereof the holy Father had been impeached by his Enemies; but no Accuser appearing, and, on the other hand, there being no Proof of these pretended Offences, *Leo* resolv'd to clear himself of them before the whole Assembly, by taking an Oath upon the Evangelists, which were in his Hand. *Charles*, that he might not suffer such a Calumny to go unpunish'd, appointed Commissioners to try the Authors of these Aspersions, so that the Criminals were condemn'd to die; but his Holiness interceded for them, and got the Sentence of Death changed into Banishment.

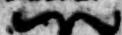
BESIDES this, the Pope, in Acknowledgment of the Protection he had receiv'd from *Charles* on this Occasion, and in Consideration of so many Favours as this Prince and his Father *Pepin* had conferr'd upon the holy See, obliged the *Romans*, who, on the other hand, could hope no longer for any Assistance from the *Greek* Emperors, to demand him for their Sovereign. In short, *Charles* going on *Christmas* Day to St. Peter's Church to Prayers, the Clergy, Nobility, and People, whilst he was employ'd in his Devotions, solicited the Pope so strenuously to crown him, that he was forced to comply that Instant. He had no sooner set the Imperial Crown on his Head, than they all with one Accord cryd out thrice, *All Victory, with a long and happy Life to Charles Augustus, great and peaceable Emperor of the Romans, crowned by God*. Then the Pope, having anointed him with the sacred Oils, adored him according to the ancient Custom, that is, he saluted,

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

41

saluted and acknowledged him as his Sovereign, CHARLE-
MAGNE. and then exposed his Picture in publick, that all the *Romans* might pay him the same Obedience. Thus the West had from that Time an Emperor, with all the Power, and all the Marks of their Predecessors the *Roman* Emperors; for he was not only declared *Cesar* and *Augustus*, Titles which derive their Rise from the Names of the two first *Roman* Emperors, and which have been affected by all their Successors, but he also took the same Ornaments which they used. Above all, he did not forget the *Roman* Eagle, which, as several Authors affirm, was first born, spread with two Heads in an Imperial Crown, by him, and not by *Constantine*, as has been said before, as a Mark that *Rome* was subject to his Empire, or that the Dignity of Emperor and King of the *Romans* was united in his Person. This last Thought has the more Probability, as 'tis observ'd to this Day, that the King of the *Romans*, during the Life of the reigning Emperor, carries only a plain black Eagle in his Arms and Seal, and that he does not assume it spread, till he ascends the Imperial Throne. But granting it was *Charlemagne*, who was the first Inventer of the Spread-Eagle, we do not find that all his Successors religiously follow'd his Example in this Point; for if there were some before the Reign of *Henry III*, called the Black, who carry'd the Spread-Eagle with two Heads, several Medals since his Time prove that some after that bore it single; so that one cannot very positively say by whom, or when the Use of the Eagle, as it is seen at present on the Imperial Seal, was introduced and continued without Interruption.

THE

CHARLES-
MAGNE.

THE same Historians aver, that *Charlemagne* did not desire the Inauguration, and that the Pope surpriz'd him into a Compliance: They even add, that the Emperor said, *If he had known the Pope's Design, he would not have gone to St. Peter's on that Day, although it was the Nativity of JESUS CHRIST.* In this, say they, *Charles* was in the right, because, far from being any Advantage to him, 'twas making him in some measure derive that from the Election of the *Romans*, which he only deriv'd from his Sword.

IN effect, *Charles*, by the continual Wars he had undertaken, maintain'd, and happily finish'd, with abundance of Labour, Prudence, and Valour, for about forty seven Years, in divers Parts of *Europe*, had increas'd his paternal Inheritance above one half. For besides the Crown left him by the King his Father, which was very considerable (comprehending not only the Provinces situated between the *Rhine*, the *Loire*, and the *German Ocean*, but also that Part of *Germany* lying between *Saxony*, the *Danube*, and the *Rhine*) he added thereunto *Aquitain*, *Gascony*, the *Pyrenees*, and *Catalonia*, to the Head of the River *Ebro*, which takes its Rise in the Kingdom of *Navarre*, passes thro' the most fertile Provinces of *Spain*, and dis-embogues it self into the *Mediterranean*, near *Tortosa*. Besides all these, he likewise united to his Crown the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, with all *Italy*, to the lower *Calabria*, to the Frontiers of the *Grecians*. He had moreover conquer'd *Suabia*, *Bavaria*, *Franconia*, all *Saxony*, which is almost as long, and twice as broad as *Franconia*, together with all that Part of *Hungary*, *Transilvania*, lying beyond the *Danube* towards the East, and all *Istria*, *Croatia*, and *Dalmatia*, except

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

43

cept the maritime Towns, which he was willing to leave the Emperor of *Constantinople*, to preserve the Friendship and Alliance he had enter'd into with him. He had also annex'd to his Conquest that Part of *Poland* which has the *Vistula* for its Frontiers, with all the Countries along the *Baltick* Sea.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

THUS 'tis evident that not only whatever belong'd to the *Roman* Empire in the West was under his Power, either by hereditary Right, or by Right of Conquest, but also that he had greatly enlarg'd it, having even brought under Subjection *Pagan* Nations, who had never acknowledg'd the foregoing Emperors, and forc'd them to renounce their Idols, and embrace the true Religion.

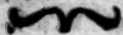
NEITHER is it the Fact it self which has from that Time found Employment for the Pens of the Learned and the Lawyers, but the Right; some asserting that *Charlemagne* had a Right by Conquest, and others that he derived his Right from the *Roman* People, pretending it was in their Power to confer it.

Charle-
magne's in-
contestable
Right to
the Empire.

THEY who will not allow that *Charlemagne* receiv'd the Empire at the Pope's Hands, say that, during *Charles's* Life, before he was declared Emperor, the Eastern Emperors made diverse Alliances within the midst of his Conquests, whereby they tacitly acknowledged him as Emperour of the West, far from regarding him as the Usurper of their own Dominions. Besides, Pope *Adrian*, and the *Roman* People, of their own Accord, begg'd earnestly of *Charles* to pass over into *Italy* to their Assistance against *Didier*, King of *Lombardy*; and they were so far from being in a Condition to confer the Empire on him, that they had themselves a long Time groan'd under the Oppression of the *Lombards*.

The Opinion
of those who
assert, that
the Pope
has no
Right to
confer the
Empire.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.



bards. It was even purely out of the Sense *Charlemagne* had of their miserable State, that he enter'd *Italy*, drove out *Didier*, and deliver'd them from his Tyranny. Yet more, *Charlemagne* and his Subjects were at all the Charge of Conquering the Territories which *Didier* had usurp'd from the Church, and therefore it could not be said that the Pope could give him the Empire, since he had neither any Town, Village, nor Subject therein, and no one can give what he has not. On the contrary, the Bishops of *Rome* had always been so barbarously treated by the Heathens, that probably, without the powerful Assistance of the *French*, they would have been intirely destroy'd. All the ancient Historians agree, that the Pope and People of *Rome* sent to *Charles* as Suppliants; but this Matter is decided by *Eginardus*, who, amongst others, writes in these Terms: "*Adrian* the Pope, being no longer able to bear the Insolence, Pride, and violent Incurfions of *Desiderius* (or *Didier*) King of the *Lombards*, sent a remarkable Embassy to *Charles* King of the *Franks*, and humbly implor'd him that he would assist him and the *Romans* against the *Lombards*. But as he could not travel by Land, thro' *Italy*, he order'd the Legate, *Peter* by Name, to take shipping at *Rome*, for *Marseilles*, and proceed thence by Land to *France*, for the *Lombards* had block'd up all the Roads, Passages, and Ways of the Pope and *Romans*, then under Oppression in *Italy*, so that they promis'd themselves a certain Victory over them. Besides this, the *Lombards* then stood in no dread of the *German* Power and Bravery, as thinking they durst not venture out of their lurking Places, nor could help the Pope and *Romans*, then brought in,

" to

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

49

" to the utmost Danger, even if they were inclin'd to it.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

ACCORDINGLY, we find that when *Charles* went to *Rome*, in the Year 800, that Pope *Leo* the III^d, after having placed a golden Crown upon his Head, before the great Altar in *St. Peter's Church*, with the united Acclamations of the People, who cry'd, *Charles the Great and Peaceable Emperor of the Romans, crowned by God*, bent his Knee before him, according to the antient Custom, saluting him by the Name of *Augustus*. This is a Proof that he did not confer the Empire on him, but only perform'd the Ceremony of his Inauguration. Upon what Grounds then can they establish the Right of creating Emperors in Favour of *Rome*? Seeing that besides this, all Histories agree that the *French* and *Germans* had acquired the Empire of the *Romans*, by their Courage, and the Effusion of their Blood. Nor could the *Roman* People confer the Empire, because having once transferr'd it upon the antient *Cæsars*, whose Successors the Emperors were, they had no longer any Right to it: For this Reason, it is no ways probable that the Pope conferr'd the Empire on *Charlemagne*, because he crown'd him.

NEITHER this Pope, nor his Successors, in that Quality, had ever any Right to give away Crowns; and, notwithstanding certain Princes have made themselves Masters of some Kingdoms, under the Colour of Grants made by Virtue of this pretended Right, 'tis certain 'twas an Usurpation not to have been defended, if subsequent Circumstances had not render'd it lawful.

THE Pope is invested with two different Capacities, the one Spiritual, the other Temporal.

By

CHARLES-
MAGNE.

By the one he is a Bishop, and the first of Bishops, Successor to St Peter, Vicar of JESUS CHRIST, and all *Christians* owe him Submission, and Veneration. But in this Quality he has no Power over Crowns, nor Dominions: For as the Kingdom of JESUS CHRIST was never of this World, but entirely Spiritual, and only relating to Spiritual Things, the Authority of the Popes, who are his Vicars, is intirely the same. In this View, it gives them no Power over the Temporalities of Kingdoms. Temporalities, which consist chiefly in the Property, Succession, Possession, and Government of their Dominions, which the Sovereigns enjoy absolutely over their Subjects, and they are under an indispensable Obligation to obey them, whatever Princes may be in their Persons or Manners.

NEITHER have the Popes any manner of Power over Crowns and Kingdoms in Quality of temporal Princes; because they have not any Dominions by their Institution, and they enjoy the States whereof they are Masters, by the Liberality of other Princes, particularly the Kings of *France*. Hence it is evident that these Kings, in giving them these Territories, never design'd to raise them above themselves, nor to attribute to them any secular Power superior to their own. Thus, having neither this pretended Right by their spiritual Power, nor by the Concession of Kings, 'tis plain that their Pretentions are as weakly founded upon humane, as they are upon the divine Laws.

NEITHER is it more reasonable to establish this pretended Right upon the Deference some Sovereigns have paid the Popes, in even kissing their Feet, holding their Stirrups, and
either

either leading their Horses by the Bridle, or following them on Foot. Who does not see that these are the pure Effects of a Devotion, which is carry'd to an Excess in some Tempers, and is not to be blam'd in good Souls, touch'd with the Grandeur of the Dignity that is inherent in the person of the Pope, on Account of his Quality as Vicar of JESUS CHRIST, who is the King of Kings? But as that excessive Humility, neither gives nor deprives them of any Authority as temporal Princes, so when ever there has happen'd to be Princes of a less mild Disposition, who have oblig'd the Popes to pay them almost the same Respect which some Popes had required of their Ancestors, that has not in the least lessen'd their sacred Character.

THESE are in a manner the Sentiments of such as deny that either the *Roman Pontiff*, or People, had any Right to confer the Empire upon *Charlemagne*. They who maintain the contrary, alledge, That 'tis true, *Rome* had no Right to give away the Empire, after having once renounc'd it; but that this Renunciation subsisted no longer then till the Time of the Empress *Irene*, to whom the *Greeks*, or Eastern *Romans*, submitted; that this Submission was unworthy of the *Roman* People, and contrary to the Laws and Constitution of the Empire; and that therefore this Contravention re-establishing the *Roman* People in their pristine Right, they might revoke the Concession made by the *Greeks* to the Empress *Irene*, and give a worthy Prince to the Empire. The Reason, say they, is evident, insomuch as Sovereigns derive their Rise from the Choice of the People, in whom the sovereign Authority is naturally vested, and who deprive themselves of it, to confer it on such Princes as they chose; and that as these

CHARLE-
MAGNE.



The Opinion of such as maintain, that the Pope had a Right to confer the Empire.

People

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

People, when they elect Sovereigns at first, don't mean to grant, without their Consent, the Liberty to their Successors to introduce Women into the Government, especially when there are Laws expressly contrary to such a Disposal, 'tis Truth to affirm, that after such a manifest Infringing of these fundamental Laws, the Sovereign Power reverts whence it was derived.

AN Example hereof is seen in *France* it self, which, depending upon its Right by the *Salick* Law, will admit of no Women to the Succession of the Crown. This being the Case, as the *Greeks* were willing to set a Woman upon the Throne in prejudice of the Law, which in this Respect was the same as the *Salick*, in that it only admitted Males to the Imperial Crown; the *Romans*, as the undoubted People from whom the Sovereign Power was deriv'd, had a Right to elect another Sovereign.

BESIDES this, 'tis certain that there is, as it were, a tacit Contract between Sovereigns and their Subjects, whereby, if the latter are oblig'd to an inviolable Fidelity, the Prince, on his Part, is bound to protect and defend them.

HENCE, as the *Roman* People (after the Translation of the Imperial See from *Rome* to *Constantinople*) were left a Prey to the *Lombards*, without the Emperors, (who were then distant) offering to defend them, they had a Right to chuse themselves another Protector and Master.

AND 'twas, add they, by Virtue of this Right, that the Pope, with the Consent of the *Roman* People, appointed *Charlemagne* Emperor, and his Posterity, in his Person, declaring him Sovereign over the *Romans*, by a Decree so famous in the Canonical Laws, under the Name of *Adrian's* Decree, whereof mention has already been made

BUT

BUT if one may have Liberty to draw any Consequence from the Sentiments of all these different Authors, it may be maintain'd that, as 'tis held for certain, that *Charlemagne* deriv'd the Empire only from God and his Sword, that is, only by Right of so just and lawful a Conquest, that even the Eastern Emperors, far from disputing it with him, had, as it were, approv'd it by the divers Treaties of Alliance which they made one after another with him. It is not less true, that what the *Roman* Pontiff and People contributed to his assuming the Title of Emperor, was properly but a Ceremony, to add to him the Name of the Thing whereof he was already in effect Master: And that, if *Leo* seem'd to interest himself so much in this Coronation, it could only proceed from a Sense of Gratitude; or else because, like his Successors, he thought it was the Office of the first Bishop, preferably to all others, to have the Advantage to crown and anoint the greatest Monarch in Christendom, to whom even the Church of *Rome* herself was indebted for all her temporal Grandeur.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

THE same Judgment may be pass'd on what is contained in *Adrian's* Decree, relating to the Right ascrib'd to *Charlemagne*, with regard to the Election of Popes, the Choice of other Bishops in his Dominions, and giving the Investitures of Bishopricks and Abbies.

FOR it is plain that, with respect to Bishopricks, and other Benefices depending on *Charlemagne*, as being Part of his Dominions, 'twas rather a Declaration than a Concession, or, as it were, an Inference drawn by the Pope to shew, that it being a Thing highly reasonable (and now settled in this Prince) that a Sovereign should confer Bishopricks throughout all

E

his

CHARLE-
MAGNE.



his Dominions; it was a necessary Consequence, that having the Sovereignty of *Rome*, he had also the Right, to appoint, or invest the Bishop, because 'tis a Perogative inseparable from the Sovereign Power.

*The Rise
of the Em-
peror's right
to appoint
Bishops.*

IN Effect, when the *Germans* chang'd from the worship of Idols to that of the true God, thro' the Knowledge of the Gospel, wherein the Princes caus'd them to be instructed by Sermons, after having made an Opening by Force of Arms into these *Pagan* Countries, the same Princes appointed Bishops to maintain the Church Discipline, and cultivate and improve the Word of God among them. This was done without the Pope's intermeddling, he being then poor, and even under Oppression. And, in order to give these Bishops a Mark to distinguish, and make them respected, these Princes deliver'd them a Crozier (as it were denoting a Staff of Command) and placed a Ring on their Finger, to give them to understand, that as the Marriage of Laymen, denoted by a Ring, is indissoluble, a Bishop ought, in the same manner, to remain inseparably united to his Church.

MOREOVER, as these Bishops could not subsist without some Revenues, the same Sovereigns assigned them Possessions for their Support; and 'twas likewise by Virtue of these Possessions, that they depended upon the Sovereign like his other Subjects. For indeed 'tis absolutely necessary that they should be dependent on him; there being (according to the Order of Civil Government) but one supreme Authority which includes all the rest. And unless one State could be suppos'd within another, which is incompatible in a civil Society, establish'd by reasonable Laws, the Bishops, and others, who enjoy Benefices, must necessarily
be

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

31

be under the same Subordination, as to their Temporalities, as the other Subjects of the State, of what Quality soever.

CHARLES
MAGNE.

HENCE arises the Right which Sovereigns have had from Time immemorial, to elect Bishops, and give them the Investitures of the Ecclesiastical Lands and Revenues, and all other Prerogatives granted to them, unless these Sovereigns have dispossest themselves of this Right by some particular Concession. For these Things naturally follow the Investiture, as the Investiture is the Consequence of the Foundation, and the Foundation the Effect of the Liberality and Piety of Princes. All these Rights then, I mean the Right of Investiture, and of the *Regalia*, are comprehended in the Rights of Sovereignty, or in what they call Rights of the Prerogative. And if one would dispute these with a Sovereign, he might as well either dispute with him, or deprive him of the Crown.

BUT in Order to give an exact Insight into this Matter, it will perhaps not be amiss to distinguish between the *Regalia*, and the Rights of Prerogative. For the *French* and *German* Authors don't use these Terms in the same Signification. They who use the Word *Regalia*, according to the *Germans*, say the same Thing as Rights of the Prerogative; but, according to the *French*, he that says *Regalia*, does not mean Rights of the Prerogative, but only speaks of a *Species* of Right, whereof the Rights of the Prerogative are the *Genus*.

The Meaning of *Regalia*, and the Rights of the Prerogative.

THUS the *French* only mean by the Word *Regalia*, the Right just explain'd, which is the Power belonging to the King of *France* (in case of a Vacancy in any Archbishopricks or Bishopricks in his Dominions) to receive the Revenues, promote Dignitaries, and confer Prebends and

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

Benefices, till the See is actually fill'd with a new Successor; that is, till the new Incumbent has obtain'd his Bulls from *Rome*, upon the King's Nomination, when he has taken the Oath of Fidelity to him, and the Record of that Oath is register'd in the Chamber of Accompts at *Paris*.

ON the contrary, all the *German* Authors confound the Word *Regalia*, with what they call Rights of the Prerogative, or the Ensigns of Royalty; whereby they not only understand all the Rights proceeding from the Sovereignty, that is to say, all that a Prince has Power to do in that Quality, but even the Effects of those Rights, and the Marks of Honour that distinguish the supream Dignity. To give a more exact Account hereof, they understand, 1. The Power of making and abrogating Laws; the Right to proclaim War or Peace, and consequently of making Leagues and Alliances, of sending Ambassadors, and making Treaties. They likewise mean, the Power of creating Magistrates, of exercising, or causing Justice to be sovereignly exercised, of condemning or pardoning Criminals, of having Homage paid them, and coining Money; the Right of Customs and Importation, or opening Ports; the Right of Forrage; the Right of Exportation, Markets, or Toll; the Right of possessing the Effects or Demesnes of the Publick, which comprehends the Lordship of Rivers, Mills, Fishing, &c. The Right of laying Taxes; the Right over the Demesnes of private Persons, for the good of the Publick, which includes the Rights of Escheating, Disherison, &c. Besides all these, they understand by the same Word *Regalia*, these very Things with Regard to themselves only; for the Right it self is one Thing, and the Thing

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

Thing over which one has a Right, is another.

55
CHARLE-
MAGNE.

2. THEY understand by the Rights of the Prerogative, the Right of conferring great Benefices; such as Archbishopricks, Bishopricks, and Abbies, for which the Incumbents swear Allegiance, and pay Homage to the Prince; as also the Right of detaining Part of the Revenues of these Benefices, according to the Necessities of the State.

3. THEY understand by the Rights of the Prerogative, the Power of creating Dignities, and Fees; as Duchies, Marquisates, Earldoms, &c. of granting Investitures of these Fees, and confiscating them; of granting Privileges, and revoking them, when the Time expires; and sometimes by the same Word they mean the same things themselves.

4. THEY use the Words, Rights of Prerogative, to signify the Marks of Honour and Grandeur, or the Regal Ornaments which Princes use at their Coronation, and other Solemnities; as the Crown, the Sceptre, the Sword, the Belt, the Globe, the Royal Mantle, &c. These are the various Significations wherein they use these Terms *Regalia*, and *Rights of the Prerogative*; and 'tis under all these Meanings they are to be understood, and are used in the Course of this History, according to the Variety of the Subject, to prevent the Reader's making any Mistake.

To reassume the Thread of our History; we shall only say, that before Charlemagne's Departure from Italy, he was willing, as Emperor, to ratify the Confirmation of Pepin, his Father's Grant of the Exarchate and See of Ancona to the Pope, and even added to it other Dominions, always exclusive of the Sovereignty which

The Emperor confirms and augments the Gift made by Pepin his Father to the Pope.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.Charles-
magne
makes his
Son his As-
sociate in
the Empire.

he reserv'd both to himself and his Successors.

WHEN this Prince returned to *France*, he there receiv'd the Ambassadors of the Kings of *Scotland*, *Persia*, and *Fez*, who courted his Friendship; one would have thought that they had come on purpose to congratulate him upon his new Dignity. Some time after, *Nicephorus*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, sent also an extraordinary Embassy to compliment him, and carry his Consent to the Division of the two Empires, which had been regulated with these Ambassadors at *Constantinople*, yielding him up the Western Empire, whereof he was in Possession, with the Titles of *Cesar* and *Augustus*. This great Prince, being thus settled in his Throne, continued to set the Affairs of *Christendom* in Order, to accommodate the Differences of neighbouring Princes and States, and to appease all things with Prudence and Justice. But perceiving that both the Strength of his Body and Mind was impaired, and being sensibly touch'd, both with the News of the Death of his two Sons, *Pepin* who died at *Milan*, and *Charles* in *Bavaria*, about one and the same time, and also chagrin'd at his Daughter's disorderly Behaviour, he bent his Thoughts wholly upon easing himself of the Burthen of Affairs; and finding hardly any Consolation but in his only Son *Lewis*, he sent for him to *Aix la Chapelle*, where, calling an Assembly of all the Nobles and Grandees, he inform'd them that, foreseeing his Life would be but short, he was obliged to acquaint them with his Will with respect to the Succession. Then he declar'd his Son *Lewis* Heir and Successor to the Empire; and at the same Time surrender'd up the Government to him, as his Colleague, causing him

812.
The Death
of Pepin
and Charles
Charles-
magne's
Sons.

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

55

him to be proclaimed Emperor, and by this Means assuring the Succession to the Imperial Dignity in his House.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

LEWIS, being thus proclaim'd King and Emperor by his Father *Charles*, and the States of the Empire, immediately took upon him the Administration of Affairs, receiving Homage of his Subjects, and directing that Justice should be distributed every where with Integrity, and the publick Peace preserv'd; which done, he return'd to *Aquitain*; *Charles* having first given the Kingdom of *Arles* to a Son left by *Pepin*, nam'd *Bernard*.

813.
Lewis,
Charles-
magne's
Son declar-
ed Emperor
before his
Father's
Death.

THOUGH *Charles* had thus laid aside temporal Affairs, he did not cease taking Care, as usual, to reform the Church Discipline, which was grown remiss. To this end he conven'd five Synods in the Months of *May* and *June*; one at *Mentz*, a second at *Rheims*, a third at *Tours*, the fourth at *Chalons*, and the fifth at *Arles*.

Synods call-
ed for
Church Dis-
cipline.

THUS he passed the rest of his Days in Peace, and Exercises of Devotion, till the Sharpness of the Winter brought upon him some Fits of an Ague. However, he was in Hopes of curing it by Abstinence; but it was attended with a Pain in the Side, which increas'd to such a degree, that he was confin'd to his Bed. His Illness growing still more violent on the seventh Day, he then thought himself in Danger, and sent immediately for his Confessor, to prepare himself for his Change: From him he receiv'd Absolution of his Sins, and the sacred *Viaticum*; a little after which he died, the twenty eighth of *January*, 814, aged seventy eight, having reign'd in *France* forty eight Years, four Months, and four Days; in *Italy* about forty Years; and fourteen in the Empire. His Body

Charles-
magne's
Death.
814.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

was interr'd with abundance of Ceremony at *Aix la Chapelle*, in the Church of *Nostre Dame*, which was built and endow'd by him with great Revenues.

HE also built a Palace in the same City, and two fine Pleasure-Houses in its Neighbourhood, the one near *Ingelheim*, and the other at *Nimeguen* on the *Wael*.

An Enco-
mium upon
Charles-
magne.

HE was disappointed, by his Death, in his Design of building a Stone-Bridge at *Mentz* over the *Rhine*, instead of the wooden one he had already caus'd to be laid a-cross it in that Place, which had been carry'd away by the great Floods and Ice two Years before his Death. He had likewise made Harbours both in the Ocean and the *Mediterranean* Sea, where he maintain'd a great Number of Men of War, to preserve *Germany* and *France*, on one hand, from the Irruptions of the *Normans*; and *Provence* and *Italy*, on the other, from the *Moors*. This prov'd so effectual a Restraint, that, during his Reign, the *Moors* could offer no Insult only to the City of *Centumcella*, call'd now *Civita Vecchia*, which they sack'd; nor could the *Normans*, whom he always kept very much under, have Opportunity to make any Incursions, but only into some small Islands near *Frieland*.

CHARLES, by his Mother's Persuasion, had taken for his first Wife the Daughter of *Didier*, King of *Lombardy*; but he was oblig'd to put her away, and at the same Time to discard some of his Council, for Reasons of great Importance. The next he marry'd was *Hildegard*, of the House of *Suabia*, who was not only very rich, but had a polite Education: By her he had three Sons, *Charles*, *Pepin*, and *Lewis*; and three Daughters, *Rotrude*, *Bertha*, and *Gisleta*.

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

57

Gisela. He had likewise two Daughters by *Fa-
strade*, his third Wife, viz. *Tetrarde* and *Hil-
trude*. After her Death he espous'd *Luitgarde*,
who was also of *Suabia*; but she had no Chil-
dren. He had but one Sister, nam'd *Hila*, who
was train'd up from her Infancy in the Exercise
of every Virtue, and even in Needle Work,
&c. and *Ada*, his natural Sister, who ended
her Days with great Piety at *Treves*, after a
very religious Life. He bred up his Sons, ac-
cording to the *French* Custom, in the Exercises
of Arms and Hunting; and as for his Daugh-
ters, he made them to spin, sew, &c. that they
might have Employment at such Times as were
not spent in Devotion.

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

THIS Prince took the same Care of his na-
tural Children, as of his legitimate Issue; both
the one and the other were virtuously and pi-
ously educated; neither did he fail to provide
for their Settlement.

As to *Charlemagne's* personal Qualities; he
was a Prince of great Strength, well shap'd,
seven Foot high, and a handsome Person; his
Forehead was high, his Eyes large and pierc-
ing, his Nose aquiline, his Countenance plea-
sant, his Air majestick and grave, his Neck
thick, and something short, and his Voice
strong, but yet agreeable. He was of a health-
ful Constitution, which he preserv'd by his So-
briety, being naturally averse to good Cheer
and Feasting.

HE talk'd well on any Subject, and with great
Presence of Mind; he understood the *French*,
German, *Greek*, and *Latin* Tongues, and at Meals
had always some Chapters of the Bible, or the
Fathers read to him; in short, he took a Pleasure
in Learning. *Peter Pisan* the Deacon taught
him Logick, and *Alcuinus* Rhetorick, Astrology,
and

CHARLE-
MAGNE.

and other Sciences. His Exercises were riding the manag'd Horse, and oftentimes he diverted himself in hunting: In his Youth he took great pleasure in bathing, and accordingly he swam better than any Man in his Time.

HE was very Charitable to the Poor, and his Alms reach'd even to *Egypt, Africa, Jerusalem, Alexandria, Constantinople, and Carthage.*

HE had a particular Veneration for Churches, especially for that of *St. Peter*, desiring nothing more ardently than to restore *Rome* to its pristine Lustre, of which he gave Proofs on a hundred Occasions. He had founded Universities at *Paris, Pavia, and Boulogne*, and erected the Bishopricks of *Bremen, Paderborn, Halberstadt, Hildesheim, Osnabrug, Verden, and Munster.*

HE never fail'd saying his Prayers Night and Morning, nor being at Church on Sundays and Festivals, attending the Divine Service with so much Fervour, that the Assistants and his Domesticks became devout by his Example.

BUT what crowns the Praise of the great Prince is, that his Conduct was so unblamable, that he never undertook any of his Wars out of a Spirit of Ambition, Vain Glory, or Avarice. The Necessity of defending and protecting the Christian Religion, his Kingdom, Subjects, Allies, and the Oppress'd who implor'd his Assistance, were always the sole Motives of his Enterprises. Nay, before he took up Arms, he even try'd all just and reasonable Methods to adjust and terminate his Differences amicably; but when fair Means and Negotiations were in vain, he consult'd all possible ways to secure to himself Glory and Success by Force of Arms: Which prudent Conduct crown'd all his Designs with Success. He took great Care of his Troops, never hazarding them unseasonably; and tho' he

Chap. II. of the EMPIRE.

59

he was not responsible for his Actions to any one, yet nevertheless he was above all things cautious of incurring the Censure of other Princes, (a Maxim of great Prudence, Importance, and use to a Sovereign) and was continually recommending to the Bishops, Abbots, Curates, and other Ecclesiasticks, the Care of instructing the people, repairing their Churches, religious Houses, and Cloisters of Nuns and Fryars.

CHARLE.
MAGNE.

He was call'd *Charlemagne*, that is *Charles the Great*, on Account of his eminent Virtue, and illustrious Actions, by which alone he acquired the Name *Augustus*. The Church also was so much edify'd by the Piety, Justice, and Wisdom that were conspicuous in his sacred Person, as well as by the great Zeal he shew'd, during his whole Life, to establish the *Christian Faith* in the Countries infected with Idolatry, that, in order to propose him as an Example to other Monarchs, she canoniz'd him after his Decease as a Saint.



CHAP. III.

LEWIS the Debonnair.



LEWIS, King of *Aquitain*, receiving advice of the Death of his Father *Charlemagne*, immediately call'd a Council, wherein 'twas resolv'd to march a considerable Army into *Germany*, under the Command of his Generals *Baldener, Waldener, Landbrecht, and Jungbrecht*: they

214.
Lewis takes
Possession of
the Empire.

Lewis the
Debonnair.



they immediately set out for *Aix la Chapelle*, in order to settle all things there, and prevent the Intrigues which he was apprehensive *Bernard*, King of *Italy*, his Nephew, might concert to his Prejudice with the Ladies of his Father's Court, with intent to put Affairs into Confusion.

No sooner were these Generals arriv'd, but they summon'd *Hatwin*, Mayor of the Palace to the deceased Emperor, before them, when, reproaching him with his ill Conduct in the Exercise of his Office, they, in their Master's Name, prohibited him from meddling for the future with the Government; hereupon *Hatwin* withdrawing, bent his Thoughts wholly upon Revenge. With this View he, with the Assistance of his Friends, levy'd a Body of Forces, surpriz'd these Generals, and treated them with the utmost Cruelty; *Baldener* being kill'd on this Occasion, and *Landbrecht's* right Leg broken. *Hatwin* imagin'd that, having made the Mischief wherewith these Generals threaten'd him fall upon their own Heads, he should easily manage the others: But the Imperial Troops, seeing with what Inhumanity he had used their Commanders, fell upon him, kill'd him, and dispers'd all his Men.

THIRTY Days after, *Lewis* arrived at *Aix*, where, all things being prepar'd for his Reception, he was again proclaim'd Emperor, with the universal Consent of the *French*. He began his Administration with giving Audience to foreign Ministers and Ambassadors. In particular, he entertain'd *Christopher Spattairus*, and *Gregory* the Deacon, Ambassador from *Leo*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, very honourably. He took hold of the Opportunity of their Return to send *Norbert*, Bishop of *Rhegio*, and *Richwin*, Count

Chap. III. of the EMPIRE.

61

Count of *Passau*, to their Master, to renew the Alliance with him; the Voyage was as successful as he could have wish'd; for they brought him back a Treaty conformable to his own Desires; which done, he call'd a Diet at *Aix*, where he regulated all Affairs relating to Justice and the publick Peace. Having cited *Bernard* his Nephew to appear before him, his Behaviour till then having been anblameable, he confirm'd to him the Grant of the Crown of *Italy*; and ratify'd the Peace with the Duke of *Benevento*, on Condition that the Subjects of that Duchy should pay him yearly the Sum of seven thousand Schillings in pure Gold. As for his Sons, he sent them into his most distant Territories, viz. *Pepin* into *Aquitain*, and *Lothaire* into *Bavaria*, giving them Instructions for the well governing those Provinces, during which he did not forget to bring the Principal Accomplices in the Murder of his Generals to their Tryals; where some had their Eyes pull'd out, others were banish'd, and some had their Estates confiscated.

LEWIS the
Debonnaire.
Several
Regulations
made by
Lewis.

UPON receiving Information that the *Roman* People had rais'd an Insurrection against Pope *Leo* the III^d, and that his Holiness had (of his own Authority) caus'd the principal Ring-leaders to be executed, agreeable to the Sentence of Death which he got pronounced against them, he was oblig'd to send *Bernard* to *Rome*, to examine into the Affair. But he falling sick, the Pope, knowing that the Emperor was offended at his Proceedings, sent Ambassadors to appease him, and justify himself, not only of what was laid to his Charge, but also with respect to his Conduct in the punishment of his Criminals.

SOME Months after, the Emperor call'd a second Diet at *Aix*, where his principal Proposal was

Lewis the
Debonnair.

was design'd only to oblige all the States there assembled, as well Ecclesiasticks as Seculars, to make a Law with respect to the Civil Government, consisting of several Articles, some of which not only restrain'd the Ecclesiasticks from intermeddling with the Government of the State, and Secular Affairs, but likewise from wearing Gold, Silver, or Jewels upon their Cloaths. The *Italian* Bishops, and some of the *Germans*, oppos'd this Regulation, and made secret and successfull Leagues against the Emperor, designing even to depose him, and put in his Room another Prince, whom they thought would be more favourably inclin'd to them.

816.

Interview
between Lewis
and the
Pope, who
crowns him
Emperor.

IN the mean while, Pope *Leo* died the twenty fourth of *June*, in the Year 816, the twenty first of his Pontificate, and *Stephen V.* a Deacon, was chose in his room. This new Pontiff set out two Months after his Election to visit the Emperor; and this Prince being appriz'd of it by the *Nuntio*, went to meet *Stephen*, whom he receiv'd and conducted into the City of *Rheims*. There they conferr'd together about all Things at Leisure; and 'twas agreed, that his Holiness should perform the Ceremony of crowning the Emperor, which was done in the great Church with all imaginable Solemnity; after which they din'd together with great Marks of Friendship on both Sides; and in a few Days afterwards they left *Rheims*, whence the Emperor went to *Compeigne*, and the Pope to *Rome*, where he died the twenty sixth of *February* following. *Raschal* being elected Pope in his stead, sent a Legate to the Emperor, to desire him to confirm the Gifts and Privileges granted to the holy See by *Pepin* and *Charlemagne*, and obtain'd all manner of Satisfaction.

WHILST

Chap. III. of the EMPIRE.

63

WHILST the Emperor made his Residence at *Compeigne*, he received there *Abdirach*, Son of *Abulas*, King of the *Saracens*, from *Spain*, together with the Ambassadors of the *Abotrites*, and, having entertain'd them twenty Days with abundance of Magnificence, he desir'd them to accompany him to *Aix*, with an Intent to shew them the Splendour of a Diet of the Empire. To this end he conven'd the States, and, during the Assembly, he had his eldest Son, *Lothaire*, acknowledged for King, causing him to be crown'd, and declar'd his Colleague in the Empire: He gave also to his two other Sons, *Pepin* and *Lewis*, two titular Kingdoms, viz. *Aquitain*, or the Western *France*, to the first, and *Bavaria* to the other.

Lewis the Debonnaire.
The Emperor treats the Saracens Ambassadors.
317.

WHILST the Emperor was thus busied in settling his three Sons, *Bernard*, King of *Italy*, endeavour'd to render himself absolute Master of his Kingdom, and independent of the Emperor. In effect, he manag'd things in that manner, that he made most Part of the States and Cities in his Dominions swear Fidelity and Allegiance anew to the Emperor's Prejudice. He had drawn over to his Side *Anselm*, Bishop of *Milan*, *Wolfold*, Bishop of *Cremona*, *Theodolph*, Bishop of *Orleans*, and *Atchard*, Duke of *Franconia*, with many other Noblemen, who brought all the *Italians* over to their Party; but the *Germans* and *French* remained stedfast in their Duty to the Emperor.

Revolt and Punishment of Bernard, King of Italy. and his Accomplishments.

LEWIS, being incens'd at his Nephew's Rashness and Rebellion, rais'd a powerful Army, and sent it into *Italy*, to stop the Career of this Revolt. *Bernard* no sooner saw so many Forces ready to fall upon him, but he thought of imploring his Uncle's Clemency, by the Interposition of the Imperial Generals.

SOME

Lewis the
Debonnair.

SOME Dukes and Counts, who were the principal Authors of the Sedition, did the same, but these Generals sent them all to the Emperor, to give Account of their Actions; and they no sooner arriv'd at *Aix*, but he caus'd them to be seiz'd and try'd.

BERNARD, and his Accomplices, were condemn'd to be beheaded; others to have their Eyes put out; and the Bishops were depriv'd of their Dignities, and shut up in Convents. This Sentence was executed upon the Accomplices; but as to *Bernard*, he had only his Eyes put out, whereof nevertheless he dy'd soon after. His three Sons, *Bernard*, *Pepin*, and *Heribert*, were oblig'd to renounce their Patrimony for themselves and their Heirs, and to retire into *Bavaria*, where *Lothaire*, who was return'd thither, taking Charge of their Education, treated them with a great deal of Rigour, having them bred up in a narrow Tract of Land, whence they had not the Liberty to stir without his Permission.

818.

DURING these Troubles in *Italy*, *Mortman*, who had been made Governor or Duke of *Brittany*, taking Advantage of the Juncture, had also attempted to make himself Master of that Province. But the Emperor, being appriz'd of it, went thither in Person with a considerable Army, defeated *Mortman*, dispers'd his Troops in a small Time, and caus'd the principal Fortresses of the Province to be demolish'd.

Death of
Irmingarde
Wife to
Lewis.

ON his Return thence, with his Wife *Irmingarde*, that Princess fell sick at *Auges*, where she died the third of *October* 818, leaving three Sons, *Lothaire*, *Pepin* and *Lewis*.

THIS Death was soon follow'd by that of his Son *Pepin*, King of *Aquitain*, who left a Son nam'd also *Pepin*, who was desirous to retain *Aquitain*;

Aquitain; but *Lewis* the *Debonnair* dispos'd of it otherwise, as we shall see in the sequel.

Lewis the Debonnair.

ABOUT this Time the Emperor received News, that Part of the Army sent into *Italy* had been defeated in its March by the Treachery of *Lindevit* Duke of *Croatia* and *Bosnia*; and that the Designs of the other were thereby render'd abortive: This Duke, imagining he was not known to be the Author of the Outrage, had the Arrogance to send Ambassadors to the Emperor, with Presents, and Proposals of Peace. The Emperor, not being willing to listen to these Proposals, made other Offers, which *Lindevit* also rejected, as being unworthy to be communicated to his States, resolving to defend himself in case he should be attacked: To which end he sent Ambassadors to all the neighbouring Princes to desire their Assistance. By this means he drew over the *Thimotians* to his Party; but *Balderic* Duke of *Friuli*, and *Barna* Duke of *Dalmatia*, remaining firm to the Emperor's Service; the first, with the few Men he could raise, defeated *Lindevit's* Army near the River *Drave*, and drove him out of the Country; the second likewise, on his Part, dispers'd and put to flight another Body of *Lindevit's* Troops, only by the Rumour he had spread of his own Strength, making them believe that he was much superior in Force to what he really was.

819.
The Treachery of the Duke of Croatia, and the first Defeat of his Troops.

NEVERTHELESS the Emperor, in the same Year 1119, took to his second Wife *Judit*, Daughter to *Guelph*, Count of *Ravensbourg* and *Aldorff*. This Princess had two Brothers, *Radolphus* and *Conrad*; one whereof she got made Governor of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*, and the other of *Italy*.

Second Marriage of Lewis the Debonnair.

LEWIS the
Debonnair.

The Duke of
Croatia en-
tirely de-
feated.

820.

THE Marriage being consummated at *Aix*, the Emperor there deliberated with the assembled States, upon Means to suppress entirely *Lindevit's* Revolt; for which purpose it was therein resolved to attack *Croatia* and *Bosnia* at once, which was effectually done the following Year 820 in *May*, with three Armies, the one penetrating into *Carinthia*, the other into upper *Austria*, and the third into *Dalmatia*. They made themselves Masters of all these Provinces, and oblig'd *Lindevit* to save himself by flying with a small Body of Forces to a Castle, which he had caus'd to be fortify'd, on the top of a high Mountain in *Croatia*, wherein he dy'd soon after.

Marriage
of Lothaire
eldest Son of
the Empe-
ror, who
grants a
Pardon to
Criminals
in favour
of the Nup-
tials.

821.

IN *October* the same Year, the Emperor summon'd a solemn Diet to meet at the Town of *Theodonis*, or *Tbionville*; and accordingly all the *French* and *German* Nobility, who were conven'd thither, attended; after which he invited them to assist at the Marriage of his eldest Son *Lothaire*, which he celebrated next Year with *Irmingarde*, Daughter to Count *Hugh*.

IN favour of these Nuptials, the Emperor by an Effect of his natural Clemency, order'd all the remaining Accomplices of the Conspiracy form'd against him by his Nephew *Bernard* to be brought before him, when he pardon'd their Crimes, and granted the Restitution of all their Effects which had been confiscated. He even set at Liberty *Adelard* Abbot of *Corbey*, and *Bernaire* his Brother, who had both been banish'd to *Aquitain*, and restor'd them to their Possessions and Dignities.

822.

AFTER the Marriage the Emperor return'd to *Aix*, where he resided some Time, during which he was inform'd of the Death of *Arne*, Arch-

Archbishop of Saltzburg, to which Dignity he preferr'd *Adelram de Neumage* in June 822. This latter a little after chose *Otho* Bishop of the *Sclavonians*, and settled him at *Venden*, in the room of *Theodore*, who died with the Reputation of a Saint, on Account of his having very zealously instructed the *Sclavonians* in the Christian Faith.

THE same Year *Mortag* King of *Bulgaria* sent him an Ambassador under Pretence of regulating their Frontiers together. But *Lewis* having discovered, by a Captain he dispatch'd into *Bulgaria*, that the design of the Embassy was only to sound the Affairs of *Germany*, and disturb its Tranquility, sent the Ambassador back, as he came, without granting him Audience, causing him to be told that He had no Dispute with his Master, on Account of Limits, since his Country was very distant from the Boundaries of the Empire.

THE Ecclesiasticks having often made Remonstrances to the Emperor against the Severity wherewith he had treated his natural Brothers, forcing them one after another to embrace a Monastick Life against their Wills, this Prince, in the Presence of several Bishops and other Persons of Distinction, made a publick Confession, did Penance, and was reconcil'd to them, giving them leave to come out of the Cloister, and even recalling *Valac* and *Adelard* to Court, and employing them in his Councils.

IN the mean Time his Son *Lothaire*, whom he had sent into *Italy*, and who was Master there of all Affairs, whether Ecclesiastick or Secular, was solicited by Pope *Paschal* to come to *Rome*. Accordingly he went there in the Year 823. Where he no sooner arriv'd, but his

Lewis the
Debonnair.

Holiness persuaded him to be crown'd Emperor, since he was already design'd for that Dignity by his Father; whence it appear'd that he had invited him to *Rome* only to have the Advantage of crowning him, as some of his Predecessors had *Lewis*, and *Charlemagne*. The Ceremony was perform'd in *St. Peter's Church*, the Imperial Crown being plac'd upon his Head, on *Easter Day*, after which Solemnity, *Lothaire* return'd into *Germany*.

Violence
committed
at Rome
against the
Emperor's
Partizans,
with the
Pope's In-
craachment
upon the
Rights of
the Empire.

SOME Time after *Lothaire's* departure from *Rome*, it is said that the People, by the Pope's Advice, put out the Eyes, and cut off the Head of *Theodore*, Dean of the *Roman Church*, and *Leo* the Protocolist, out of spite for their having maintain'd the Rights of the Emperor against the Pretensions of the Pope, whose Design, tho' he dissembled it, was to endeavour by all manner of means to render himself, by little and little, independent of the Empire

THE Emperor and his Son *Lothaire* were highly incensed at this Action, and the more, in that they remember'd that the *Roman* Clergy and People had violated the Respect and Submission due to his Imperial Majesty, when, without his Knowledge, they had proceeded to the Election of the same Pope. Hereupon these Princes sent Ambassadors to *Rome*, to enquire into the Truth of the Fact; and, upon their return with the Information they had received, his Holiness sent his Legates with them, to justify himself to the Emperor of what was laid to his Charge, protesting that he had no hand therein, and even clearing himself by Oath. The Imperial Ambassadors, during their Stay at *Rome*, did not forget severely to reprimand the People and Clergy, for having dar'd to intermeddle in the making of a Pope without his Majesty's
Appro-

Approbation; adding hereunto an exprefs Prohibition of ever committing the like Fault to the Prejudice of the Imperial Authority: And if Pope *Paschal* had not dy'd in the Year 824, the Emperor had not been fatisfy'd with only complaining thereof by his Ambassadors.

LEWIS the
Debonnaire.

825.

THESE Reprimands were not ineffectual; for, after *Paschal's* Death, *Eugene II* was not elected in his Place, but with the Emperor's Consent, his Majesty having afterwards ratify'd the Election.

SOME time before this, there had been a great Earthquake at *Aix*; twenty Villages in *Saxony* were reduced to Ashes by Thunder and Lightning; besides this, the Hail had spoil'd all the Corn and the Fruit there, and had done the same Damage in *Woitland*, *Thuringia*, *Franconia*, *Misnia*, and *Suabia*; the Storm reach'd to *Compeigne*, and the Parts adjacent, where they found Stones that weighed half a Pound. In short, in the Year 825 this Tempest was follow'd by so violent a Plague, in *France* and *Germany*, that almost all the Inhabitants died thereof; being sick but thirty Hours, and almost all who were seiz'd, were carried off.

An Earth-
quake, pro-
digious hail
and violent
Plague.

825.

THIS great Mortality did not prevent the Emperor's calling a Diet at *Nimeguen*, to remedy the Disorders in the Province of *Brittany*, where several Noblemen had taken up Arms, on Account of the Outrages committed against them by their Duke *Wilbormachus*. Both the Duke and others were summon'd to this Diet, to give an Account of their Conduct; and, on their coming, the Duke resolv'd to have recourse to the Emperor's Clemency, which was not unprofitable to him: For having at first prostrated himself at his Majesty's Feet, he forgave him all the chief Articles of the Accusa-

The tragi-
cal End of
the Duke of
Brittany,
who tyranniz'd over
his Subjects.

Lewis the
Debonnair.

tion wherewith he was charged; and sent him back, by the Approbation of the States, with Presents into the same Province. But, on his return, he again began his Tyranny, persecuting the neighbouring People with Fire and Sword, till at last he was justly punish'd by the Subjects of Count *Lambert*, who, gathering together, attack'd, and kill'd him, with all his Incendiaries, in a Castle whither they had retired.

Lothaire,
the Empe-
ror's eldest
Son, declar-
ed his Suc-
cessor, and
Lewis the
younger,
King of Ba-
varia.

ABOUT this Time *Lothaire*, having been sent to *Rome* to appease all the Differences that had arisen on account of a pretended Election of another Pope made by the People only, to the Prejudice of *Eugene*; and being on his Return, went to meet the Emperor his Father, who was at *Aix*, where he paid him his Duty in Presence of the States.

SOME Days after, the Emperor had him declar'd Successor to the Empire, and sent him back again to *Italy*. At the same Time he augmented the Kingdom of *Germany* (that is, of *Bavaria*, or the Western *France*, which he had given to *Lewis*) with *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, *Hungary*, and *Vindmarch*.

The Empe-
ror makes
sure of some
Princes his
Feudataries

826.

IN order to find Means to secure himself of the Fidelity of some Princes his Feudataries, whose Conduct had been render'd suspicious to him, he conven'd a Diet to meet at *Ingelheim* in *October* 826, where the Persons summon'd appearing at the Time appointed, the Emperor came immediately. But having examin'd well into the Informations given him concerning these Princes, who were all present, he did not think it necessary to guard against any but *Ceadrague*, Duke of *Abotrites*, and Count *Tunglon*. Whereupon he resolv'd to detain *Ceadrague* and *Tunglon's* Son, and to send back

Chap. III. of the EMPIRE.

69

back *Tunglon*, with some Persons in whom he cou'd confide, into the Country, with order to found the People, and inform themselves underhand, whether or no *Ceadrague* was agreeable to them. These Persons having made some Stay there, found that the People express'd an Indifference for the Duke, but that the States were desirous of having him again for their Governor; upon this Report the Emperor sent back the Duke, after taking some Hostages, for a greater Assurance of his Fidelity; a Precaution highly necessary on such Occasions.

Lewis the Debonnair;

HE had no sooner settled the Affairs of one Country, but he was oblig'd to apply a Remedy to the Disorders of another. The Priest *Heli-sacar*, whom he had sent into *Spain*, with some Officers of the Army, had manag'd Matters so prudently, together with Count *Bernari* of *Barcelona*, that all the Attempts of *Aizon*, who had rebell'd, would have been render'd vain, if *Abdirachman* King of the *Saracens* had not sent him a Reinforcement of a strong body of Troops, under the Command of *Abumarman*.

The Emperor sends his Son Pepin against the Saracens.

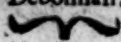
THIS General, having incamp'd near the City of *Augustus Caesar*, call'd now *Saragossa*, order'd his best Troops to march silently towards *Barcelona*, where they laid waste all the Country, bringing away all the Men and Cattle into his Camp.

THIS Disgrace, join'd to the Negligence of the Commanders in *Spain*, obliged the Emperor to send thither his Son *Pepin* King of *Aquitain*, with an Army sufficient to guard and defend the Frontiers of his Country, and oppose the Progress of the *Saracens*.

IN the Year 827, Armies were seen in the Air fighting with each other, with Thunder and Lightning, whereby abundance of Men and

827.

Lewis the
Debonnair.



Cattle were destroy'd. This was taken for a presage of the Disorders that ensued: In the mean Time Pope *Eugene* died in the Month of *August*.

Prodigies
in the Air.
Gregory
created Pope
and con-
firm'd by
the Empe-
ror..

IN his Room they elected the Deacon *Valentine*, who enjoy'd the See but two Months, being poisoned by one of his *Valets de Chambre*; and as soon as he was buried, the *Romans* rais'd *Gregory IV*, Archpriest of *St. Mary*, to the holy See; but he was not confirm'd Pope till the Arrival of the Emperor's Ambassadors at *Rome*, who approved and ratify'd his Election.

Ambassa-
dors mutu-
ally sent be-
tween Le-
wis and Mi-
chael.

THE same Year the Emperor keeping his Court at *Compeigne*, received the Ambassadors, sent to make a Treaty with him by *Michael* Emperor of *Constantinople*, and entertain'd them very magnificently. The Conditions being agreed on reciprocally, he also dispatch'd on his Part, *Haldigaire* Bishop of *Cambray*, and *Ausfrid* Abbot of *Noventule*, to *Constantinople*, to have the same ratified by *Michael*, who likewise treated them very honourably.

828.
Several
Misdemean-
ors punish'd.

KING *Pepin*, on his Arrival in *Spain*, found that the principal Officers of the Frontiers in those Countries were guilty of divers Crimes, and Authors of all the Disorders. Of this he gave Information to the Emperor, who, having deliberated upon Means, to apply a Remedy in the Diet he call'd at *Aix* in *February* 328, depriv'd these Officers of their Posts; and at the same time declar'd *Balderic*, Duke of *Friuli*, unworthy of his Dignity, for not having prevented the *Bulgarians* making Incurfions into upper *Austria*, and gave his Government to four Counts.

829.

DURING his Residence at *Aix*, he was surprized with an Earthquake, and so furious a Hurricane, that some Houses were thrown down

down, and the leaden Roof of *Notre Dame* Church was carried away. LEWIS the Debonnair.

ABOUT the same Time he was presented with grains of Corn which had fallen from the Heavens like a Shower of Rain, in *Gascony*; being like our ordinary Corn, only round and a little less. 829. An extraordinary Shower of Rain.

THE Year following, during his stay at *Aix*, he received the News of the Emperor *Michael's* Death, and the Advancement of *Theophilus* who succeeded. The Death of the Emperor Michael.

IN the mean while the Kingdom of *Bavaria* enjoy'd a profound Peace, and Queen *Emma*, Wife of *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, originally a *Spaniard*, was building the Abbey of *Niedermunster* at *Ratisbon*, where there is yet to be seen a Book wherein are these Words: *Carolus primus Caesar sua Virtute Germanicum Imperium Sanguineque acquisivit*; that is, "*Charles I Caesar, acquir'd the German Empire by his Valour and Blood.*" Antiquity of an Abby.

HOWEVER *Lewis* was not idle, for *Brinno* Duke of *Moravia*, from whom the City of *Brinn* derives its Name, comming to him with his Son *Hertzel*, were (by his Care) instructed in the Truth of the *Christian* Faith, baptized by *Adelram* Archbishop of *Saltzburg*, and held at the Font by the King: This Prince also by his Address accommodated the Difference between this Archbishop and *Regener* Bishop of *Passau*, touching the Limits of their Diocesses.

IN the Year 832, *Germany* seem'd greatly dispos'd to strange Commotions; which the Emperor endeavour'd (in some Measure) to prevent and moderate by his Prudence. 832. Cause of the Insurrection of the Emperor's Sons, and its ill Effects. But when 'twas known, that by the Advice of his second Wife *Judith*, he had resolv'd to give their Son *Charles* (who in the sequel will be

Lewis the
Debonnair.

835.

be call'd the *Bald*) *Rhetia* and upper *Burgundy* for his share, his three Sons by his first Marriage were so incens'd thereat, that whatever Care he took by chastising the Mutineers who seduc'd and incited them to an Insurrection, he could not prevent their making great Preparations for War, nor several States from taking hold of the Opportunity to form secret Intrigues against him and *Judith*. The Bishop *Ebbort* of *Rheims*, *Hungebrecht* of *Lyons*, *Bernard* of *Vienna*, *Tesse* of *Amiens*, *Helias* of *Troyes*, *Hildewin* Abbot of *St. Dennis*, and the Abbot of *Corbie*, were the Chief Authors of this Rebellion.

SEVERAL Dukes and Counts (together with the inferior Nobility) associated themselves to their Party, and were reciprocally engag'd by Oath to expose their Lives and Estates for the common Good. They were resolv'd to render themselves Masters of the Government, and, that they might succeed the better, chose *Pepin* of *Aquitain* their Leader, being return'd from *Spain*.

THIS Prince consented thereto immediately, his natural Temper being inclinable to be rash, restless, and prone to hearken to such Persons as suited themselves to his Humour. To begin his Rebellion by Action, he drove out of *Orleans* the Governor who had been put there by his Father, placing in his stead one of his Councillors, named *Mansfred*, a Man equally proud and covetous; and taking off the new Taxes, to win the Affections of the People.

THEY seiz'd on the Empress *Judith*, and confin'd her in a Convent of Nuns in *Gascony*, but the Major of the Palace escap'd into *Spain*; and the Ringleaders of this Sedition, both *French* and *Italians*, complain'd to *Lothaire* of the Emperor his Father's ill Conduct, and begg'd that he would himself take upon him the Care of the

the Government; insisting very strenuously, That Lewis the Debonnair.
they could no longer suffer an old Emperor to be seduc'd and impos'd on by a young baughty Woman.

LOTHAIRE then assumed the Reins of Government, giving orders above all, that the Emperor his Father should be in no ways ill treated; however he could not prevent some of the Rebels from pulling out the Eyes of his new Major, nor from banishing his Cousin, who was provincial Major of Orleans, even the Emperor himself being made Prisoner by the Bishops and Dukes who held Intelligence with Lothaire, the Emperor's Son, declar'd Regent.
Pepin. The Emperor made Prisoner, and then released.

THE Germans, who heard with Displeasure of the Emperor's Confinement, took up Arms, came to his Assistance, and set him at Liberty: Soon after which the Emperor call'd a Diet at 834.
Nimeguen, and the Bishops and Dukes were condemn'd to Punishments suitable to their Rebellion, some being beheaded, others drowned, others banish'd, or confin'd to a perpetual Prison. The Punishments of the Seditious; but the Emperor's Sons pardon'd.

PEPIN ask'd pardon, which was granted by the Emperor; *Lothaire* also was reconcil'd to his Father, and the Empress *Judith* was recall'd from *Gascony*, and restor'd to the Emperor, with her two Brothers, *Conrad* and *Radolphus*, both Dukes of *Suabia*: *Bernard* Major of the Palace was also delivered from Prison, so that he came again to his Master.

ALL these Things being thus re-establish'd, *Lothaire* return'd into *Italy*, and King *Lewis* to *Bavaria*, but *Pepin* (being the least tractable) was oblig'd to stay at the Court of the Emperor his Father. However he made his escape some Time after, and retir'd to *Gascony*, leading the same libertine and disorderly Life as before, and granting refuge and Protection (as usual in his Court) to all seditious and disorderly Persons.

THIS

*Lewis the
Debonnair.*

*Pepin sum-
mon'd to a
Diet, depos-
ed, and
made Pri-
soner.*

THIS Conduct oblig'd the Emperor to convene a Diet at *Orleans*, where *Pepin* and all his principal Officers and Councillors were commanded to attend; And as the Emperor came thither in Person, accompany'd with a strong Body brought from *Germany*, *Pepin* dreading his Father's Resentment, and not without Reason, could have wish'd not to have ventur'd into his Presence, but nevertheless could not avoid complying. In short, the Emperor resolv'd upon governing the Kingdom of *Aquitain* himself, and depriv'd all Councillors, who were either disloyal or suspected, of their respective Posts.

*Pepin a-
gain escapes
and takes
up Arms a-
gainst his
Father.*

As to *Pepin*, he sent him prisoner into *Germany* near *Treves*, whence he escap'd into *Gascony*, by bribing his Guards. There he levy'd a strong Body of Forces, whither all his Seditious Partizans immediately resorted, and incens'd him anew against his Father. An Accident befalling the Imperial Troops, that were upon full March against him, gave the principal Alarm for this second Rebellion, for they were almost all cut off in their March, by continual Rains, and extream Cold.

IT has been always seen by Experience, that when great Benefits are ill plac'd, they are generally repaid with extraordinary Ingratitude; several on whom *Lewis the Debonnair* had heap'd Favours, will furnish Us with a visible Example hereof, for he was persecuted to his Death, especially by those whom he had rais'd to the greatest Honours and Dignities. Certain Bishops, seconded by some of his Councillors, who were Slaves to their own Interest, and his sworn Enemies, making an artful Use of the Pretence of advancing *Germany* (as they said) to the height of Prosperity, and easing the Poor, had by fallacious Persuasions insinuated them-
selves

selves into the good Graces of his Sons, and that so far, that they obtain'd a Commission to regulate all Things, and a Power to dismiss such Ministers and Officers as would not submit to their Authority. The first Person over whom they intended to exercise their Power, was the Empress *Judith*, as being the chief Person who fomented the Division between the Father and the Sons.

Lewis the Debonair.

IN the mean while the three Sons being again re-assembled, united together, and levied great Forces, with the view of crushing their Father at one Blow. But that Prince, having gather'd Strength by the Assistance of the principal Nobility of *Germany*, cross'd the *Rhine* at *Worms* with his Army, in order to meet them, know the Reason of this Commotion, and endeavour, by all the Ways imaginable, to stop their Career. During this Juncture, Pope *Gregory* came to them, offering his Mediation to adjust their Difference; but this Visit made by his Holiness to the Sons, before the Father, contrary to all Decorum, having rendered him suspicious; the Emperor, either to prevent the Pope's good Offices, or through an Excess of paternal Goodness, sent, of his own Accord, his most considerable and faithful Ministers, with Letters of Credence to his Sons, to exhort them to Peace, and induce them to return to their Duty.

NOTWITHSTANDING this, the Pope receiv'd divers Reproaches in his Name, for having (contrary to all Forms, without his Consent, nay even without his Knowledge) offer'd himself first to his Sons, rather than to him: But nevertheless this Pontiff, with the Assistance of some Princes and Councillors of State, who were peaceably inclin'd, did not cease trying

LEWIS the Debonnair. ing all possible Means to put an End to the Troubles.

BUT the Accomplices of this rebellious Enterprize, not being willing to hearken to any Proposals for an Accommodation, least they should themselves incur the Punishment they deserv'd, bent their Thoughts Night and Day, either upon engaging the two Armies in a Battle, or inciting the Emperor's Forces to desert by Artifice, Money, or Presents, making them believe underhand, he was excommunicated by the Pope. Perhaps this might be the Cause why that good Prince, seeing he could not any longer go Back, resolv'd to leave his own Camp, go over to his Sons, and surrender himself at Discretion, to the End, said he, that Blood might be spared on all sides. It was on the last of *June*, the very Day appointed for the Battle, of which they being appriz'd, immediately set out to meet him, dismounted, embrac'd him, and conducted him into their Camp; the Empress, who was the Cause of this War, being committed to the Custody of *Lewis* King of *Bavaria*, and guarded by him in his Tent.

LOTHAIRE kept the Emperor with his young Son *Charles* in his Pavilion, whilst the Imperial Troops took an Oath of Allegiance to his Sons, who immediately divided all the Territories of the Empire into three Parts, and banish'd the Empress to *Verona* in *Italy*.

THEN Divine Justice, which is thought by the wicked to sleep, but nevertheless is always watchful for the Vengeance of Crimes, suffer'd Jealousies and Misunderstandings to grow between the three Brothers.

LEWIS and *Pepin*, seeing that the Nobility of *France* and *Italy* adher'd to *Lothaire*, and animated

animated him more and more against their Father, withdrew in Discontent, the first to *Bavaria*, and the other to *Gascony*; after which the principal Commanders dazzled the Eyes of *Lothaire* in such a Manner, that, losing all Respect for his Father, he led him as it were in Triumph thro' the whole Army, attended only by a few Horsemen, after which he confin'd him in the Monastery of *St. Medard at Soissons*, sending at the same Time his Son *Charles* to the Abbey of *Prum* near *Treves*. Thus *Lothaire*, taking Possession of the Government, disposed of all Things in his Fathers Place.

BUT the People, especially the *Germans*, were so mov'd with Compassion, at the Condition to which the Emperor was reduc'd, that they offer'd up Prayers in publick for his Re-establishment; besides which, by the Interposition of *Dreux* or *Trojo*, Bishop of *Metz*, the Emperors natural Brother, and some other Princes and Men of Probity, they solicited *Lewis* of *Bavaria* to use his Interest for his Restoration. These Entreaties had such an Influence over him, that he immediately dispatch'd a remarkable Embassy to his Brother *Pepin*, to incite him to take Measures with him for that Effect. *Pepin*, on this Occasion, acted answerably to his Birth; he join'd his Forces to his Brother's, and these two Princes taking the Field together with a powerfull Army, march'd to give Battle to *Lothaire*.

BUT to prevent, as much as possible, the inevitable Loss of so many Men, they sent to him two of their most prudent and experienc'd Ministers, viz. Bishop *Radwol* and Count *Hanson*. These Ambassadors were order'd to signify their Intentions in few Words, and being admitted to *Lothaire*, spoke to him in these Terms: Sir, said they, your dear Brothers, *Lewis*
King

LEWIS the
Debonnair.

King of Bavaria, and Pepin King of Gascony, with all Germany, and the most faithful Princes, States, and Councillors of the two Crowns, have commanded us to beg your Majesty to deliver up the Emperor Lewis their Lord and Father; and to declare, that, if you refuse, we will endeavour (with God's Assistance) to set him at Liberty, as we are oblig'd: Nay, we will even have recourse to Arms, if you will not. We offer You therefore Peace or War, chuse which you please, and give a positive Answer.

LOTHAIRE having heard these Ambassadors with sufficient Vexation, and maturely weigh'd the Importance and Consequence of the Message, as well as the Justice of their Demands, order'd all his Officers to withdraw, and went singly into a private Apartment with the Ambassadors. There He owned that he knew their Demand to be just, and said he had himself endeavoured to deliver his Father out of his Enemies Hands; but that the Bishops and other Ecclesiasticks, with some Persons of great Note, who were of that Number, had hinder'd his putting this good Design, to which they always seem'd very averse, in Execution; and that therefore he saw no speedier Remedy than to assemble the States, and cause his Liberty to be restor'd by those very People who had wrested it from him.

A N Answer so favourable, gave the Ambassadors a great deal of Joy, and they bent their Thoughts wholly upon putting it in Practice; but *Lothaire's* young Ministry being inform'd thereof, dissuaded him from it; wherefore, changing his Mind, he resolved to oppose Force to Force. To this End he march'd to *Burgundy* with his Army, and sent word to his Brothers, that he would expect them near the City

Chap. III. of the EMPIRE.

City of *Vienna*, to decide the Dispute about his Father's Liberty by Arms.

Lewis the Debonair

DURING these Transactions, the Nobility who were most prudent, and attach'd to the Emperor *Lewis*, took also the Field with a Body of Troops, march'd strait to *St. Dennis* near *Paris*, whither they had removed the Emperor, drew him out of his Monastery, and without finding any Resistance, set him at Liberty, and conducted him into *Germany*.

835.

ON their arrival there, which was about Mid-lent, in the Year 835, they put on his Imperial Robes, crown'd him anew, and made those who had robb'd him of them, restore him the Sceptre and Globe. *Lewis of Bavaria*, and *Pepin of Gascony*, assisting with great Joy at the Ceremony, and even causing the Empress his Wife to be recall'd to him.

The prudent and brave Conduct of the Emperor's faithful Subjects, who delivered him, and restor'd the Imperial Ornaments.

AFTER this Prince had been thus received in *Germany*, with the general Applause of the whole World, he apply'd himself to re-settle Affairs. Count *Otto*, Governor of *Orleans*, his Brother *William*, and the Abbot *Theodore* of *St. Martins* at *Tours*, took the Field by his Order to reduce the Rebels, force them to their Duty, and deprive their Leaders of the Posts they abus'd. But they who had been supplied by *Lothaire*, us'd all Mens to maintain themselves therein; they brought their Forces into the Field, march'd to attack the Emperor's, and that with so much Vigour, that they defeated them: The veteran Officers of the Imperial Army were kill'd upon the Spot, but the Soldiers who escap'd from the Fight, being rally'd by other Imperial Officers, return'd to the Charge, and repuls'd the Enemy so briskly, that *Berein*, who commanded them, was made Prisoner, and carried to *Chalons* in *Burgundy*.

The Emperor reassumes the Government, and pursues the Rebels, who are routed.

Lewis the
Debonnair.

LOTHAIRE, hearing of the Defeat of his Troops, and of his Father's Victory at the same Time, march'd with what Forces he had left towards the City of *Chalons*, which he took, sack'd, and burnt: The Governor was beheaded, and his Wife *Gebinge* drown'd for a Witch, after which *Lothaire* made haste to *Orleans* to succour his Army.

Lothaire
surrenders
himself to
his Father,
and asks
Pardon
publicly.

ON the other hand, the Emperor being informed of the Death of his old Officers, and the miserable State of the City of *Chalons*, gathered together what Men he could, and also caus'd *Lewis* of *Bavaria* to reinforce them with his Troops. They marched with all speed to *Langres*, and advanced in order to join King *Pepin*, who was coming to their Assistance, which they accordingly did. The two Armies being arriv'd near the River *Loire*, and *Lothaire* considering that all *Germany* was against him, and that his Father's Army surpass'd his, both in Number, Courage, and Experience, resolv'd to submit himself, and laying aside his Arms and his Cuirass, went and surrendred himself to the Emperor, asking him Pardon publicly for his Disloyalty and Disobedience.

836.

THE Emperor, moved with *Lothaire's* Repentance, forgave, and received him as his Son, and embraced him with Tears, at the same Time *Lothaire*, at the head of the Army, and in Presence of a great Number of the Nobility and States of *Germany*, swore publicly to his Father, holding up two Fingers of his right Hand, that he would be faithful and obedient to him for the future, as a Son ought to beto his Father, and that he was infinitely troubled for having followed and hearkned to the Council of those impious and perfidious Wretches who had seduced him.

AFTER

AFTER this Reconciliation, the Emperor re-
 turn'd to *Aix le Chapelle* with his Sons *Lewis*
 and *Pepin*: No sooner had he arriv'd there, but
 he gave Orders for calling a general Diet to be
 held at *Tbionville*. All the States of *Germany*,
France, *Bavaria*, and *Italy*, being there accord-
 ing to his Commands, the Emperor, with his
 two Sons, *Lewis* and *Pepin*, directed the States in
 what Manner they should proceed against the
 chief Accomplices in *Lothaire's* Conspiracy.

Lewis the
Debonnair.

A Famous
Diet where
the Rebels
are tryed.

THEY began, by imprisoning *Ebbo* Arch-
 bishop of *Rheims*, at *Hildesheim* in *Saxony*, and
 deposing the Archbishop of *Lyons*. As for the
 Dukes, they were punish'd more severely, as
 well as the Counts and Councillors, some be-
 ing either drown'd, or having their Eyes pull'd
 out, others were beheaded, or had their Hands cut
 off, and the rest dy'd of Hunger miserably in
 Prison. It seem'd as if God, to whom alone
 Vengeance belongs, and who disposes of Crowns
 and Scepters as he pleases, resolv'd to punish
 each particularly according as he deserv'd, that
 he might leave an Example to Posterity. For
Ebbo, who had written several Letters to foment
 the Rebellion, had his right Hand withered,
 and the two first Fingers always bent towards
 the Earth, indisputably as a Punishment for
 his having sworn Fidelity to the Emperor,
 with those same Fingers upon the Evangelists,

837

He howl'd like a Wolf, and ran about al-
 ways with his Mouth open, as if he would
 devour the World: In short, he died in Banish-
 ment of a Consumption. To this Chastisement
 the Emperor added Remonstrances full of
 Fatherly Tendernefs, recommending Peace,
 Union, and Concord to his Sons, as Things
 that contributed the most to the Grandeur and
 Prosperity of Princes and their People, after

Lewis the Debonnair. which he resolv'd to divide his Kingdoms and States amongst them.

A Project of a Partition made by the Emperor, whereas Lothaire and Lewis are dissatisfy'd. HE would have given, at the Sollicitation of his Wife *Judith*, upper *Burgundy*, *Alsatia*, *Switzerland*, and all *Suabia*, to her Son *Charles*; whereof *Lothaire* and King *Lewis* of *Bavaria* being appriz'd, held a Diet at *Trent*; where they resolv'd to oppose this Gift, as extorted by the Empress.

The Death of Pepin King of Aquitain. THIS Princess, in order to support herself in this Affair, and gain over King *Pepin* to her Interests, had engag'd him to take upon him the Guardianship of her Son *Charles*; but this Prince died on his return to *Gascony*, in September 838, leaving two Sons, *Pepin* and *Charles*.

So considerable an Alteration induc'd the Emperor to send an Embassy to invite *Lothaire* into *Germany*, to receive the Part of the Empire design'd for him. The King of *Bavaria*, on his Part, call'd a Diet at *Frankfort*, and remonstrated to all the Dukes and States of *Franconia* there present, how unjust the Proceedings of his Mother-in-Law *Judith* were, she intending to rob him of all the best Provinces, to invest her own Son *Charles* therewith. Hereupon 'twas there resolv'd, to defend the Rights and Liberties of the Crown of *Germany*, at the Peril of their Lives and Fortunes, and to follow his Orders in whatever was just against all his Enemies. The Emperor having Advice hereof, advanced with his Army to *Mentz*, where he pass'd the *Rhine*, and incamp'd within four Leagues of *Frankfort*. But the King of *Bavaria*, not being willing to give the Emperor his Father any Trouble, altered his Mind, and begged the Princes and Nobility of *Germany* to persist in paying their Duty and service to the Emperor, and to go and assure him that he would continue all

Accommodation between the Emperor and his Son Lewis, K. of Bavaria.

Chap. III. of the EMPIRE.

all his Life stedfast in his Obedience; after which he return'd into *Bavaria*. However those Nobility and States of *Germany*, who were deputed, meeting *Albrecht*, Captain General of the Imperial Troops, half-way between *Frankfort* and *Mentz*, as they were going to inform the Emperor of this Resolution, and having a Conference with him, declar'd frankly that they could not suffer the unjust Procedure of the Empress; that their Kingdom having been conquer'd by an infinite Number of heroic Actions, at the Price of their Blood and Estates, from whence it was called the Kingdom of *Germany*, they had a Right, and were resolved to keep it entire. In short, they prevail'd so far by these Reasons, and by divers other honest and prudent Remonstrances, which were told to the Emperor, that he consented to the Agreement propos'd between him and the King of *Bavaria*, who return'd to *Frankfort* for this Intent; where, after having paid his Respects to his Father, the Treaty was sign'd on both sides.

THE Emperor, having staid in this City the whole Winter, pass'd his Lent at *Coblentz*, and his Easter at *Constance*, and return'd to *Worms* about *May*, whither *Lothaire* also went on his coming back from *Italy*, and was receiv'd very magnificently, at this Place the last Division of the Emperor's Dominions was made. It was concluded by this Partition, that *Lothaire* should be Master of all *Italy*, with all the Countries from the *Maese* to the *Alps*; that *Lewis* should rest contented with the Kingdom of *Bavaria*, that is, the Eastern *France*; and that young *Charles* should hereditarily enjoy all the Territories from the *Maese* to *Spain*, and so should be King of the Western *France*. All

LEWIS the
Debonnair.

Accommodation be-
tween the
Emperor
and his Son
Lothaire,
with the
last Divi-
sion of *Le-
wis* the *De-
bonnair's*
Dominions.

Lewis the
Debonnair.



which was artfully contrived, managed, and carried on by the Advice of the Empreſs *Judith*. Thus we ſee that the Imperial Crown was not yet appropriated to the *French* Monarchy, altho' the Emperors look'd upon *France* as their ancient Patrimony, and their other Territories as Conqueſts.

The Gaſcons elect one of *Pepin's* Sons for their King; but the Emperor ſeiz'd him, and put his Son *Charles* in his ſtead.

ABOUT this Time the Ambaſſadors of *Gaſcony* came to the Emperor, ſand declared that the *Gaſcons* had elected *Pepin*, Son to their King *Pepin*, in his ſtead, becauſe he had been educated amongſt them, and underſtood their Language, Manners, Rights, and Cuſtoms. The Ambaſſadors were ſent back very civilly, but without any Answer, becauſe the Emperor, with the Empreſs his Wife, and his Son *Charles*, went in Perſon to carry it, and arriv'd in *Gaſcony* almoſt as ſoon as them. On his Arrival there, he preſented his Son *Charles* to the States of that Kingdom for their Sovereign; and at the ſame Time cauſ'd young *Pepin* to be taken Priſoner, and ſent him to *Metz* to be guarded, and brought up by the Biſhop of that Place.

839.
Lewis of
Bavaria
proteſts a-
gainſt the
Partition;
but is ſa-
tisfy'd by
the Empe-
ror.

DURING theſe Tranſactions, the King of *Bavaria* aſſembled the Dukes, Counts, and States of *Suabia*, *Franconia*, *Saxony*, and other Countries, at *Frankfort*, where he complain'd of the Partition that had been made, as he ſaid, to his Prejudice, offering to make a League with them to annul this Diſtribution. The Emperor, being inform'd hereof, ſet out immediately from *Poitiers*, where he had ſpent Part of the Winter, and advanc'd as far as *Mentz*, altho' he was very much indispos'd with a Cough, and a Deſluſion upon the Lungs, which had been cauſ'd by the Sharpneſs of the Weather. His Sickneſs obliging him to keep his Bed, he ſent

Chap. IV. of the EMPIRE.

83

sent for his Brother the Bishop of Metz; Otta-
der, Archbishop of Mentz; and Hatto, Arch-
bishop of Treves, in whose Presence he adjusted
the Difference between his Son Lewis of Bava-
ria and himself. But finding his Distemper in-
crease, he regulated other Affairs relating to
the publick Good; and, having pardon'd all the
Wrongs that had been done him, either by his
Friends or Enemies, he entirely quitted the
Care of worldly Affairs, in order to think on-
ly of such as concerned the Salvation of his
Soul; so that resigning himself up to the Will
of God, he expired the twenty first of June,
840, and was interred at Metz, in St. Arnold's
Chappel, near his Wife Hildegarde.

Lewis the
Debonair

840.
Lewis the
Debonair's
Death.



CHAP. IV.

LOTHAIRE.



LOTHAIRE having received in I-
taly certain Intelligence of the Em-
peror his Father's Death, the Dukes,
Officers, and Ministers, who had
been depriv'd of their Posts, press'd
him to set out immediately for Aix, there to
take Possession of the Imperial Throne, and
make the Germans do him Homage. They
had the more Reason to give him this Counsel,
because they were in hopes to be again reinstat-
ed in the Government, and to dispose, as they
had before done, of all things according to their
Caprice. Lothaire arrived at Aix, when he was

Lothaire
comes from
Italy to
Aix, to
make him-
self ac-
knowledg'd;
and at the
same time
seizes on all
the decess'd
Emperor's
Dominions.

LOTHAIRE least expected, where he caus'd the principal States of *France* and *Germany*, whom he had summon'd, to pay him Obedience. *Lewis*, King of *Bavaria*, and *Charles*, King of *France*, being appriz'd hereof, sent Ambassadors to desire him not to precipitate Affairs in this manner, because he well knew that they were Joint-Heirs with him to all their Father's Dominions.

BUT *Lothaire*, not giving Ear to prudent and wise Council, but suffering himself to be governed by Persons who had always been disaffected to the deceased Emperor, sent back the Ambassadors with this Answer; that he had been chosen, and acknowledged Emperor during his Father's Life; that since that Time his Father had caused the Imperial Crown to be placed on his Head, and declared him Emperor; that even in his last Sickness, and but few Days before his Death, he had deliver'd the Crown, Sword, and other Imperial Ornaments into his Hands; and that thus he neither could, nor ought to suffer any Competitor; that it was in no wise for the Advantage of his Subjects or States to have many Sovereigns; that being the eldest, he could not recede from any of his Rights; but nevertheless, to give them a Proof of his good Intentions, and to enable them to support their Royal Dignity, he would consent that his Brother *Lewis* should possess *Bavaria* by Inheritance; and *Charles*, *France*, on Condition of holding these Fiefs of him, acknowledging him Emperor, and being oblig'd to assist him against his Enemies, in Case of need.

THE two Princes absolutely rejected these Conditions, each of them resolving to be sovereign Masters of the Dominions they enjoy'd.

joy'd. And as they found they should be oblig'd to maintain their Rights by Force, each rais'd considerable Armies, *Lewis* marching with his from *Bavaria*, and *Charles* with another from his Territories. *Lothaire* had already made himself Master of the City of *Metz*, and was advanc'd with a Design to incamp before *Mentz*. But *Lewis* prevented him by putting a Garrison therein, whilst he endeavour'd, as much as possible, to gain over the Emperor his Father's Troops. *Lothaire* also was not idle on his Part, and being inform'd by those whom he employ'd, that they were dispos'd to espouse his Cause, he resolv'd to pass the *Rhine* at *Worms* the twenty second of *April*, that he might be near them, and favour their Design the better. In short, he manag'd Matters so well, either by himself, or those whom he deputed, that most Part of the Officers and Soldiers engaged in his Interest.

LOTHAIRE:
The Brothers
resolve not
to be depen-
dent on the
Emperor,
and take up
Arms to
maintain
their So-
vereignty.

841.

LEWIS, finding himself thus depriv'd of the Assistance of those Officers on whom he most rely'd, was oblig'd to fly with Part of his Cavalry, leaving his Infantry to the Mercy, or rather the Butchery of the Imperialists; for they were treated with such Barbarity, that above twenty thousand Men were kill'd on the spot, sparing neither Fathers, Sons, Relations, nor Friends.

*Lewis de-
feated.*

LEWIS was no sooner return'd into *Bavaria*, but he summon'd the Nobility, inlist'd all who were capable of bearing Arms; and having levied a considerable Body of Forces, march'd to meet *Albrecht*, *Lothaire's* General, who was entering into *Bavaria* with the Troops under his Command. The two Armies met together in *Suabia* near the *Rhine*, and fought so obstinately, that the Imperialists were at last defeated, and

*Lewis re-
venged.*

LOTHAIR. and lost eight thousand Men, with their General *Albrecht*, upon the spot; after which Victory *Lewis* march'd towards the *Maese*, where he was join'd by his Brother *Charles*.

*Lewis joins
his Brother
Charles,
and gains
the famous
Battle of
Fontenai
over Lo-
thaire.*

THE two Brothers having review'd their Troops, immediately advanced towards upper *Burgundy*, where *Lothaire* was, and incamp'd within two Leagues of his Army; which done, they sent Ambassadors to him, to demand their respective Portions, but could neither obtain Audience nor Justice: On the contrary, *Lothaire* having put his Army in Battle Array, oblig'd *Lewis* and *Charles* to do the same. The Onset was given at *Fontenai* near *Auxerre*, on the twenty fifth of *June*, the Day after *St. John Baptist*, and lasted from seven in the Morning till Night, and the Slaughter was so great on both sides, that above 100,000 Men were kill'd on the spot, and the two Brothers *Lewis* and *Charles* remain'd Masters of the Field of Battle. The Emperor *Lothaire* made his Escape (the only Refuge left) after he had beheld with Grief the Death of his best Officers, and those, who, through an inordinate Ambition and excessive Avarice, had animated him against his Brothers, imagining themselves invincible, without considering that God fights in the Cause of Justice. The *Germans* in this Engagement lost their best Officers, and so far were they, as they had flattered themselves, from augmenting the Power and Dominions which were left them by their Ancestors, who had conquered and preserved them by their Valour, that, on the contrary, they were extreemly weakned. Some time after this Battle, *Lothaire* made an Agreement with his Brothers, yielding up to each of them what they demanded, and contenting himself with

Chap. IV. of the EMPIRE.

83

with the Empire, and *Italy*: But this Agreement not lasting long, another Battle was fought, where Fortune again declaring against *Lothaire*, he thought it most adviseable to make a new Treaty, and kept it inviolably.

LOTHAIRE:
An Agree-
ment be-
tween Lo-
thaire and
his Bro-
thers.

BESIDES, considering the Misfortunes he had undergone, (without Doubt as a Punishment for the Troubles he had unjustly caus'd the Emperor his Father) he resolv'd to live in Peace, and divided his Dominions among his Sons. His eldest Son *Lewis*, whom he had some time before declared his Successor to the Empire, and the Kingdom of *Italy*, he confirm'd Emperor, and delivered those Dominions up to him. To his second Son *Charles*, who died without Children in 862, he gave the Kingdom of *Provence*, with part of *Burgundy*; and the Kingdom of *Austratia*, to his third Son *Lothaire*, from whom it was call'd *Lotharingia*, or *Lorrain*, with the other part of *Burgundy*: This young Prince died also without Legitimate Issue in the year 869.

The last Dis-
position of
Lothaire's
Dominions
in Favour
of his Sons.

THE Emperor having thus made this Partition, and being left a Widower by the Decease of his Wife *Irmingarde*, who died in 851, regulated the Affairs of State by degrees, and then retired to the Abbey of *Prum*, near *Treves*, intending to live a Monastick Life, and prepare himself for a future State: But his Death happening soon after, he was deprived of the Opportunity of long Repentance for his past ill Conduct.

Lothaire
turns Monk,
and dies.

855.



CHAP.



C H A P. V.

LEWIS the Second.

LEWIS II.

This Empe-
ror resides,
and dies at
Rome.



LEWIS, the eldest Son of Lo-
thaire, had been declared King of
Italy by his Father, in the Year
844, after which he was pro-
claimed Emperor *Augustus*, and
lastly, crowned by Pope Ser-
gius II. He contented himself with waging
War against the *Saracens* in Italy, whilst his two
Uncles, *Lewis* the Germanick King of *Bavaria*,
and *Charles* the Bald, King of *France*, were
contriving how to aggrandize themselves both
at his and their own Expence.

IF the Dominions which were allotted him
with the Title of Emperor, had been equal to
his Merit and Capacity, he would have adorn'd
the Imperial Dignity as much as his Predeces-
sors; but he did not possess above the ninth Part
of *Charlemagne's* Territories; He was devout,
honest, couragious, and prudent. The War he
made against the *Saracens* of *Africa*, to drive
them from the Coasts of *Italy*, which they in-
fested, did not cost him so much Trouble as
that he carry'd on against *Adalgises*, Duke of
Benevento; which, however, at last ended glo-
riously. He forced this Duke to conclude a
Peace with him, whereby he oblig'd himself
not to enter again into *Benevento* during Life;
whereat the *Roman* Senate were so enraged, he
having done it without their Knowledge, that
they

they declared him guilty of High-Treason, and condemned him to Banishment, and he, to avoid the Evils that threaten'd him, retired to *Corfica*, where he died. At the same time the Pope declared the Marriage of *Lothaire*, the Emperor's Brother, with his Concubine *Waldrade*, unlawful, seeing that he contracted it in spite of the Prohibitions of the holy See; and suspended the Archbishops of *Treves* and *Cologn*, and excommunicated the Synod, who had pronounced it lawful.

NEVERTHELESS *Lothaire* persisted in living with *Waldrade* as usual, treating her as his Wife, till such Time as he was call'd into *Italy* by the Emperor, who demanded his Assistance against the *Saracens*; and, being there, was oblig'd to go to *Rome*, and to make Satisfaction to Pope *Adrian II.* in whose Presence he swore, and even made some of his Nobility confirm it upon Oath, that he had no Communication with *Waldrade* since the Prohibition of Pope *Nicholas*: And as he receiv'd the Communion hereupon, 'twas observ'd that the Death which surpriz'd him at *Piacenza*, was a Punishment from Heaven for his Perjury: 'Twas also remark'd, that not one of those who swore, and were Communicants with him, surviv'd this Impiety above six Months.

THE Emperor continued always in *Italy*, and resided chiefly at *Rome*, maintaining there generously his Authority, and the Dignity of the Empire, against the Usurpations of the Popes, and died at *Milan* in *August* 875. after reigning twenty Years. He was buried there in the Church of *St. Ambrose*, leaving behind him no Male Heir, but so glorious a Reputation for his Virtue, Courage, and Zeal in curbing the

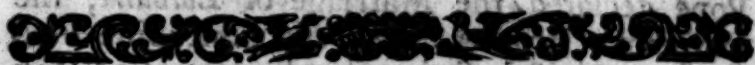
LEWIS II.

867.

868.

875.

the Enemies of Christianity, that he alone of all *Charlemagne's* Descendants, seem'd to inherit the Blood of that great Emperor.



CHAP. VI.

CHARLES II. surnam'd the Bald.

CHARLES
II.

Charles,
tho' young-
est, preferr'd
to Lewis,
the elder
Brother, in
the Succes-
sion to the
Empire.



LEWIS, King of Germany, surnam'd the Germanick, pretended that, after the Death of the Emperor Lewis, his Nephew, he had a right to succeed him, both by Law, and the Will of the late Emperor, his Brother. But *Charles the Bald*, his younger Brother, King of France, a cunning and politick Prince, pass'd the Alps, and made such strong Interest with Pope *John VIII.* that his Holiness, and the other Roman Prelates, judging there was more to be got by Charles, than Lewis, gave him the Preference, and crown'd him Emperor on Christmas Day, 875.

He gains
over the
Pope, at the
Expence of
the Rights
of the
Crown.

THUS *Charles the Bald* usurp'd the Empire of his elder Brother, to whom it belong'd by the *Salique Law*; which, by a continual unalterable Decree, preserves the Succession for the Male Heir, who is nearest in Blood to the deceased.

IF *Charles* had no Right to the Imperial Crown in Prejudice of his Brother, the Pope had yet less to place it on his Head, and acknowledge him Emperor. The one infring'd the *Salique Law*, a Law that was ever held sacred and inviolable among the Princes of France; and the other gave what was not in his Power

Chap. VI. of the EMPIRE.

93

Power, a Vassal not being impowered at Pleasure to make himself a Sovereign, but obliged indispensibly to receive him that is appointed by Law.

CHARLES II.

ACCORDINGLY *Charles*, being dubious perhaps of the Validity of this Attempt, had gained the Pope over to his Interest at the Expence even of the Rights of the Imperial Crown, and the sovereign Authority which his Predecessors had always over the Popes till that Time; insomuch that, from being his superior, as he was, he made himself his Vassal. Besides this, he yielded up yet many more of the Rights of the *Gallican Church*, and promis'd him upon Oath to protect him against any one. But such illegal Concessions, made by Persons having no Power of disposal, cannot in any wise be binding; the Truth and Justice of which Assertion is proved by this eternal, unerring Maxim in Politicks, That a bad Title cannot be established, or made legal and just, thro' length of Time.

As soon as *Lewis*, King of *Germany*, the lawful, and even the designed Successor of the Emperor, his Nephew, by his last Will, had heard of the Step taken by his Brother *Charles*, he resolved to march into *Italy*, and procure himself likewise to be acknowledged Emperor; but before he was in a Condition to undertake that Expedition, he died at *Frankfort* the twenty eighth of *August*, 876. leaving three Sons by his Wife *Emma*, *Carloman*, *Lewis*, and *Charles*, who divided the Dominions left them by their Father.

876.

CARLOMAN, for his Part, had *Bavaria*, *Austria*, *Bohemia*, and *Moravia*. *Lewis* enjoy'd *Saxony*, *Thuringia*, *Friezland*, *Franconia*, and that Part of *Lorrain* which his Father had, in Consequence

CHARLES
II.

sequence of the Partition made with *Charles the Bald*, after the Death of *Lotbair*; and *Charles*, surnam'd the *Gross*, had only *Suabia* for his Share.

877.
His Death.

THE Emperor *Charles the Bald*, did not long enjoy the Fruits of his Usurpation, for he only reign'd about two Years and two Months, and died at *Mantua* the sixth of *October*, 877. of Poyson given him by his Physician, who was a *Jew*, nam'd *Zedechias*: This was the first Emperor to whom the Pope gave the Title of *Most Christian*.

HE had two Sons by his Wife *Richilda*, Daughter to *Etico* Count of *Altorf* in *Suabia*, who both died young; and by his second Wife *Hermantrade*, Sister to *Boson*, King of *Provence*; he left four Sons, *Lewis*, surnam'd the *Stammerer*, King of *France*, *Lotbair*, *Charles*, and *Carloman*, and a Daughter whose Name was *Judith*.



C H A P. VII.

LEWIS III. surnamed the *Stammerer*,
and CARLOMAN.

His Coronation.
878.

LEWIS, surnamed the *Stammerer*, because of a Hesitation in his Speech, being the eldest Son of *Charles the Bald*, was crowned King of *France* at *Rheims*, by the Arch-Bishop *Hincmar*, in the Year 877. and on the seventh of *September*, 878, he was crowned Emperor at *Troyes* by Pope *John VIII*, in the Presence of all the

Chap. VII. of the EMPIRE.

95

the Council which was then held there, and had been call'd by the same Pope after his withdrawing into *France*.

LEWIS III.

CARLOMAN, eldest Son to *Lewis* the Germanick, always disputed with him the Title of Emperor, having been declared so by a great many Princes of *Germany*, and *Italy*. They espous'd his side by Reason of the Justice of his Cause, and upon this Foundation they seiz'd on the City of *Rome*, and the Pope himself, who was returned thither. They blam'd him highly for his Rashness, and proclaim'd King *Carloman* Emperor, re-establishing in his Person the *Salique* Law. But *Carloman*, being at last afflicted with the Palsy, consented that *Charles* the Gross, his younger Brother, should assume the Imperial Title in his stead, and a little after retired to *Oetingen*, where he died in the Year 880, leaving behind him no Male Heirs but *Arnold* his natural Son, who in the sequel was chosen Emperor.

Carloman
disposes the
Empire
with him.

LEWIS, having taken a Journey into *Germany*, where he adjusted his Difference with the King of *Bavaria*, about the Partition of *Lorraine*, returned into *France*, where he no sooner arriv'd; but, finding the Indisposition that had seiz'd him increase, he sent for his eldest Son, and recommending him to the Count of *Bourges* and *Auvergne*, together with the Marquis of *Nevers*, and *Thierri* Count of *Macon*, he died at *Compeigne*, not without Suspicion of being poysoned, on the sixth of April, 872.

879.
The Death
of Lewis.



H

CHAP.



C H A P. VIII.

CHARLES III. called the Gross, or the Fat.

CHARLES
III.

His Expedi-
tion into
Italy, and
Coronation.
88c.



His Great-
ness, but of
short Con-
tinuance.

CHARLES III. called the Gross, or the Fat, youngest Brother to Carloman, and Lewis the Scammerer, immediately after the Death of the latter, being solicited by Pope John VIII to send his Ambassadors to Rome, and to follow himself as soon as possible, went for Italy, and having first made sure of Lombardy, was crowned King at Milan. From thence he set out for Rome, where the Pope placed the Imperial Diadem on his Head in the Year 880, on Christmas Day. Thus the same Pope, who first violated the Salique Law, having better consider'd of it, maintain'd it in the Person of this Prince, so that Charles succeeded not only to the Kingdom of the Western France, but also to so many other States, that he might have boasted of possessing almost all the Territories which were before subject to his great Grandfather Charlemagne. And as the Imperial Crown was re-united in his Person to the French Monarchy, 'tis evident that, according to Law, this Crown could no more be separated from that Monarchy; but both the one and the other meeting with weak Supports in this Prince, and his Successors, who ought always to have kept them united, the whole Structure was demolish'd in a short Time.

FROM

FROM the Ruins of that, an infinite Number of new States were form'd; the *French* being reduced by their Bloody War with the *Normans*, to the utmost Necessity, which hearkens to no Law, invited *Eudes* Count of *Paris*, to govern them: Thus he who was before only the Ruler of a Province, began to make himself a Sovereign, and he who was but a Subject, to be independent; and in fine the *Roman* Eagle, no longer agreeing with the *French* Race of *Charlemagne*, took flight from this Prince to the *German* Stem, as being more capable of maintaining its Glory.

CHARLES
III.

To return to *Charles* the *Gross*; this Prince, as powerful as he was, having managed Affairs unfortunately, and being likewise defective in his Senses, thro' a Cut he had receiv'd in his Head, became the Sport and Scorn of the World. He saw himself at once without Empire, Kingdom, or Subjects, and reduced to such extream Misery, that he had died of Hunger, if *Luitpert* Archbishop of *Mentz*, (shock'd at such a Change) had not in Charity allow'd him a Maintainance, till a Pension was assign'd him upon the Village of *Nidingen* in *Suabia*.

885.

THIS strange Misfortune was ascrib'd to his undutiful Behaviour to *Lewis* the *Germanick* his Father, when he, with *Lewis*, one of his Brothers, rebell'd against him. *Charles* suffer'd however this extream Poverty with great Patience, and an intire Resignation to the Divine Will, till the twelfth of *January* 888, when Death, taking him out of the World, delivered him also from the Miseries under which he groaned. He left but one natural Son, named *Bernard*, having put away his Wife *Richarde*, Daughter to the King

888.

A Punishment for his Undutifulness to his Father.

of Scotland, and a very discreet Princess, who retired to the Convent of *Andelau*: He was the first who added the Date of the Common *Æra*, or the Year of our LORD, to his Acts, or other Dispatches.



C H A P. IX.

A R N O L D.

ARNOLD.

Declared
Emperor, on
account of
his Merit.



ARNOLD, natural Son to *Carloman* King of *Bavaria*, had, by his Father's Will, inherited the Provinces of *Carinthia* and *Stiria*, and perceiving the Decline of the Empire, had seiz'd upon Eastern *France*; and as, on one Hand, he had render'd himself agreeable to his Uncle *Charles the Gross*, by his Services in the War against the *Normans*; so, on the other, the States of *Germany* being already used to see the Imperial Crown on the Head of *German* Princes, in the Persons of the former Emperors, assembled at *Frankfort* two Months before the Death of *Charles*, who was grown incapable of the Government, and judging *Arnold* worthy to supply his Place, proclaim'd him Emperor, to the Exclusion of King *Charles the Simple*, youngest Son to *Lewis the Stammerer*. This King, to say the Truth, was lawful Heir to the Imperial Crown; but he was not of an Age fit to act in Person, and command the Armies against the *Danes* and *Normans*, who ravag'd *France*, as has been already said, and even made IncurSIONS into *Germany*, which was the Reason they preferr'd *Arnold*

Chap. IX. of the EMPIRE.

99

nold to him. In effect, *Arnold* repuls'd them twice vigorously, and at last utterly routed them near *Louvain*, where they left an hundred thousand Men dead upon the spot, besides their Kings *Godfrey* and *Sigefrid*. ARNOLD.

THIS Emperor gained also divers Victories over the *Sclavomians*, who made continual Incursions into the Empire; but the Progress of *Suintebold* Duke of *Moravia*, to aggrandize himself, cross'd his good Fortune. This Duke had render'd himself so formidable, that *Arnold*, to obtain his Friendship, was oblig'd to yield him *Bobemia*, and chuse him Godfather to one of his Sons; accordingly he made him hold his natural Son at the Baptismal Font, that he might be named *Suintebold*. But this Demonstration of Confidence did not hinder his providing against this *Barbarian*, and preventing him in his Design of rendring himself absolute. To this end, he had recourse to *Casula* Duke of *Hungary*, and *Uratisslaus* Duke of *Poland*, who furnish'd him with sufficient Assistance to force *Suintebold* in his Turn, to deliver up his Son as a Security for his Fidelity. Having thus quieted all Things in *Germany*, he went into *Italy* to appease the Troubles caus'd there by the Schism of two Popes, as well as the Factions of *Guy* Duke of *Spoletto*, and *Lambert* his Son, Rivals for the Empire one after another; the first of whom dying, and the other being too weak to resist *Arnold*, this Prince made himself Master of *Bergamo*, and great Part of *Italy*. This done, he return'd into *Germany*, to establish his Son *Suintebold* King of *Lorrain*; and having settled Affairs there, he again went into *Italy*, where, partly by Force, partly otherwise, he managed Matters so as to make his entry into *Rome*, and

893.

896. get himself crown'd Emperor by Pope *Formosus* I. in the Year 896.

899. IN short, this illustrious Prince, after so many glorious Actions, died in a Christian-like manner at *Oetingen*, tho' of Poyson, or, as some others say, of the *Morbus pedicularis*, in the Year 899, and his Body was buried at *St. Emmeran's* of *Ratisbon*, near that of *Carloman* his Father.



CHAP. X.

LEWIS the Fourth.

LEWIS IV

900.
Chosen Em-
peror, tho'
an Infant.



THOUGH *Lewis*, the Emperor *Arnold's* Son, was but seven Years old, yet he was declared Emperor, after his Father's Death, by the Princes and Nobility of *Germany* assembled at *Forcheim*, who appointed *Hatto* Archbishop of *Mentz*, and *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, his Governors and Counsellors.

900.

THIS Prince, during his Reign, met with various Fortune; the beginning thereof was disturb'd by the War he waged with *Suintebold* his Brother, occasion'd by the Inhabitants of *Lorrain's* complaining against his Government: To whom he giving Ear, march'd to their Assistance with a powerful Army, wherewith *Suintebold* was defeated in a pitch'd Battle, and kill'd on the Spot; but the *Hungarians* in the End caus'd him more Trouble.

HIS Father *Arnold* had yielded up *Transylvania* to them (in Consideration of the Services they rendered him against *Suintebold* Duke

of

Chap. X. of the EMPIRE.

101

of *Moravia*) but these *Barbarians*, not content therewith, being desirous of taking Advantage of the Emperor's Minority, had made Incursions into *Bavaria*, and exercis'd all manner of Cruelties. This obliged *Leopold* Duke of *Bavaria* to raise what Troops he could to repel them; accordingly he defeated them, and gain'd such a considerable Victory, that, had he pursued the Blow, they would never more have thought of returning; but, failing in this, he gave them Time to recover.

LEWIS IV

902.

ABOUT five Years after they again invaded *Bavaria*, ravaging the whole Country with the same Barbarity as before; the Emperor being informed hereof, immediately marched against them, and gave them Battle at *Augsburg*, but so much to his Disadvantage, that he there lost most of his best Officers, and, amongst the rest, the brave Duke *Leopold*, being, as it were, a Punishment for his former Neglect, in not cutting them entirely off in their Retreat; this Misfortune reduced the Emperor to the Necessity of making Peace with them, on Promise of paying them a yearly Tribute.

907.

908.

BESIDES, the Empire was extremely harra's'd with Civil Wars; *Albert*, *Adelard*, and *Henry*, all three Counts of *Bamberg*, having united against *Conrad* of *Franconia*, *Ebelbard*, and *Gebhard* of *Hesse*, and the Bishop of *Wirtzburg*, whose Animosity was so great on both sides, that their frequent Battles with the loss of divers Generals and great Numbers of Officers and Soldiers, could not induce them to agree. The Emperor did all that was possible to prevent the ill Consequences of this intestine War; till, finding his Authority too weak to prevail upon *Albert* of *Bamberg*, he was forc'd to make use of extraordinary Means against him.

Lewis IV him, who, suspecting as much, took all manner of Methods to avoid falling into his Hands; but the Emperor, resolving to arraign him, bethought himself of employing *Hatto*, Archbishop of *Mentz*, to trepan him. Accordingly this Prelate went to visit *Albert*, and persuaded him to go to the Emperor, upon giving his Word to see him safe back to his Castle; the Count was prevail'd upon through Complaisance, and desir'd the Archbishop to dine at the Castle; but *Hatto* excused himself, and press'd the Count to be going. Hereupon they both set out from thence, but had not gone above a Mile when *Hatto*, feigning to be faint, seem'd to repent having refus'd *Albert's* Civility, which was enough to induce the Count to desire his Return to the Castle, whereto *Hatto* agreeing, he, by this Trick, pretended to be disengag'd from his Promise. Dinner being over, they set forward on their Journey, and *Albert* was deliver'd up by the Archbishop into the Hands of the Emperor, who caus'd him to be beheaded for his Rebellion.

909.

911.

THE Emperor, who, as may be imagin'd, had great Share in this Deceit, was sufficiently punish'd at the Age of twenty, by being oblig'd to make an ignominious Treaty, and accept of Peace with the *Normans*, after losing the best Part of his Nobility in two Battles. This Disgrace made so great an Impression on him, that he was seiz'd with a violent Head-Ach, attended with a malignant Fever, which continually increasing, he died thereof on the twenty first of *January*, 912, without any legitimate Male Heirs.

912.

The Empire
transferr'd
to the Ger-
mans.

1111.

It was then the Empire was transferr'd from the *French* Race, or the Male Heirs of the *Kings of France*, whose Right it was: At which Time

1111

Time it comprehended *Franconia*, the Province ^{LEWIS IV} of *Bamberg*, *Swabia*, *Constance*, *Basil*, *Berne*, *Lausanne*, *Burgundy*, *Besancon*, *Lorraine*, *Metz*, *Liege*, *Cambray*, *Arras*, *Flanders*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Utrecht*, *Cologne*, *Treves*, *Mantz*, *Worms*, *Spires*, *Strasbourg*, *Friezland*, *Saxony*, *Hesse*, *Westphalia*, *Thuringia*, *Wetteravia*, *Misnia*, the Marquisate of *Brandenbourg*, *Pomerania*, *Rugen*, *Stetin*, *Holstein*, *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Poland*, *Bohemia*, *Austria*, *Carinthia*, *Stiria*, *Tirol*, *Bavaria*, the *Grisons*, and, in general, all the Countries lying between these Provinces, or dependent on them.

THEY likewise included therein the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, with *Rome*, *Italy*, *Lombardy*, and all the Fiefs thereunto belonging; this was the Body of the Empire, and this will shew the Reason why the Imperial Crown was transferr'd from the House of *France*.

IF the Title of EMPEROR had remain'd annex'd to the *French* Monarchy, without introducing any Partitions, which have always prov'd fatal to all States, the Empire would have been perpetuated in the Race of the Kings of *France*; and whatever Changes had happen'd, they would have respected the Imperial Dignity as belonging to the King, and the one would have been included in the other. But the Division made by *Lewis* the *Debonnaire* having alienated the Affections of his Sons, and created a mutual Hatred and Aversion between them, and consequently between the Subjects of each of these Partitions, they became in a very small Time Strangers to each other. Besides, the Weakness and Incapacity of the Kings of *France*, who were Heirs to *Lewis* the *Stammerer*, gave an Opportunity to the Governors of most Part of the Provinces to usurp the sovereign Authority, with the De-
mesnes

LEWIS IV mesnes of the Crown; all which together was partly the Cause why the Kings of *France*, who were descended from *Charles the Bald*, and who might lawfully have disputed the Empire with *Arnold*, *Carloman's* natural Son, and his Successor *Lewis*, gave over their Claim.

The Empire hereditary in Charles-magne's Family, and why.

NEVERTHELESS it may be remark'd, that the Empire was hereditary in the Family of *Charlemagne*, and his Descendants; nor could it be otherwise, since the several Parts whereof it consisted were the Conquests and Price of the great and heroick Exploits of that magnanimous Prince.

'Twas for this Reason that, when he declar'd his Son *Lewis the Debonnair* Emperor, he crown'd him himself, or, as others say, put the Imperial Diadem upon the Altar, in Presence of all the great Men, and order'd his Son to take and place it upon his own Head, to shew he only held it of God and his Father, to whom he was lawful Successor.

WHEREFORE, on the other hand, if the Emperors have often appointed their Successors by their Wills, and even have desired to have these their Wills ratify'd by the Grandees of the Empire, this Ceremony was only to avoid the Inconveniences and Divisions that might arise amongst so many Nations, whose Humours, Inclinations, and even Languages, were entirely different from each other.

IN the same manner we see that the Kings of *France* send their Edicts to be register'd in the Parliaments; for this Registring is only to notify the Will of the Prince, that other Subjects may pay Obedience to it, being thus communicated by the Means of these Tribunals.

'Tis farther seen, that these Wills were only used to prevent the fatal Divisions which might happen amongst the Sons, after the Father's Death, on account of the Distribution of the Dominions; and even these have often proved but a weak Barrier against Violence and Ambition.

YET, these Wills are convincing Proofs of the Right these Fathers had to dispose of the Empire, it being in their Power to give it to either of their Sons, and 'twas by Virtue of this Right, that these Children always inherited, although there was no Will, (conforming in this to the Law of Nature, or the *Salique* Law, which is the same in this respect) and that in Default of Sons, the next, who was capable of succeeding, inherited the Crown, according to this fundamental Law. This is still more evident from the Ceremony of the Inauguration of the Kings of *France*; for altho' the Peers, who are there assembled, crown them, and place the Diadem on their Heads, they do not nevertheless elect them, but only obey this Law; submitting thereto in the Name of all the People, whose Deputies they are, and receiving the Person whom the Law appoints. This is so true, that if they should presume to crown any one whom the Law excludes, the Coronation, not having any Foundation in Justice, would of it self be void, and of no effect; and this is the Power of the *Salique* Law, which is inseparable from the *French* Empire.





C H A P. XI.

The Genealogy of the French Emperors.

Pepin.



EPIN, King of France, Son of Charles Martel, and Swanibild, born in the Year 714, and dying at St. Dennis in the Year 768, had four Sons by his Wife Bertba, Charles, Carloman, Pepin, and Giles; and three Daughters, Rotbaide, Adelaida, or Alix, and Giletta; which Daughters dy'd without Children, as well as the three younger Sons.

912.

Charle-
magne Em-
per.

CHALES, surnam'd the Great, or Charlemagne, born the twenty eighth of January, 747, having put away his first Wife Theodora, Daughter to Didier, King of Lombardy, without having any Children by her, had, by his second Marriage with Hildegard, Daughter to Immon, or Hildebrand, four Sons and six Daughters: 1. Charles, King of Germany, who dy'd without Children the fourth of December, 811. 2. Pepin, King of Italy, who was call'd Carloman before his Baptism, and died in 810, leaving one Son named Bernard, King of Italy. Bernard dying in the Year 889, left three Sons, Bernard, Pepin, and Heribert, from whom the Counts of Vermandois were descended. 3. Lewis, stiled the Debonnaire, who was afterwards Emperor. 4. Lothaire, who was a Twin with Lewis, and died immediately after his Birth. 5. Rotrude, who was betrothed to Constantine, the Empress Irene's Son, and died in the Year 810. 6. Bertba, Wife to Count Engelbert, Mother to Harnid

Harnid and *Nitard*. 7. *Gisele*, who was baptis'd by *Thomas* Archbishop of *Milan*. 8. *Hildegard*. 9. *Gertrude*. 10. *Adelaida*, or *Alix*, which three last died very young. By *Fas-trade* his third Wife, who died in 794, he had two Daughters, *Theodrade*, Abbess of *Argenteuil*, and *Hiltrude*, who likewise died without Marrying. By *Luitgarde* his fourth Wife, who died the fourth of *June* 800, he had no Children. His natural Sons were *Pepin* the *Hump-back'd*, a Monk at *Prum*. 2. *Drogo*, or *Dreux*, Bishop of *Metz*, who died in 855, in great Reputation for his Learning, and Virtue. 3. *Hugh* the Great, call'd the *Abbot*, who was kill'd in a Battle in the Year 844, leaving two Daughters, the youngest of which was married to *Tertula*, Count of *Gastinois*, by whom she had *Indilger*, Father to *Fulk* the Red Count of *Anjou*; the eldest was married to *Robert* the *Saxon*, who liv'd in 830, and had by her *Robert* the strong, Duke and Marquis of *France*, who died in the Year 867, leaving two Sons, the first named *Eudes*, afterwards King of *France*, who left one Son, *Arnold* King of *Guienne*; and a second, *Robert* the third, also King of *France*, whose Son was *Hugh* the Great, Count of *Paris*, Father to *Hugh* Capet, King of *France*.

LEWIS the *Debonnaire*, born in 778, died in the Year 840, at *Ingelheim*, leaving by his first Marriage with *Hermengarde*, or *Irmengarde*, Daughter to *Engelram*, who died the third of *October*, 818, 1. *Lothaire*, afterwards Emperor. 2. *Pepin*, King of *Aquitain*, who died at *Poitiers* in the year 838, leaving two Sons, *Pepin* and *Charles*, who died a few Years after without Children. 3. *Lewis*, King of *Bavaria*, *Germany*, or Eastern *France*, call'd the *Germanick*, who died at *Frankfort*, the twenty eight of *August*, 876,

*Lewis the
Debonnaire
Emperor.*

876, having by his Marriage with *Emma* three Sons, *Carloman*, *Lewis*, who died in 882, and *Charles*, surnamed the *Gross*. *Carloman* being willing that his youngest Brother should succeed in his stead to the Emperors *Charles the Bald*, and *Lewis the Stammerer*, died in the Year 885, leaving by his Concubine *Litoninda*, one Son *Arnold*, who was afterwards Emperor. *Lewis the Debonnair* by his second Marriage with *Judith*, Daughter to *Guelph* Count of *Altorf*, had one Son, *Charles the Bald*, who likewise was Emperor and King of *France*.

Lothaire
Emperor.

THE Emperor *Lothaire* died in the Year 855, leaving by his Wife *Hermengarde*, 1. *Lewis II*; 2. *Charles*; 3. *Lothaire*; and one Daughter, named also *Hermengarde*, who was forced away, and married by Count *Gislebert*, Vassal to *Charles the Bald*.

Lewis II.
Emperor.

After his Father's Decease, *Lewis II.* King of *Italy* was Emperor, and died in the Year 875, without Male Heirs by his Wife *Engelberge*, or *Hildegarde*, who turn'd Nun after the Death of her Husband, and died Abbess at *Pavia*.

CHARLES King of *Provence*, died in the Year 862, without Male Heirs; as did also *Lothaire* King of *Provence*, in 869, without legitimate Issue.

Charles the
Bald, Em-
peror.

THE Emperor *Charles the Bald*, born in 822, died in 877, leaving by his Marriage with his Consort *Hermentrude*, 1. *Lewis* the third, call'd the *Stammerer*, afterwards Emperor. 2. *Lothaire*, who died Abbot in 886. 3. *Charles*, who died in 870, by wrestling with a Man of extraordinary Strength. 4. *Carloman*, who was forced to turn Abbot, and died in 874. 5. *Judith*, who married *Ethelred* King of *England*; after whose Death she espous'd *Baldwin*, surnamed *Iron-Arm*, first Count of *Flanders*. 6. *Batbilda*, who held the Abbey

Abbey of *Chelles* in *Commendam*, but was nevertheless Mother to one of the Wives of *Hugh* the Great, Duke of *France*, and Father to King *Hugh Capet*. 7. *Charles* the Bald had by his second Marriage, *Richilda*, who was born before her Time, and died immediately after being baptized, in the Year 875. and 8. *Charles*, his youngest Child, who died in 878, a Year after his Birth.

LEWIS the third, call'd the *Stammerer*, Emperor and King of *France*, died in 879, leaving by his first Marriage with *Ansgarde*, 1. *Lewis* King of *France*, who died Childless in 882. 2. *Carloman*, who died in 884, both of whom were buried at *St. Dennis*, and by his second Wife *Adelaida*, 2. *Charles*, call'd the *Simple*, who, after the Death of his Brothers, succeeded to the Kingdoms of *France* and *Burgundy*. Lewis the Stammerer Emperor.

THE Emperor *Charles* the third, call'd the *Gross*, youngest Son to *Lewis* the *Germanick*, died in the Year 888, without lawful Issue. Charles the Gross, Emperor.

ARNOLD, the Emperor, natural Son to *Carloman* King of *Bavaria*, died in the Year 899, leaving by his Marriage with *Luitgarde*. 1. *Lewis*; and, by another Wife, 2. a natural Son, call'd *Suintebold*, King of *Lorraine*.

THE Emperor *Lewis* the Fourth, Son of *Arnold*, died without Male Issue, 912. Arnold Emperor.

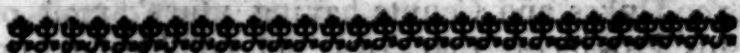
CHARLES the *Simple*, King of *France*, posthumous Son to *Lewis* the *Stammerer*, born in the Year 879, died in 929, without being able to attain the Empire. He left by his second Marriage with *Odgina* of *England*, *Lewis* the Fourth, call'd the *Outlandish*, King of *France* and *Burgundy*, Father to *Lothaire*, King of *France*, and *Charles*, Duke of *Lorraine*. But as the

the Succession of these Princes has no longer any Relation to our Subject, we shall return to the History of the Empire, which pass'd over to the Germans, and continues to this Day amongst the Princes of that Nation.



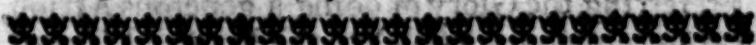
THE


THE
HISTORY
OF THE
EMPIRE.



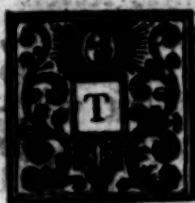
BOOK II.

Emperors of different Houses, who possess'd the Imperial Throne by Election, till the Advancement of the *Austrian* Family.



CHAP. I.

CONRAD the First.



THE Emperors, who were Successors to *Charlemagne*, had without Dispute possessed the Empire by hereditary Right from Father to Son; but these prudent Princes (as has been before observ'd) us'd nevertheless generally to have their last Wills confirm'd, with relation to their Successors, by the States of the Empire. This Consent, which in all Appearance seem'd like an Election, was, as it were, the Rise of the following Elections,

CONRAD


CONRAD.

and, if I may use that Expression, the Title whereby the *German* Princes have pretended to a Right of chusing their own Emperors.

THE Empire being possess'd by the *French*, something more than a hundred Years, descended after *Lewis* the fourth's Death to the *Germans*, altho' the Imperial Crown belong'd to *Charles* the *Simple*, as being of the Blood of *Charlemagne*. In short, the Right of Succession to the Empire was incontestably devolv'd upon him; but this Prince, upon his Accession to the Crown of *France*, found his Dominions so much reduc'd, the Dukes and Counts having usurp'd most of his Provinces, that 'twas not possible for him to assert his Right to the Imperial Throne. Thus the Nobility of *Germany*, who were already accustomed to elect Emperors of their own Nation, or at least of *German* Blood, assembling at *Worms*, would have chosen *Otho* Duke of *Saxony* Emperor; but that Prince refus'd this Dignity, on account of his great Age, preferring the Glory of doing a generous Action, (as uncommon as noble) to the Imperial Crown, which was to advise the Assembly to elect *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia* and *Hesse*.

THIS Council was given in Favour of his Enemy; so that, in this wise Prince, Resentment gave place to Merit, and, on his Refusal, *Conrad* was chosen, whom some pretend to have been Son-in-Law to *Lewis* IV, but without grounds; for *Lewis* dying very young, 'tis most probable that he had only promis'd and contracted his Daughter to him whilst she was a Child; it being Customary in *Germany* for Fathers to promise their Children, even from their Cradle, and educate them mutually as design'd for these Marriages: Nay, 'tis seldom found but these Engagements have been performed

Chap. I. of the EMPIRE.

III

formed, especially amongst Persons of Quality. **CONRAD.**

GERMANY had then several considerable Princes, amongst the rest, *Arnold* Duke of *Bavaria*, *Bouchard* Duke of *Suabia*, *Everard* the Emperor's Brother, *Conrad* Count of *Franconia*, *Gisilbert* Duke of *Lorraine* and *Saxony*, and Duke *Henry*, the real Duke of *Saxony*, the most powerful of any that could pretend to the Empire, however the Majority of Votes fell on *Conrad*.

THIS brave and prudent Emperor endeavoured immediately to establish his Authority; but was oppos'd by other Princes, especially by *Arnold* Duke of *Bavaria*, who invaded *Suabia* with a formidable Army; whereof the Emperor no sooner received Advice, but he march'd against him with the greatest Force he could raise, fought *Arnold*, and routed him; in which Battle *Arnold* lost his Life by the Wounds he there received. *Conrad opposed.*

CONRAD, having reign'd about seven Years, and finding by a natural Decay he had not long to live, declared to the Princes and States of the Empire, and even to his Brother *Everard* Count of *Franconia*, that he knew no Prince of more Merit, or better able to support the Imperial Dignity, than *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, Son to *Otho*, and recommended him to them very particularly, as the Person he thought most worthy of succeeding him, tho' he had not been well affected to his Person. The Princes approving of this Choice, *Conrad*, before his Death sent the Crown, Scepter, Spear, Sword, and other Imperial Ornaments, to *Henry* by his Brother *Everard*; sacrificing thus, like a wise Prince, his private Resentment to the Good and Advantage of the Empire, and returning to the Son an equal Generosity, to that which he had seen in the Father. *Conrad's Generosity before his Death.*

918.

919.



C H A P. II.

H E N R Y the First.

The Elec-
tion of
Henry.
920.

TH E Emperor Conrad being dead in 919, the Dukes of *Bavaria*, *Franconia*, and *Suabia*, with the other States of *Germany*, met the Year following at *Fritzlar*, where *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* coming also, was elected and confirm'd in the Imperial Dignity with universal Applause: He was surnam'd the *Birdcatcher*, because he lov'd Fowling. The Pope being at that Time very much oppress'd by several Factions of divers petty Princes, who assum'd the Title of Emperor at *Rome*, offer'd to declare *Henry* Emperor of the *Romans*; but the new Emperor told him that he was contented with the Title receiv'd from the States of *Germany*. Perhaps his Reason might be to spare himself the Trouble of going into *Italy* to decide the Contest with the Competitors, or he thought it prudent to defer that Expedition till he had settled Affairs in *Germany*.

921.
Henry's
prudent Con-
duct, and
Victory
over the
Hungari-
ans.

A T the beginning of his Reign, he bent his Thoughts upon reconciling the Differences between the Princes and States of *Germany*, to establish a perfect Union amongst them all, as being the only Foundation of their mutual Glory and Prosperity. Herein he succeeded so well, and gain'd their Friendship in such a manner, that, by their Assistance, he obtain'd a signal Victory over the *Hungarians*, who, according to Custom, had made an Incurſion into *Ger-*
many,

many with a powerful Army, whence they were driven with the loss of 80,000 Men left upon the Field of Battle near the City of *Mersbourg*, after which he defeated the *Vandals* and *Abotrites*, who had also rebell'd.

THE same Success attended him against all the Enemies of the Empire, amongst the rest he gain'd such an Advantage over King *Charles the Simple*, who disputed the Empire with him, that he drove him back into *France* from the Banks of the *Rhine*, whither he had march'd to ravage *Lorraine*, and the Cities of *Spires*, *Worms*, and *Mentz*.

THESE two Princes met afterwards at *Bonn*, where they concluded a Peace, after having twice conferr'd together thereon, which was call'd *Pactum Bonnense*, or the Treaty of *Bonn*, an *Epocha* famous in History: it was sign'd in the Year 921. This was all the Effort that Prince or his Successors made to reclaim the Empire, the Juncture of Affairs not permitting them to do any more.

THIS done, *Henry*, to clear the Empire of *Banditti*, and Highwaymen, publish'd a general Pardon in their Favour, on Condition of their enlisting themselves in his Service, whereby he rais'd a Regiment of them, which was sent thither. For the Security of the Cities, he order'd that Garrisons should be plac'd therein, which should consist of the ninth Part of the Peasants of every Town and Village, and that the other eight Parts should remain in the Country to till the Ground, on Condition of contributing to the Substantance of the ninth Part, and bringing yearly both in Time of War and Peace the one third of their Corn to the Magazines in the Towns, to the end that neither Soldiers nor Provisions should be at any Time wanting.

His Advan-
tages over
Charles the
Simple, who
disputed
the Empire
with him.

Henry's
Order for
the Substib-
ance of his
Troops.
922.

HENRY I.

934.

Fortifies the
Cities, and
exerciseth the
Nobility.

938.

Henry gets
his Son
nominated
to the Em-
pire, his
Death, and
Praise.

936.

So great was his Zeal for the Propagation of the Faith, that he persuaded the King of the *Abotrites* to turn *Christian*, and, having subdued the *Vandals*, instituted the first Bishop in *Holstein*, to teach there the true Religion. In the City of *Brandenbourg* he appointed a Marquis to defend the Frontiers of the Empire against the *Abotrites*, as he did likewise in *Misnia* and *Lusatia*, to oppose the *Bobemians*, hereby imitating *Charlemagne*, who had also done the same in *Austria*, and *Moravia*, against the *Sarmatians*, *Poles* and *Hungarians*. At last having secured the Peace of *Germany*, he order'd the Cities to be wall'd in, and fortify'd with Bastions and Ditches, both for the Defence of the Towns, and Commerce: And to the end that the Nobility might be inur'd to the Exercise of Arms in Time of Peace, he instituted Tournaments, where every one glory'd in shewing his Address. But none were admitted hereat, who did not profess the true Religion, were perjurd, Traitors, or Rebels to their Prince, had violated any Man's Wife or Daughter, or committed any Sacrilege or Murther.

AFTER this, *Henry* falling sick, and judging by his Condition that he had not long to live, made so good use of that small space, that he prevail'd on the Princes of the Empire, in a general Diet, to consent to the Nomination of his Son *Otho* to the Succession of the Empire. After which he died in the Year 936, at the Age of sixty, having reign'd seventeen Years; leaving this Character behind him, *That the most consummate Master in the Art of Government, and the greatest King in Europe was dead.* In Effect, none surpass'd him in Virtue, or good Qualities both of Body and Mind; and he had this Satisfaction, that he left his Son, who

who was at Age, a more powerful and better establish'd Empire than had been possess'd by his Predecessors.



C H A P. III.

O T H O the First, call'd the Great.



THE Kings of France, Descendants of Charlemagne, had always with Justice claimed the Empire as their Due, and hereditary in their House, but their Affairs declining, or, to speak the Truth, their want of Merit having depriv'd them thereof, several Princes and great Men, who were subject thereunto, had endeavour'd to take Advantage of their Supineness, and to save from this Wreck the best Remains they could,

Otho I.
936.

WITH this View, not only the Kings of Italy, whose Seat was at Pavia, had attempted to set the Imperial Crown on their Heads, but even they who were most powerful at Rome, had endeavour'd to exclude them, either to assume it themselves, or to make it devolve upon others, and all these had supplanted each other as much as possible, In short, after the Death of Lewis IV, Arnold's Son, Italy had been but one continued Scene of Wars, Troubles, and Divisions, thro' the great number of Competitors. Lambert, Son to Guy Duke of Spoleto, being stronger than his Rival Beranger, entred Rome, and was crown'd by Pope Stephen the VIIth, Successor to Formosus.

Emperors of
Italy.

OTHO I.

AFTER his Death, *Beranger* was declared Emperor, and maintain'd himself some Time in that Dignity; but was at length driven thence by *Lewis* King of *Provence*, who procur'd the Imperial Crown for himself; but being betray'd by the Marquis of *Tuscany*, who before had even help'd to raise him, he was surpriz'd at *Verona* by *Beranger*, who was secretly recall'd by the Marquis, and had his Eyes put out. *Beranger* being re-instated in the Throne, and crown'd by Pope *John X*, reigned peaceably seventeen or eighteen Years, but being assassinated by some Mutineers at *Verona*, they call'd in *Raoul* King of *Burgundy*, and crown'd him Emperor.

THE same Factions being incens'd at *Raoul's* retiring into his Kingdom, set up *Hugh* Count of *Provence*, crown'd him, and he reign'd near twenty Years; but being also dethron'd in the end, the *Romans* created themselves Consuls and Tribunes of the People, to the Prejudice of *Lothaire*, *Hugh's* Son, who had been crown'd by his Father fifteen Years before, but had a meer Crown without Authority.

THIS Consular Government not pleasing the *Italians*, they call'd in *Beranger* nam'd the young, Son to the Marquis of *Tury*, and *Gilletta* Daughter to *Beranger*, heretofore Emperor, proclaiming him and his Son *Albert* Kings at *Verona*. On his Advancement to the Throne, he design'd to have married his Son to Queen *Adelaida*, or *Alix*, Widow to *Lothaire*, crowned King of *Italy*, and Daughter to *Raoul* King of *Burgundy*, she being Mistress of *Pavia*; but she rejected this Alliance with Scorn, and *Beranger* resolving to force her to it, the Cries of this Princess drew *Otho* into *Italy*; but before we enter

enter into that Part of the History, 'tis proper to shew how *Otbo* was rais'd to the Empire. Otho II

By Inheritance from his Father he had the Duchy of *Saxony*, *Westphalia*, *Angria*, *Thuringia*, *Hesse*, *Wetteravia*, and the Countries situated on the *Wefer* adjacent to *Minden*, and on the *Elbe* towards the Confines of *Lunenbourg*, and the Cities of *Wirtemberg*, *Misnia*, and *Lusatia*, the Eastern Country towards the *Plesse* and the *Ester*, the Country of *Northheim*, the Duchy of *Brunswick*, and all the Country about the City of *Magdebourg*. His Power, great Qualities, join'd to his Father's appointing him Successor, oblig'd the Princes of *Germany* to elect him Emperor, finding themselves constrain'd to it, not being able any longer to bear the Pretensions of the *French* and *Italians*. I say, they chose him Emperor, and herein I agree with all the Lawyers, and most Part of the Historians, altho' some have only given him the Title of King of *Germany*, no more than to some of his Successors, whom I shall also call Emperors, because being all of them lawfully elected by the Princes of *Germany*, the proper Electors of *German* Emperors, their Right was establish'd by their Predecessors, and confirm'd by their Successors, who have maintain'd it with Honour.

His Election was made at *Aix la Chapelle*, with the general Consent of all the Princes present, in which Number were the Archbishops of *Mentz*, *Magdebourg*, *Treves*, and *Besancon*; the Bishops of *Ratisbon*, *Frisingen*, *Augsbourg*, *Constance*, *Eichstet*, *Worms*, *Spires*, *Brixen*, and *Hildesheim*, which last was Chancellor of the Empire; the Abbots of *Fulda*, *Hirschfelt*, and *Erbach*; the King of *Bohemia*, the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Bavaria*, *Austria*, *Moravia* and *Lorrain*; who placing him upon the Throne prepar'd for him in

Otho's
Election.

OTHO I. in the Palace, took an Oath of Allegiance, and swore to pay him Homage, promising to assist him against all his Enemies; after which they attended him to the great Church.

*Ceremonies
at his
Coronation.*

HILDEBERT, Archbishop of *Mentz*, and the Diocesan Bishops, cloathed in their Pontifical Habits, assisted by other Bishops, and all the Clergy, came to meet him at the Church Door, where, having proclaim'd him with the usual Ceremonies, the Archbishop of *Mentz* conducted him on his Right to a Place rais'd for that purpose upon Steps, whence he might be seen by all the People, to whom this Prelate spoke in this Manner: *I here present you Otho, chosen by GOD, appointed Emperor by Henry his Father, and justly Elected to that Dignity by all the Princes; if you approve of this Election, give a Sign of it, by lifting up your Hands.*

ACCORDINGLY the People immediately did so, and wish'd him all manner of Prosperity, with a thousand Acclamations; then the Clergy conducting him to the high Altar, whereon the Sword, the Belt, the Mantle, the Hand of Justice, the Scepter, the Crown, and all the Imperial Ornaments were plac'd, the Archbishop girt the Sword by his Side, saying, *Receive this Sword, and use it to drive away the Enemies of JESUS CHRIST, and employ the Authority and Power of the Empire, conferr'd on you by GOD, to secure the Peace of the Church.* This Prelate also put on the Mantle, the Sleeves whereof hung down to the Ground, saying, *Remember with what Resolution and Fidelity you are oblig'd to maintain Peace to the End of your Life;* And lastly, giving him the Scepter, and the Hand of Justice, he added, *These Marks of Power are yours, and engage you to keep your Subjects in their Duty; to repress and punish*
Vice.

Vice and Disorders severely, but yet with Humanity; to become the Protector of the Church, its Ministers, Widows, and Orphans; and to use all with the Tenderness and Goodness of a Father, that you may (in Eternity) receive the Reward you will deserve by so prudent and Christian a Conduct.

OTHO I.

THE Archbishop of Mentz having finish'd these Words, the Bishops anointed the Emperor's Head with consecrated Oyl, which done, the former crown'd him. These Ceremonies being over, the Emperor ascended a Throne, where he remain'd whilst they were singing Psalms and other Prayers, after which Office they reconducted him to the Palace, where the Emperor din'd in publick, the Bishops sitting at his Table, the Dukes, and other great Lords, serving him. His Reign was pretty peaceable, and, from the very beginning, he shew'd a great deal of Integrity and Justice, not being able to bear any unworthy Action or Barbarity. On receiving News that *Wenceslaus*, Duke of *Bohemia*, (who was invested with that Dignity by the Emperor *Henry* his Father) had been kill'd by his own Brother *Boleslaus*, and dispossest of that Duchy by Force, *Otho* was oblig'd by this Inhumanity to send thither a considerable Army, commanded by *Esico* Count of *Ascania*, who, having met the Troops of *Boleslaus* in the Field, beat them, and thought to have ended the War by this Victory. But *Boleslaus* rallying and re-inforcing his Men in a few Days, attack'd the Imperial Army by Surprise, and routed it, which very much chagrin'd *Otho*. This however did not entirely daunt him; on the contrary, he immediately re-inforc'd his Army, and continued this War for fourteen Years with so much Courage and Constancy, that he at last gain'd a compleat Victory over *Bo-*

937.

938.

OTHO I. *Boleslaus*, oblig'd him to submit, and acknowledge the Emperor for his Sovereign.

DURING this Time, *Otho* had likewise another considerable War to maintain, some having perswaded his Brother *Henry*, that, being born after their Father's Advancement to the Empire, he had more Right to it than *Otho*, who was born before, and ought to assert his Pretensions by Force of Arms. The Chief of those who put this Thought into his Head, were *Everard* Brother to the deceas'd Emperor *Conrad*, and *Sigebert* Duke of *Austrasia*, both of whom pretended as much to the Empire as young *Henry*. All three then prepar'd to wage War with *Otho*, and levy'd Men on all sides, wherewith they form'd a considerable Army; but it was entirely dispers'd near the *Rhine* by the Emperor's Forces, Duke *Everard* the General being kill'd, and *Sigebert* drown'd as he was making his Escape. After this fortunate Success, nothing remain'd for *Otho*, but to reduce his Brother to Reason, who had retir'd to *Mersbourg* to defend himself; whereupon he march'd directly to besiege that Place, and brought *Henry* to surrender upon Articles, wherein 'twas agreed that he should have Liberty to go where he would. Accordingly, after the taking of the Town, he took Sanctuary with *Lewis* King of *France*, who had assisted him, and made War against the Emperor with that Intent; but *Otho*, some Time after making Peace with the King of *France*, was reconcil'd to his Brother *Henry*, and gave him the Dukedom of *Bavaria*, where he continued afterwards faithful and obedient.

IN the midst of all this good Success, and all these Lawrels, he was oblig'd to march into *Italy*, at the pressing Intreaties of Queen *Alix*, Widow

Chap. III. of the EMPIRE.

123

Widow to *Lothaire* King of *Italy*, who was persecuted and depriv'd of her Dominions by *Beranger* the young; and as *Otho* was then a Widow, having lost *Etbica*, a Princess of *England*, by whom he had one Son, nam'd *Luitolf*; he look'd on her as already his Wife; besides which, her Prayers were strongly seconded by Pope *Agapetus*, who was afraid of being oppress'd by the same *Beranger*. The Emperor undertook this Expedition very fortunately with a powerful Army, takes *Alix* under his Protection, marries her, and makes himself Master of *Pavia*, which *Beranger* had reduc'd, and where he had kept *Alix* Prisoner. Then pursuing *Beranger*, he forc'd him to yield himself; but *Otho* was so generous, that he restor'd him Part of his Territories, and gave the Marquisate of *Friuli*, with *Verona*, and some other Places in *Bavaria*, to his Brothers; reserving for himself only the Glory of having conquer'd; and trusting to *Beranger's* Promise of continuing his Friend, which he did not keep.

OTHO L.
950.

951.

952. 1

LUITOLF, the Emperor's Son, and design'd his Successor, being jealous, and incens'd at his Father's second Marriage with *Alix*, revolts against him, enters into a Confederacy with *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*, the Emperor's Son-in-Law, and several other German Lords, takes several Towns, and, amongst the rest, *Mentz*, where he fortifies himself.

THE Emperor being appriz'd hereof, march'd immediately that Way with his Army, laid siege to the City, and hearing that *Luitolf* was fled to *Ratisbon*, pursu'd him thither, and besieg'd it so close, that *Luitolf*, finding himself press'd upon, sent some Prelates to ask Pardon for his Disobedience, which they could not obtain; but whilst they were parlying, he made his

OTHO I.
961.

his Escape and fled. In short, to extricate himself from the Difficulties wherein he was entangled, he resolv'd to go and meet his Father a hunting; and having fortunately found an Opportunity, fell at his Feet with his Head bare, without being able to speak for Tears and Groans. Then recovering himself a little, he rose and said, sighing: *Have pity on your Child, who, like the prodigal Son, comes to ask you Pardon for his Fault; if you will grant Life to him who has deserved Death a thousand Times, he will be loyal and obedient, and have Time to repent of his Crime.* Then throwing himself immediately upon the Ground, he lay there with the utmost Submission, expecting the Sentence of Life or Death. But the Father, extraordinarily surpriz'd at such a Change, and struck with Compassion, rais'd his Son with Tears in his Eyes, and forgave him, granting also Pardon to those who had follow'd him. *Luitolf* died soon after in *Italy*, as well as his Brother-in-Law *Conrad*, having both serv'd the Emperor faithfully ever after their Reconciliation.

962.

OTHO, who was not surnamed the Great, without reason, having regulated all Things in *Germany*, and reduc'd all that oppos'd his Arms, undertook a second Expedition into *Italy*, at the Solicitation of Pope *John XII*, to appease the Factions that reign'd there, and quell *Beranger*, who had again revolted; going first to *Rome*, where he was crown'd, and acknowledg'd Emperor of the *Romans* by the Pope, with the Title of *Augustus*. After this the Senate and People took the Oath of Allegiance, with a Promise to continue stedfast in rendring him the same Obedience as is due from faithful Subjects to their Sovereign. He there made immense Presents to every one in Jewels, Gold, and Silver, besides

Chap. III. of the EMPIRE.

123

OTHO I.

963.

besides which, he restor'd to the *Roman Church* all that belong'd to her, I mean what *Pepin* and *Charlemagne* had formerly given, and the petty Tyrants of *Italy* had taken from her by force. Hereupon *Otho* caus'd Letters Patent to be drawn up, which were sign'd by himself, the Bishops, and several other great Lords, importing, amongst other Conditions, that, according to the Agreement made heretofore with Pope *Eugene*, and his Successors, the *Roman Clergy* and Nobility should oblige themselves by Oath, that the Election of the Pope should not be canonical, nor the Person chosen consecrated, before he had, in the Presence of the Ambassadors of the Emperor, or the King his Son, and all the People, made the same Promise as did *Leo III.* voluntarily on the like Occasion.

As *Beranger* and his Wife were retired to Mount *Leon*, *Otho*, on leaving *Rome*, march'd thither, secur'd him and his Spouse, and caus'd them a little after to be try'd, when they were condemn'd to perpetual Imprisonment at *Bamberg*, where they ended their Days. No sooner had *Otho* quitted *Rome* with his Army, but *Albert*, *Beranger's* Son, re-enter'd secretly, at the Solicitation of the same Pope; of which *Otho* being inform'd, return'd, which so terrify'd *Albert* and the Pontif, that they both fled. Hereupon the Emperor first obliged the Senate and People to renew and confirm by Oath the Promise already made, of not pretending for the future any Right to the Election of a Pope, nor chusing any one without the Emperor's Consent. Then, taking advantage of this Pope's ill Conduct, and being resolv'd to be reveng'd of him, he summon'd a Council at *Rome* to bring him to Tryal.

JOHN

OTHO I.

JOHN XII had, at the Age of eighteen, advanced himself to the Papacy, by Factions, and the Money of *Alberic* his Father, then very powerful at *Rome*, and had liv'd very scandalously during his whole Pontificate. Accordingly the Council was no sooner met, but the *Italian* Archbishops and Bishops, and even all the People, made, for three Days, great Complaints to the Emperor against him. *Otho*, assisting in Person at this Council, summon'd *John* to appear, and answer the Accusations brought against him; but he not obeying, was declar'd unworthy of the Pontificate, and depos'd. Divers Authors have maintain'd, that this Council was neither right nor lawful, and that the deposing *John* was neither canonical nor valid; however, they put *Leo VIII* in his Place, who was elected by the joint Suffrages of all the Archbishops, Bishops, and other Prelates in the Assembly, the Number whereof was very great; and after his Exaltation he presided at the same Council.

'Twas at this Time that *Leo*, with the Consent of the Clergy and People, made the famous Decree, acknowledging *Otho* for Emperor of the *Romans*, Sovereign, and King of *Italy*, with all the same Rights, both for himself and Successors, as Pope *Adrian I* had granted *Charlemagne*; among the rest, the Right of Investiture of Bishopricks, and particularly that of electing and confirming Popes, which all the Clergy and People ratify'd by Oath. Hence one may say, that *Otho* was really Emperor of the *Romans*, because the same Reasons that plead for *Charlemagne*, may be urg'd for *Otho* the Great.

THE Roman People had groan'd ever since the Death of *Lewis IV*, *Charlemagne's* last Successor,

cessor, (that is to say, for above sixty Years) under the Oppression of these petty Kings and Emperors already mentioned, *Rome* was torn in pieces by the most powerful Factions, and the Kings of *France*, having long been involv'd in Troubles themselves, gave no Ear to the Complaints of the *Romans*, wherefore they had a Right to put themselves, as they did, under the Dominion of *Otho*. Otho L.

THE Emperor having finish'd his Affairs at *Rome*, set out for *Spoletto* and *Camerino*, to appease some Disorders there; after which he erected them both into Principalities; during this Expedition several *Roman* Prelates and Nobles, at the Instigation of *Albert*, *Beranger's* Son, favour'd Pope *John's* Return to *Rome*, where he immediately depos'd *Leo*, and condemn'd the Council that had elected him, as unlawful. But some Days after, *John*, being found out of *Rome* in Bed with a Courtezan, was inhumanly murther'd by a Rival. Hereupon the Prelates and Nobles, persisting in their Resolution of not acknowledging *Leo* for Pope, of their own particular Authority, contrary to their Oath, proceeded to the Election of a Deacon, *Bennet V* by Name, whom they set in *St. Peter's* Chair.

THE Emperor having Advice hereof, returned to *Rome*, besieg'd it, and compell'd them by Famine to Terms, pardoning the Disloyalty of the Inhabitants, and summon'd a Council, to call *Bennet* to an Account for this Outrage. Accordingly he appear'd in the Pontifical Habit before Pope *Leo*, the Emperor, and all the Council, consisting of the Archbishops and Bishops of *Italy*, *Lorrain*, and *Saxony*. Hereupon Cardinal *Benedict* thus address'd him: " By
" what Authority have you assum'd that Habit
K " during

OTHO I.

“ during the Life of Pope *Leo*, whom you your
 “ self, jointly with us, rais’d to the first Apo-
 “ stolical Dignity, after deposing *John XII*?
 “ Can you deny, in the Emperor’s Presence,
 “ that you, as well as the other *Romans*, pro-
 “ mis’d upon Oath, that you would never elect
 “ a Pope, without the Consent of the Emperor;
 “ and King *Otho* his Son?” *Bennet*, pausing on
 these Words, said, *If I have err’d, have Mercy*
on me. Then the Emperor, mov’d with Com-
 passion, desir’d the Assembly to use no Violence,
 begging that Humanity might speak in his Fa-
 vour, and procure his Pardon. *Bennet*, on hear-
 ing these Words, falling prostrate at *Leo*’s, and
 the Emperor’s Feet, own’d that he was a Cri-
 minal, and Usurper of the holy See; with
 which Submission the Pope being touch’d, an-
 swer’d: *In Consideration of our Lord Otho the*
Emperor, by whose Assistance we have been esta-
blished in St. Peter’s Chair, we permit you to
retain the Deacon’s Order, and live at Ham-
burgh.

THIS done, *Otho* oblig’d the *Romans* to pro-
 mise upon Oath, That, for the future, they
 would elect none but a Prince of the *German*
 Nation Emperor; and having thus settled the
 Affairs of *Italy*, return’d towards *Germany*, whi-
 ther *Bennet* went also to his Place of Banish-
 ment, where he died, being acknowledged by
 the Ecclesiastical Writers for lawful Pope.

LEO VIII dying in the Year 965, the Em-
 peror caus’d *John XIII* to be chosen in his
 stead; but the *Romans* immediately imprisoned
 him, whereof *Otho* having Advice, return’d
 to *Rome*, A. D. 966. deliver’d him from Con-
 finement, and re-establish’d him in his See.

966.

i 967.

THE Year following, *Otho* sent his Amba-
 sadors to *Constantinople* to the Emperor *Nice-*
phorus,

Chap. III. of the EMPIRE.

129

phorus, to demand his Daughter-in-Law *Theophania*, or, as others say, *Anne*, in Marriage for his Son *Otho*. *Nicephorus* granted their Request, and appointed the Place to receive the Princess; accordingly, the Imperialists going thither with a great Retinue, were either massacred, or carried Prisoners to *Constantinople*, few of them escaping to give an Account of this horrid Treachery. *Otho*, extraordinarily surpriz'd and incens'd thereat, order'd the Counts *Gonthar* and *Sigefrid*, two Brothers, to march into *Calabria*, with his best Troops, where they routed the *Greeks*, and sent back all the Prisoners, first cutting off their Noses; this done, they laid *Calabria* and *Apulia* waste, and then return'd victorious to the Emperor. However, neither Deceit nor Violence can hinder the Decrees of Providence.

OTHO I.
968.

NICEPHORUS being kill'd by the *Greeks*, his Successor *John Zemiscas* immediately return'd all the *German* Prisoners, sending also *Theophania* with a magnificent Train, and very rich Presents, to consummate her Marriage with young *Otho*, who waited her coming in *Italy*, where the Nuptials were celebrated with abundance of Joy, in the Year 972.

972

His Son being married, and capable of governing the Empire, *Otho* order'd a general Thanksgiving for the happy State of his domestick and publick Affairs; which done, he resolv'd to apply himself wholly to the Care of finishing his Race gloriously. His Piety cannot be too much commended; whenever he was successful, as he generally was in all his Undertakings, he us'd to praise and thank God, giving him the Glory in this Verse of *David*: *Non nobis, Domine, non nobis; sed nomini tuo da Gloriam.* "Not unto us, O LORD, not unto

973

K 2

"us;

" us; but to thy own Name give the Glory.

His Zeal appeared yet more, in founding the Archbishoprick of *Magdebourg*, the Bishopricks of *Mersbourg*, *Zell*, *Havelberg*, and *Misnia*, and in making the Bishops equal to secular Princes, by the great Privileges he conferred on them. He died of an Apoplexy at *Magdebourg* in *Saxony* in the Year 974, after reigning thirty Years; and on his Death the Empress *Alix* his Wife devoted her self entirely to God, and turn'd Nun.

974.



C H A P. IV.

O T H O the Second.

Otho II.



THO II, firnam'd the *Bloody*, being elected, and crowned King during the Life of his Father, was his Successor in the Empire, no Body pretending to dispute it with him, but his Cousin-Cerman, *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, who, being supported by some Bishops of his Party, got himself proclaim'd Emperor at *Ratisbon*; but *Otho* soon reduc'd him to Reason, not only forcing him to quit this Title, but even driving him out of his Dukedom, which he gave to *Otho* Duke of *Suabia*. From thence he march'd with his Army towards the *Elbe*, to oppose *Harold* King of *Denmark*, who had espous'd *Henry's* Interest, and was advancing with a great Number of Troops. Him he harass'd so much, and press'd upon so close, that he forc'd him to sue for Peace, offer great Presents,

Chap. IV. of the EMPIRE.

131

sents, agree to pay an annual Tribute, and deliver up his Son as an Hostage for the Assurance of his Fidelity. Thence he went to *Bohemia*, the King whereof had been one of *Henry's* Confederates, and, having ravag'd the Country, turn'd back to make head against *Henry* and the Duke of *Carinthia*, who, with the Bishop of *Fresingen*, had rais'd Forces against him; these he defeated, taking them Prisoners, and retaking the City of *Passau*, whilst the King of *Bohemia* made Peace with him.

ОТНО II.

975.

DURING these Transactions, a great Difference happen'd with the *French* in *Lorraine*, to appease which he resolv'd to give that Duchy in Fief to *Charles*, Brother to *Lothaire*, King of *France*. *Lothaire*, not being satisfy'd herewith, and having besides a Claim to divers Territories in this Dukedom, in which he pretended the Emperor had not done him Justice, enter'd on a sudden with an Army, march'd strait to *Aix la Chapelle*, and had almost surpriz'd it. *Otho* narrowly escaping this Insult, bent all his Thoughts upon revenging it; whereupon, immediately getting together all his Forces, he made an Incurfion into *France* at the Head of sixty thousand Men, and laying all *Champagne* and the Isle of *France* waste, forc'd the *French* to sue for Peace, which he granted; but his Troops, returning the same Way they came, suffer'd great Hardships, having before ruin'd all the Country in their March.

976.

AFTER this having settled the Affairs of *Germany*, he was oblig'd to turn his Arms towards *Italy*, to recover *Calabria*, and *Apulia*, whereof the *Greeks*, by the Assistance of the *Saracens*, had made themselves Masters, in spite of his Pretension to those two Provinces, in

977.

Orho II.

Right of his Wife *Theophania*, to whom they were given for a Portion.

978.

THE Emperor being arriv'd in *Calabria*, hazarded the Battle without Hesitation, and at first put them into Disorder; but they taking Courage again, the *Romans* and *Beneventines* giving Way, he was entirely defeated. And finding himself without Hopes, he fled to the Sea side, where meeting with a Bark, he took Refuge there, but afterwards was taken by Pyrates, who carried him into *Sicily*, and not knowing him, because he spoke good *Greek*, gave him Liberty, on Condition of his paying a good Ransom.

980.

ON getting back to his Men, he re-inforc'd his Troops with what Recruits he could get; and renewing the War, utterly extirpated the whole Race of *Saracens* in *Italy*; this done, he chastis'd the *Beneventines* who fled and deserted, and on coming to *Rome*, resolv'd to do the same to the *Romans*, who were also Fugitives. To effect this, he invited all their Chiefs to a Feast, under Colour of Friendship, and chusing out the Authors of this shameful Flight and Desertion, in the midst of their Mirth caus'd all their Throats to be cut, that he might (as he said) root out all the Seeds of the Revolt.

981.

982.

THIS Punishment might perhaps in the main be just; but the Manner was barbarous and unworthy of a Christian Prince, and of a dangerous Consequence in Politicks: It was this Action chiefly which made him surnamed the Bloody, as his great Victories over the *Saracens*, acquired him the Title of Terrour to the *Saracens*. On hearing that the *Sclavonians*, taking Advantage of his Absence, had made an Incurfion into *Saxony*, where they had destroy'd and ravaged the Bishopricks of *Brandenbourg*, *Havelberg*.

Chap. V. of the EMPIRE.

133

berg, and Mersbourg, he sent Orders to the Saxons and Thuringians to make head against them; which they obey'd, and charg'd their Enemies with so much Bravery and Success, that they kill'd above 37,000 of them in several Engagements. Soon after this, he died at Rome, in the Year 987, of a Loosness, caus'd by a Wound receiv'd of a poyson'd Javalin, in the Battle with the Greeks, being besides overwhelm'd with a secret Grief, on account of his Wife Theophania's having express'd her Joy at the Victory of the Greeks, and the Defeat of the Italians.

OTHO II.

983.



CHAP. V.

OTHO the Third.



OTHO III succeeded his Father OTHO II, being at most but eleven or twelve Years old, and was at first surnamed the *Infant*, on account of his Childhood, and lastly, the *Wonder of the World*. Great were the Disputes amongst the German Princes, that came to Rome with him, and the Italians, about his Election; some even amongst the Germans declared in Favour of Henry Duke of Bavaria, Nephew to Otho the first, who was also come to Rome, and pretended to the Empire, for which Reason he seiz'd on the Person of his Nephew Otho III immediately after the Emperor's Death, to prevent his being elected. The Italians, whose Thoughts were bent upon delivering themselves from the German Yoke, resolv'd to have an Emperor

OTHO III.
983.

OTHO III.

peror of their own Nation, and propos'd a Roman Nobleman nam'd *Crescentius*, who (according to some Authors) was then Consul and Governor of *Rome*. But most of the German Princes espous'd *Otho's* Cause, who, tho' very young, gave already great Hopes that he would one Day make an excellent Prince; herenpon they delivered him out of *Henry's* Hands, carried him into *Germany*, and being arriv'd at *Aix la Chapelle*, proclaim'd and crown'd him Emperor with the usual Solemnity.

HE was without Dispute acknowledg'd by all *Germany*, *Lombardy*, and the other Dominions of the Empire, except the City of *Rome*, which was deterr'd from submitting to him by this *Crescentius*, who intended to make himself Master thereof. In the first Years of his Reign, the *Slavonians*, supported by the *Danes*, revolted against him, after the Example of the *Romans*, designing to take Advantage of his Youth; but as soon as he had attain'd his fourteenth Year, he began to act with so much Spirit and Vigour, that he reduced all the Rebels to Reason, with the Assistance of those Princes, who remain'd stedfast to him; which Expeditions, and settling the Affairs of *Germany*, were his Employment for ten Years.

WHILST he was thus busy'd in those Parts, *Crescentius* play'd his Cards so well at *Rome*, that he usurp'd the Sovereign Power, insomuch that he seiz'd and imprison'd Pope *John* the XIVth, who was then in Possession of the holy See, because he espous'd *Otho's* Interest. This Pope, dying in Confinement, was succeeded by *John* XV, a Priest of much Merit and Virtue, whose good Qualities rendering him odious to *Crescentius*, he press'd upon him to such a Degree, and put him in such Terrour, that he thought

Chap. V. of the EMPIRE.

135

thought himself oblig'd to fly to *Tuscany*, whence he sent his Legates to the Emperor, to implore his Protection. Otto III.

THIS coming to the Ears of the *Romans*, they being terrify'd at the Thoughts of *Otbo*, and remembring what they had suffer'd under the *Otbo's* I, and II, on account of their ill Treatment of former Popes, resolv'd in this Danger to send the chief Magistrates of the City to the new Pontif with an earnest Invitation, addresssing him to return, promising and protesting that they would pay him due Respect and Obedience: Upon these Assurances *John* return'd to *Rome*, where he was honourably receiv'd. Nevertheless, some Time after, *Otbo* march'd into *Italy* at the Head of a considerable Army, and, drawing near *Rome*, the Pope and *Crescentius*, after divers Negotiations, came out to meet him, attended by the Prelates, Cardinals, Nobility, and People, receiving him with a magnificent Retinue. *Otbo* having settled all things there, march'd out with his Army towards *Capua* and *Benevento*, they having revolted, and declar'd War against each other. In the mean while Pope *John* dies, and *Otbo*, returning to *Rome*, caus'd *Bruno*, his Relation of the House of *Saxony*, to be chosen in his stead, who was nam'd *Gregory V*, and afterwards crown'd *Otbo* with the same Solemnity and Pomp as had been us'd to his Father and Grandfather. Assoon as the Ceremony was over, the Emperor having no farther Business at *Rome*, prepared for his Return to *Germany*; and accordingly took his Rout by *Lombardy*, where, visiting the principal Towns, and, stopping some Time at *Modena*, he gave an exemplary Proof of his Justice on the Person of the Empress his Consort, call'd *Mary*, Daughter to the King of *Arragon*. This Princess

OTHO III.
998.

cess falling in Love with a young beautiful *Italian* Count, used all her Art to invite him to her lewd Embraces; but, beautiful as he was, his Chastity withstood the Temptation. The Empress being enrag'd to see her self so slighted, was resolv'd on Revenge: To effect which, she accuses the Count before the Emperor, of an Attempt upon her Honour; and he too easily giving Credit to the Accusation, condemn'd the suppos'd Criminal to die, who, pursuant to his Order, was accordingly beheaded.

THE Count, before his Death, discovered the Truth to the Countess his Spouse; and a few Days afterwards this Lady presents her self before the Emperor when administering Justice in his Tribunal, informing him of the real Matter of Fact, with her Husband's Innocence, and the detestable Impiety of the Princess; and, that she might the better be believ'd, to give an undeniable Proof of what she advanc'd, took a red-hot Iron Plate in her Hands without being in the least hurt by it. The Emperor, stung to the Soul with what the Countess had said, and surpriz'd at the miraculous Event, order'd the Empress to be burnt alive, to expiate by Fire the impious Flame of that disloyal Princess; and, as an Atonement for his own rash Sentence, settled a large Pension on the Widow. This being executed, he pursued his Rout towards *Germany*; but could not long continue there, being inform'd that *Crescentius*, taking Advantage of his Absence, procur'd himself to be chosen Consul of *Rome*, depos'd Pope *Gregory*, and elected another in his Place, under the Name of *John XVI*. Accordingly he march'd soon after into *Italy* with a powerful Army, besieg'd *Rome*, took it, order'd the Antipope's Nose to be cut off, his Eyes to be put out,

out, and afterwards to be thrown headlong from the Castle of *St. Angelo*. *Crescentius* was likewise taken, and carried through the Town, by the Emperor's Order, upon a sorry Horse, with his Face to the Tail, and, after putting him, with twelve of his Accomplices, to the Rack, they were all hang'd upon the highest Tree that could be found; a Spectacle that serv'd for an Example to those who had rais'd *Crescentius* to a Dignity which was not his Right.

OTHO III.
~ ~

THESE two Tyrants having been punish'd as they deserv'd, *Gregory* was re-establish'd in his See, and the Emperor, taking Advantage of these frequent Revolts and Seditions, made a Decree, importing, 1. That the *Romans* alone should have the Right and Power of chusing the *Roman* Emperors from amongst the *German* Princes, exclusive of all other Nations. 2. That they should never be impowered to proclaim any Prince Emperor, but the Person elected by these Princes to that Dignity. 3. That the Popes should not intermeddle in the Election any farther than in the Time of *Charlemagne*, which was, to make a solemn Proclamation of the lawful Election of the Emperor, and perform the Ceremony of his Coronation when he should come to *Rome*. Hence most Authors conclude, that the Pope, far from giving the Empire by this Declaration to the Person elected, only testifies that the Emperor has received the Empire and Government of *Chrifendom* of those who have the Power of Election; adding, that he does not make this Declaration as *Jure Divino*, but, with Submission to the Emperor's Pleasure; and that the Imperial Power and Authority does not proceed from this Declaration, but only from the Votes and Choice of those who have advanced him to that Dignity.

999.

THIS

Orno III.

THIS Decree, being consented to and confirm'd by *Gregory*, was publish'd, that no Person might pretend Ignorance; and several Historians affirm, that the Pope and Emperor, to secure the Empire better to the *German* Nation, reduced the Electors afterwards to the Number of Seven; but whether that be true, or not, this at least is certain, that when the Imperial Crown devolv'd from the *French* upon the *German* Princes, they had a Right from the first of electing the Emperors, and of chusing one out of themselves; and this is properly what *Otho* confirm'd, the Execution whereof he order'd should be observ'd for the future.

1000.

AFTER the Death of *Gregory* V, and the Election of *Sylvester* his Successor, *Otho* return'd into *Germany*; but was not long gone before the Pope entreated his Return to *Rome*, on account of new Disorders; and, to his Misfortune, he went thither but too soon; I say, to his Misfortune; for (besides the *Romans* rising against him in so tumultuous a Manner, that, not having Forces sufficient to suppress the Rebellion, he was oblig'd to quit the City, and gather his Troops together, before he could put himself in a Capacity to chastise the guilty) he was poyson'd soon after by a Present of a Pair of Gloves sent by the Widow of *Crescentius*. 'Tis pretended that he fell in Love with this Lady, on account of her great Beauty, before his last Expedition into *Germany*, and had received some Favours of her, on Promise of making her his Consort; but not keeping his Word afterwards, she was so enrag'd, that she resolv'd to make him this fatal Present, in Revenge for his Contempt of her Person, and the Indignity wherewith he had treated her Husband *Crescentius*.

1001.

How-

Chap. VI. of the EMPIRE.

139

HOWEVER, the Empire suffer'd a great Loss ^{OTHO III.} in the Person of *Otho*, who was a brave, re- <sup>This Empe-
ror's Elogy.</sup> solute, and just Prince, and having conferr'd great Gifts on the Church after the Example of his Ancestors, gave no less Proofs of his Liberality, than his Justice. 'Tis even observ'd, that his Grandfather, Father, and himself, had given to the Church two thirds of their Estates ^{1002.} in *Germany*. His Body was entomb'd at *Aix la Chapelle*, and his Intrails buried at *Augsbourg*.



CHAP. VI.

HENRY the Second.



THE Princes being inform'd of *Otho's* Death, immediately prepar'd to chuse a new Emperor; but were divided upon the Choice of three Princes who were Competitors, and equally deserving of the Imperial Dignity, viz. ^{HENRY II.} *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, *Herman* Duke of *Suabia* and *Alsatia*, and *Eckart* Marquis of *Saxony*, each of which aspir'd to the Empire. However, *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, Grandson to *Otho II* by his Daughter, being the most powerful, won the Throne by Force of Arms. He was after this confirm'd and crown'd at *Mentz* by the Archbishop *Villigises*, on the sixth of *June*, 1002, by the Name of *Henry II*. This, according to some Authors, was the first Emperor elected by the solemn Votes of the Electors, who, as is pretended, were made by *Otho III*, and Pope *Gregory V*. He was called, the *Delight of the Hun-*

HENRY II. Hungarians, the Saint, and the Cripple. He began his Reign by calling a Council of the Archbishops, Bishops, and other Prelates, at *Dortmond*, for the Regulation of the Morals, and Discipline of the Church, the Canons whereof were publish'd throughout the Empire; for which he also order'd particular Synods in divers Places. He likewise assisted in Person at another Council at *Frankfort*; and, having suppress'd certain Insurrections that disturb'd the Peace of *Germany*, with much Courage and Prudence, he set out the same Year, 1005, for *Italy*, where he reduc'd *Ardwin* Marquis of *Tury*, who had rebell'd against him; which being done, he was crown'd at *Milan* by the Archbishop. Two Years after, by the Consent of the Princes and States, he erected the County of *Bamberg* into a Bishoprick, conferring great Privileges thereon, and making his Chancellor the first Bishop thereof.

His Expedition into Italy.
1005.

1007.
Bamberg erected into a Bishoprick

1012.
His Marriage.

BEING press'd to marry by the Princes of the Empire, to please them he espous'd *Cunigonda*, Daughter to the Count *Palatine*, a very virtuous Princess; and at the same Time gave *Gisella*, his Sister, or, as others say, Niece, to *Stephen* Duke of *Hungary*, who had demanded her in Marriage. But as she would by no means consent, before *Stephen*, who was a Pagan, had turned Christian, *Henry* went expressly into *Hungary* to convert him. Herein he succeeded so well, that *Stephen* abjur'd his Errors, and was baptized; which done, he espous'd the Princess; and was afterwards so zealous for the Christian Religion, that he was canoniz'd by the Church for a Saint; and the Emperor, in favour of this Marriage, made *Hungary* a Kingdom.

1013.
Hungary made a Kingdom.

ARDWIN

ARDWIN revolting again, the Emperor was HENRY II. forc'd to undertake a second Expedition into *Italy*, where he depriv'd him of his Territories; and marching in Triumph to *Rome*, was there crown'd with his Wife *Cunigonda*. Besides this, he wag'd a sharp War with the *Greeks* in *Italy*, and drove them out: This was undertaken on the Account of the *Norman* Princes, whose Design was to expel them; and whose Success has since acquir'd them the Crowns of *Naples* and *Sicily*. On his Return to *Germany*, he had a bloody War with *Boleslaus* Duke of *Bohemia*, who had call'd the *Poles*, *Sclavonians*, and *Moravians* to his Assistance; however, he finish'd it gloriously, forcing him to sue for Peace, which he granted. 1015.

THEN, being willing to cultivate a good Understanding with all his Neighbours, he had an Interview with *Robert* King of *France*, where they enter'd into a strict Friendship, and treated together about Means to reform the Disorders in their Dominions. 'Twas then said, that two Saints were come to visit each other; and this was the last Action wherewith *Henry* crowned his exemplary Life; for he died in the Year 1024, after his Return into *Germany*, and his Body was deposited in the Cathedral built by him at *Bamberg*. He had liv'd in a continual Continency with his Consort *Cunigonda*; which Action, join'd to his other Virtues, induc'd the Church to enrol him amongst the Number of Saints, as well as his Wife *Cunigonda*, who turned Nun after *Henry's* Death. However, as much a Saint as she was, during her Marriage she was suspected by the Emperor; to clear her self whereof, she walk'd bare-foot over a burning Plough-share unhurt; which 1022.

Interview of the Emperor with the King of France.

1024. His Death.

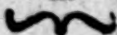
which caus'd the Emperor great Confusion, and made him repent putting her to such Extremities.



C H A P. VII.

CONRAD the Second.

CONRAD
II.



AFTER Henry of Bavaria's Death, great Disputes arose again about the Election of his Successor; but the Princes and States meeting at last in the Year 1024, in open Field, between Mentz and Worms, chose Conrad of Franconia Emperor, who was nam'd the *Salique*, as being descended of the *Frank* Princes called *Salians*. Not only a great Number of Ecclesiastical Princes assisted at this Election, but the Dukes *Benno* of Saxony, *Albert* of Austria, *Hetzel* of Bavaria, *Ernest* of Suabia, *Frederick* of Lorrain, *Goslo* of Holland and Zealand, *Enno* of Franconia, *Ulric* of Bohemia, with other secular Princes, were also at this Ceremony with great Retinues.

A Lover of
Justice.
1025.

CONRAD, during his Reign, particularly apply'd himself to the re-establishing of Justice, as well as chastising Men of debauch'd Lives, and rewarding the Virtuous; and he gave Proof, on several Occasions, how much he laid it at Heart. Being at Worms to visit the Bishop St. Burchard, who educated him, and was on his Death-bed, he had Advice of an Insurrection of the *Lombards*, and hereupon immediately made Preparations against them, and that with such Expedition, that he was at *Vercelles* before Easter-

Chap. VII. of the EMPIRE.

143

Easter-Day, in the Year 1026, where he pass'd that Festival. The rest of that Year, and the beginning of the next, were spent in reducing the Rebels by Force of Arms, which done, he march'd to *Rome*, where he was appointed and crown'd Emperor on *Easter-Day*, with all Solemnity imaginable by Pope *John XX.* *Conrad*, being accompany'd at the Ceremony by *Canutus* King of *Denmark*, and *Rodolph III.* King of *Burgundy*, who were come to *Rome* out of a Principle of Devotion.

CONRAD II.
1027.

SOME Days after he was oblig'd to return to *Germany*, where several Princes were raising new Troubles; and, being arriv'd, got his Son *Henry*, then between eleven and twelve Years old, declared his Successor, and crown'd at *Aix la Chapelle* by the Archbishop of *Cologne*. Then he prepared to oppose the Enterprizes of the Dukes *Ernest* of *Suabia*, *Albert* of *Carinthia*, with *Conradin* of *Worms*, his Cousin, and others who arm'd against him from the Time of his going to *Italy*, thinking to take Advantage of his Absence. *Conrad* marching to meet them, dispers'd their Troops in several Engagements, in one whereof *Ernest* was kill'd, and the other Princes taken Prisoners, and, being tryed at a general Assembly of all the Princes and Members of the Empire, were depriv'd of their Dominions by a solemn Decree. A Gentleman having served in this War, and lost a Leg therein, was rewarded by him with as many Pieces of Gold as could be held in the Boot belonging to the wounded Limb, making him this Present only to pay for his Cure.

BOLESLAUS, Duke of *Poland*, a Tributary to the Empire, who had assumed the Title of King without the Emperor's Allowance, being dead, *Miscó* his eldest Son succeeded him in

L

this

CONRAD
II.

this Usurpation, as well as his Dominions; Besides which, he had so misus'd his Brother *Otbo*, that he was oblig'd to take refuge in *Germany*, and the Emperor, willingly granting him the Protection he desired, immediately ordered his Forces to march, giving *Otbo* the Command against his Brother. *Conrad* did not stop there, but rais'd another Army, wherewith he march'd to join *Otbo*, after which he press'd so hard upon *Misico*, that he forc'd him to fly for Protection to *Valderick* Duke of *Bobemia*. The Emperor pursued him to the Frontiers of *Bobemia*, where he receiv'd a Letter from *Valderick*, offering to deliver him up; but he, abhorring such Treachery, sent the Letter to *Misico*, advising him to take another Sanctuary. *Misico*, sensibly touch'd at this Generosity, went to the Emperor's Camp, where, being stripp'd of his Ensigns of Royalty, he threw himself at his Feet, and surrendered entirely to his Discretion, not being able, said he, to find a more secure Retreat than in the Arms of his own Enemy. Upon this *Conrad* forgave him, and restor'd him his Dominions, without changing any of the Conditions, whereon his Father *Boleslaus* held them under the former Emperor: So great are the Charms and Power of Generosity in Souls sensible of Glory. This singular Action was not without its Consequences, it induced *Valderick* to lay down his Arms, and have recourse to the same Means to make his Peace.

NEXT to this came on the *Hungarian* War; *Stephen*, King thereof, sent to demand the Dukedom of *Bavaria* of *Conrad*, as being his in Right of his Wife, Sister and Heiress to *Henry II*, Duke of *Bavaria*, and, on his Refusal, declared War against him. The Emperor finding

Chap. VII. of the EMPIRE.

145

ing himself thus defy'd by the *Hungarians*, did not wait till he was attack'd, but resolv'd to march against them, and whilst he was preparing for this Expedition, *Babo*, Count of *Abemberg* brought Thirty two Sons, all born of one Wife, and capable of bearing Arms, into his Service. He entered *Hungary* then with a powerful Army, putting all to Fire and Sword, insomuch, that *Stephen*, finding himself so vigorously attack'd, sued for Peace; which the Emperor granted. He also put a very fortunate End to the great Difference he had with *Endes* Count of *Champagne*, and others, on the Account of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, which that Prince had inherited by the Death of *Raoul*, whose Sister he marry'd.

CONRAD
II.

1036.

HAVING thus secured Affairs on all sides there, he rais'd a powerful Army in order to march again into *Italy*, where several Cities and Noblemen had rebell'd against him; this he did with such Dispatch, that, surprizing all the disaffected, he made himself Master of *Milan*, where he punish'd the Rebels, as well as in the other Towns that would not receive him. This Rebellion was not the sole Motive of his March, he had also a View to fulfilling the Decree of the Electors, which was, that the Emperor elected should be obliged to go into *Italy*, there to receive two Crowns, besides the Imperial Diadem, one at *Milan*, the other at *Modena*, to distinguish the Kingdoms of *Lombardy* and *Italy*.

AFTER these Expeditions he went to *Rome*, received the Blessing of Pope *Bennet IX*, who had succeeded to *John XX*. then having nothing more to do in *Italy*, he returned into *Germany*, proposing to apply himself wholly to maintain Peace within the Empire, and with his Neighbours, but Death spoiled this good De-

His Death

CONRAD
II.

1039.

sign, for he ended his Life at *Utrecht* in the Year 1039, on *Whitsunday*. His Body was carried to *Spire*, and deposited in the Cathedral Church which he had built, as he did likewise a magnificent Palace for his usual Residence, which he left with the Empire to his Son *Henry III.*



C H A P. VIII.

H E N R Y the Third.

HENRY
III.

His Election



ENRY III, surnamed the *Black*, Son of *Conrad* and *Gisella* of *Suabia*, was chosen Emperor by the Princes and States of the Empire on his Father's

1040.

Recommendation, and accordingly received the Imperial Crown, in the Year 1040, at *Aix la Chapelle*, of *Philigrino* Archbishop of *Cologne*. At the Beginning of his Reign he had two troublesome Wars; but was the first Year unsuccessful against the *Bobemians*, for the Tribute which *Uladiſlaus* their Duke refus'd to pay; which obliged him to return the next with a fresh Army, where he forced him to pay the usual Tribute, and being puffed up with this Victory, undertook the second War in the Year 1042, against

War with
the Bo-
hemians.
1041.

1042.
Deposes the
Usurper of
Hungary.

Ovon or *Won* Usurper of the Crown of *Hungary*, driving him out of the Kingdom, and delivering up the Throne to King *Peter*, whom the other had deposed.

THE Court of *Rome* had, for some Time, been divided by divers Factions, and particularly by those of the Counts of *Tusculum*, and the *Prolety's*. Pope *Bennet IX* had been chosen Successor

for to *St. Peter* by the *Tusculans*, and after enjoying the Pontificate about nine or ten Years, was deposed by the *Ptolemeans*, join'd with the People, who put *Sylvester III* in his Place: He was also deposed three Months after by the *Tusculans*, and *Bennet* re-established; but finding himself hated by all the World, he resign'd the Papacy into the Hands of *John*, Archpriest of the *Roman Church*, which however he would sometime after have re-assumed. These three Popes, supported each by their Partisans, were nevertheless each of them maintain'd with Part of *St. Peter's* Patrimony; one at *St. Peter's*, another at *St. Mary Major*, the third at the *Lateran*, and all, as Authors say, leading dissolute Lives.

During these Transactions, a Priest, named *Gratian*, interposed, and managed Matters so well, that he brought each of them to renounce all Pretensions to the Papal Dignity, in Consideration of a Sum of Money given them; for which Reason the *Romans*, thinking themselves oblig'd to *Gratian*, as having delivered the holy See from these Schismatics, and restored Peace to the Church, elected him Pope, under the Name of *Gregory VI*. But the Emperor, without whose Allowance all these Things had been transacted, considering that his Authority had received a publick Wound, resolved in the Year 1046 to march speedily into *Italy* with an Army, to suppress these Disorders; and no sooner came there, but ordered a Council to be called at *Sutry*, where the Cause of these three Popes, being carefully examined, and their Depositions confirmed, he also deposed *Gregory VI*, and caused *Hudiger* Bishop of *Bamberg* to be chosen sovereign Pontif, by the Consent both of the *Romans* and *Germans*, under the Name of *Clement II*: He also received the Imperial

HENRY
III.1046.
The Emperor
goes into
Italy.

HENRY III Crown from the Hands of this new Pope, who proclaim'd him *Augustus*, and crown'd *Agnes* his Consort after him. Having thus recover'd the Rights of the Empire, and taken an Oath of the Senate and *Roman* People, never to acknowledge any Pope till he was confirmed by the Emperors, he return'd to *Germany*.

He was hardly got back before he received News of the Death of *Clement II*, who had held the Papacy but nine Months, and also that a certain *Bavarian* Bishop, nam'd *Stephen*, had forc'd himself into the Chair, under the Name of *Damasus II*. He also heard almost at the same Time, that he died twenty three Days after his Advancement; and that the *Romans*, imagining the Emperor would refer the Choice of a Pope to them, had dispatched Ambassadors to him. But *Henry*, resolving to preserve his Right, prevented them, and, without waiting the Arrival of the Ambassadors, constituted *Bruno*, a *German* Bishop, sovereign Pontif, making him immediately thereupon assume the Pontifical Robes: He was a good Man, not fond of Grandeur, and did not accept the Dignity but with Regret.

The Emperor names a Pope of his own Authority.

The Monk Hildebrand begins to intermeddle with the Affairs of the Papacy.

ACCORDINGLY, as he pass'd by the Abby of *Clugny*, a certain Monk, call'd *Hildebrand*, perswaded him that he could not wear that Habit, not being yet elected, or being only so by the Emperor, who had not singly the Power of choosing and naming a Pope. *Bruno*, on this, quitted the Pontifical Habit without Pain, and went like a private Man to *Rome*, accompany'd by *Hildebrand*; where the latter play'd his Cards so well, first crossing *Bruno's* Election underhand, and then disposing the *Romans* to consent to it, that he made a Merit thereof to himself. *Bruno* took the Name of *Leo IX*, and be-

believing himself obliged to *Hildebrand* for his Exaltation, gave him the greatest Share in his Favour, and the Management of Affairs, which was the Beginning of this Monk's Intrigues; and of the high Fortune to which in process of Time he arriv'd.

HENRY III

1049.

THE same Person, after *Leo IX*th's Death, gave yet farther Proofs of his Address; for having managed the *Romans* as he pleased, and always with a View of depriving the Emperor of the Right of electing a Pope, he induc'd them to choose one of their own Accord, which was *Gerard* Bishop of *Bavaria*, who took the Name of *Victor II*. and *Hildebrand* knowing well that the Emperor would not be satisfy'd therewith, got himself deputed to procure his Approbation thereof; and in effect he manag'd *Henry* so artfully, that he confirm'd it.

The Romans choose a Pope of themselves after the Death of Leo IX.

1054.

The Emperor confirms the Election.

'Tis true, the Emperor had not approv'd of it so easily, had not he bent his Thoughts so entirely upon the Affairs of *Hungary*, that he could not fix his Mind upon any thing else; the *Hungarians* being again in Rebellion against their King *Peter*, whom the Emperor had re-established. One *Andrew*, his Cousin, had put himself at their Head, and seiz'd upon the Crown, after defeating *Peter* in divers Engagements, taking him Prisoner, pulling out his Eyes, and killing him in Prison. Hereupon the Emperor march'd against them with considerable Forces, but 'twas to no effect; for the first Army he sent down the *Danube* with his Ammunition was almost all lost; the *Hungarians* having, by the Means of some excellent Swimmers, bor'd Holes in his Boats, so that they sunk to the bottom: Nor was he more fortunate the next Year, and at last he was forced

HENRY III to grant Peace to his Enemies, and yield up the Crown to the Usurper *Andrew*.

1056.
He calls a
Diet, where
he causes
his Son to
be declared
King of the
Romans.

THE Chagrin this ill Success gave him, was much increas'd by several publick Calamities that fell out upon the Neck of one another, as Earthquakes, Plagues, and Famines; insomuch, that, to alleviate his Misfortunes in some measure, and, as it were, by a Foresight of his End, he summon'd a Diet at *Goslar* in the Year 1056, at which Pope *Victor II*, who was come into Germany at his Desire, with a great Number of Ecclesiastical and secular Princes, assisted with the other States: And the Emperor having, amongst other things, recommended to them his Son *Henry*, then about five Years old, they received him as King of the *Romans*, and his future Successor to the Empire.

THIS was the Beginning of the Custom, since introduced, of giving the Title of King of the *Romans* to that Prince whom the States of the Empire appoint Successor to the Imperial Crown, either at the Emperor's Desire, or in Case of his Weakness or Incapacity.

His Death.

SOME Days after, the Emperor, on his Return from hunting, where he usually endeavoured to divert his Chagrin, fell sick, and died at *Burfelt* in *Saxony*, in *October*, Anno, 1056. at the Age of thirty nine. His Body was carry'd to *Spires* with abundance of Magnificence, attended by a great Number of Persons of Quality, and deposited in the Cathedral.





CHAP. IX.

HENRY the Fourth.



HENRY IV, firnam'd the Great, was educated with much Care after the Death of *Henry III* his Father, by the Empress *Agnes* his Mother; but at last, whether the Regency of this Princess, who was govern'd

HENRY
IV.
1061.

by the Advice of *Guibert* of *Parma* her Chancellor and first Minister, gave Umbrage to the Princes of the Empire, or whether she maintain'd the Rights of the Emperor her Son too resolutely, her Conduct alienated the Minds of most of the Princes, making them murmur against her Government; and the Affairs of *Rome* gave them an Opportunity of declaring openly against her. The Emperors had long an incontestable Title to choose and confirm the Popes; contrary to this Right *Alexander II* had been chosen after Pope *Nicholas II*, as the latter was after *Stephen IX*, Successor to *Victor II*; for he had got himself elected without the Emperor's Consent, by Virtue of a Decree of Council call'd by his Predecessor *Nicholas* of his own particular Authority, to render himself independent of the Emperor's. By this Decree of Council 'twas ordain'd, That the Curates of *Rome*, now called Cardinals, should solely elect the Popes. The Regent, thinking herself oblig'd to maintain the Rights of the Imperial Crown, summon'd a Diet of the States, wherein she caused

HENRY
IV.

caused *Alexander II* to be depos'd, and another Pope elected under the Name of *Honorius II*. This Schism not only embroil'd all *Germany*, but *Italy* also, where *Godfrey* of *Tuscany* maintain'd *Alexander* by Force in the holy See, and drove out *Honorius*. This *Godfrey* was a Prince of *Lorrain*, who had marry'd *Matilda*, the Heiress of *Tuscany*, and by these Nuptials was one of the most powerful Princes in *Italy*. On the other hand, the Ecclesiastical Princes of *Germany*, who only sought an Opportunity to rid their Hands of the Regent, made a secret Confederacy with the other States, and resolv'd to take the Government of the Emperor, and the Administration of Affairs, out of her Hands. In order to this, *Hanno*, Archbishop of *Cologne*, a Prelate of great Merit and Authority, on Pretence of making an Entertainment for the young Prince, in an Island in the middle of the *Rhine*, carry'd him off in a Boat as far as *Cologne*; and the States being themselves Masters of the Emperor's Person, who was then ten Years old, entrusted the Care of his Education to the Archbishops of *Cologne* and *Bremen*. They apply'd themselves carefully thereunto, but after a very different manner; *Hanno*, Archbishop of *Cologne*, to whom the young Prince paid great Deference, endeavour'd to make him apply himself to Learning, and virtuous Actions; but was not seconded by *Albert* Archbishop of *Bremen*; for he, to gain the Emperor's Favour, for his own private Interest, and to render himself Master of the Affairs of the Empire, which he already govern'd with Authority enough, allow'd the Prince all manner of Liberty, leaving him entirely to himself; and, in short, was the Occasion of carrying him to such an Excess of Debauchery, (so below his Dignity) that he was

Chap. IX. of the EMPIRE.

153

was past reclaiming, which, when too late, he wish'd for and attempted.

HENRY
IV.

HE began his Government at the Age of twenty two Years, by re-establishing the publick Security in his own Dukedom of Saxony, and putting a Stop to the Robberies, Plunders, and Extortions, which the Princes and States of that Country had committed upon each other, and especially upon Travellers, in Derogation of the Imperial Authority, ever since the Time of *Otho I.* To this end he thought proper to take up his Residence at *Goslar*, that he might restrain all these Disorders by his Presence; this done, he built and fortify'd Castles near all Passes and Avenues throughout the Dukedom of Saxony, putting Garrisons therein, to retain the States and People in their Duty. But as these things could not be effected without raising some Taxes, the Ecclesiastical and Secular Princes took occasion from thence to thwart the Emperor, and oppose his Design, under pretence of defending their Liberties.

1072.
Henry settles Peace in his own Dominions.

The Reason of the Saxons taking Arms against him.

IN the End they were yet more animated to rise against him by his Debauchery, being besides spur'd on by the Council sent them from *Rome*, where they desir'd no better than to find Work for him; and, in order to second them effectually, Pope *Alexander II.* being push'd on by the Advice of Cardinal *Hildebrand*, an enterprizing ambitious Man, his chief Confident, and who succeeded him, went so far as to cite the Emperor to appear before him, and give an Account of his libertine Life; and of the Sale they pretended he made of the Investitures of Benefices; but the Emperor laugh'd at this Citation.

1073.

IN short, the States of Saxony met at *Neckmeflow*, and, entering into a Confederacy on pretence

HENRY
IV.
*Confederacy
against the
Emperor,
and the
Proposals
made him
by the States*

tence of preserving their Liberties, sent Deputies to the Emperor, to present him a Memorial containing these eight Heads: 1. They demanded the Demolition of the Forts and Castles built by him in *Saxony* and *Thuringia*. 2. His restoring the Money and Lands that had been taken from the Princes and States, &c. contrary to all Justice. 3. That *Otho*, Duke of *Saxony*, should be re-establish'd in his Duchy of *Bavaria*, whereof *Henry* had dispossessed him, because on having been accus'd by one *Egino*, of a Design upon the Emperor's Life, and being summon'd by a Resolution of a Diet, to appear at *Goslar*, and clear himself of this Accusation by a Duel with his Accuser, he would not appear, refusing to engage with a Person who was his Inferior. 4. That he would maintain the Privileges and ancient Statutes of the *Saxons*. 5. That the Emperor would not always reside at *Goslar*, but visit the rest of his Dominions, that he might do Justice to all his Subjects, and provide against the Necessities of the Church, Widows, Orphans, &c. 6. That he would banish from Court those Councillors and Domesticks, by whose ill Conduct the Empire was come to Ruin, and that he would make use of the Princes and States of the Empire, whose Interest was concern'd for its Preservation equally with himself. 7. That he would put away his Concubine, and be contented with the Empress his Consort. 8. And lastly, they begg'd him to acquiesce with these Demands; in which Case they promis'd him all Obedience according to their Oath, and to give him such Assistance as free States were obliged to; adding that, on the contrary, if he had any Design to oppress them, they were pre-

Chap. IX. of the EMPIRE.

115

prepared to defend themselves against any Violence and Tyranny.

HENRY
IV.

THIS Deputation was received and sent back by the Emperor with great Coldness; all the Answer he gave them was, that he would as soon as possible call a Diet to have the Advice of the other Princes and States of the Empire thereupon; and as this did not at all please the States of *Saxony*, who were resolv'd to deliver themselves from the Impositions they paid, without referring it to other States, who were not involved in the same Troubles, they sent to inform the Emperor, that if he did not immediately give Orders for their Relief, they were resolv'd to procure it themselves at the Expence of their Lives. The Emperor found very well by this that they would be Judges of, and Parties in their own Cause, but was yet better convinc'd when he knew they had rais'd a considerable Body of Troops, and were on March to invest *Goslar*, where he resided. This made him resolve to quit that Place secretly by Night, and without loss of Time summon the other Princes and States of the Empire to supply him with a speedy and powerful Assistance.

Henry prepares to resist the League.

THE Ecclesiastical Princes of the League were *Werner* Archbishop of *Magdebourg*, and the Bishops *Burchard* of *Halberstat*, *Henry* of *Hildersheim*, *Werner* of *Mersbourg*, *Heilberg* of *Minden*, *Jumer* of *Paderborn*, *Frederick* of *Mimmegardesfurt*, and *Benno* of *Misnia*. The Seculars, *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, who was proscribed, *Magnus* Duke of *Saxony*, the Marquisses of *Thuringia*, *Uko* and *Dede*, *Frederick* Count Palatine of *Saxony*, and several Counts, with the Nobility, and all Persons who were capable of bearing Arms, which all together amounted to 62,000 Men.

THE

HENRY
IV.

THE Emperor's Party was not less considerable; for all the other Archbishops, Bishops, and Prelates of the Empire, remained faithful to him; even some of *Saxony*, as *Leomar* Archbishop of *Bremen*, *Eppo* Bishop of *Zeitz*, and *Benno* Bishop of *Osnabrug*, besides a great Number of the most potent Princes and Dukes in the Empire, espous'd his Cause; amongst the rest, *Rodolphus* Duke of *Suabia*, Count of *Reinfelden*, who marry'd the Emperor *Henry's* Sister, and had by that Means the Dukedom of *Suabia*, *Guelph* or *Guelphon*, Son of *Azon* Marquis of *Ferrara*, to whom the Emperor had given the Duchy of *Bavaria*, the Dukes *Godfrey* of *Lorrain*, *Suintebold* of *Bobemia*, *Bertold* of *Carinthia*, and the Marquis *Ernest* of *Bavaria*, without reckoning other Ecclesiasticks and Seculars, who arm'd for him in this War.

The Emperor
agrees
with the
Seditious.

NEVERTHELESS the Emperor (without minding the continual Hostilities and Outrages committed against him by the *Saxons*) would not neglect any Opportunity of reducing them by Lenity; to which end he hearkened to any Expedient, which the Princes of the Empire thought fit to propose. He even went so far as to depute the Archbishops of *Mentz* and *Cologne*, the Bishops of *Metz* and *Bamberg*, the Dukes of *Lorrain*, *Suabia*, and *Carinthia*, to go to *Gerstingen*, and treat of a Peace in his Name with the Princes and States of *Saxony*, who made a long Detail by Articles to the Plenipotentiaries of their Reasons to complain against the Emperor. Amongst these Articles some related to the common Interest of the States of *Saxony*, and others only to his private Conduct, of which they gave a very exact Account, relating divers scandalous Debaucheries with married Women and Maidens, to the Prejudice of *Bertha*, *Marchioness*

Chap. IX. of the EMPIRE.

157

chionessa of *Ferrara*, whom he had espous'd at the Age of sixteen.

HENRY IV.



To this the Plenipotentiaries answered also by Articles, and, beginning with the last, said, That since the Emperor by his Conduct had occasion'd the Commotions in *Saxony*, they thought it proper he should promise them to change his Life for the future; and that, as for the States of *Saxony*, who, from being Parties, had made themselves Judges, not being willing to refer themselves to the States of the Empire, it was their Opinion they ought to wait on the Emperor to ask him Pardon for that Presumption.

He was all this Time at *Wirtzburg*, with the States of the Empire, whilst they were labouring about this Accommodation, and the Plenipotentiaries went thither to give him an Account of what had been resolv'd on; wherewith he was very well satisfy'd, approving of all the Points that had been agreed on, and promising to perform them. But altho' he had found the Council of the Princes of the Empire useful to him in this Affair, he nevertheless neglected it in others of no less Importance, to follow the Opinions of particular Persons who surrounded him. This incens'd the Dukes *Rodolphus* of *Suabia*, *Bertold* of *Carinthia*, and *Guelph* of *Bavaria*, so much, that, seeing the little Value set upon them, that they remov'd from Court, without waiting the Assembly of the States breaking up, which the Emperor dismiss'd after the Conclusion of the Treaty, and set out from *Wirtzburg* to take up his Residence at *Nuremberg*.

HERE he was inform'd that one *Reginger*, the most trusted of his Domesticks, had retired from his Court, and was gone to acquaint the Dukes of *Suabia* and *Carinthia*, that the Emperor would

Another
Insurrection
of several
Male-con-
tents, where
the Empe-
ror offers to
fight a
Duel.

have

HENRY
IV.

have employ'd him to assassinate them; but that he would never consent, as some had who were chosen for the Execution of that Design; wherefore that Prince had conceiv'd such a mortal Hatred against him, that he was oblig'd to leave him. The Advice that had been given him of *Reginger's* Perfidy, was soon after confirm'd by the ill Effects of the Imposture; for this false Report made such an Impression upon the Minds of the People, that almost all Mouths agreed in decrying and inveighing against him; which oblig'd that Prince, according to the foolish Opinion then reigning, to offer to fight in single Duel against *Rodolphus* Duke of *Suabia*, that God might publicly shew the Falsity of this Calumny, by discovering his Innocence: But the Duke referr'd the Affair to the Princes of the Empire to determine as they should think proper.

AT the same Time a brave Cavalier, nam'd *Cosheim*, begg'd his Majesty to permit him likewise to fight with *Reginger*, which was granted him; after which he went to Duke *Rodolphus* to desire the same Leave, but the Duke refus'd him, persisting in his Resolution of referring the Affair to the States of the Empire, rather chusing that Method, than to expose himself to the uncertainty of the Event. All the Emperor's steps for his Justification were in vain, and tho' 'twas visible to the least clear-sighted, that *Reginger* was an Impostor; Nevertheless the Princes of the Empire continued to declare against him, and reduced him to that Extremity, that his only Refuge was to have recourse to the Imperial Cities, and take shelter at *Worms*, where the Inhabitants receiv'd him with Joy, in spite of their Bishop, who oppos'd it, and would have forbid his Entrance.

THE

THE Emperor; tho' young, seem'd of a prodigious Spirit, and born for great Things; but Fortune respects and considers the Qualities of the Mind but little; for the Princes of the Empire, taking Colour from the Accusations brought against him, met in the City of *Mentz*, to deliberate on the Means to deprive him of the Crown and Scepter, and elect another in his Place. The Emperor, being inform'd of this Design, manag'd matters so well by his secret Solicitations, that some of these Princes were persuaded to come and confer with him at *Oppenheim*; where, being arrived, he received them with abundance of Civility, and, during the Conference, begg'd them so earnestly to excuse the Debauches of his Youth, and be assured that, for the future, he would live as became an Emperor, not acting any thing unworthy of the Crown wherewith they had honour'd him, inasmuch that they remain'd satisfy'd with his Protestations, and only insisted on the Charge brought against him. To this he answer'd without Hesitation, that he would fight even against *Reginger* himself, to shew how far he was from being capable of the Business wherewith he charg'd him; the Proposal was approv'd on, and even the Day and Place of Combat appointed, viz. eight Days after *Epiphany*, at *Mareau* near *Mentz*, which being thus resolv'd upon, the Emperor returned to *Worms*.

THIS Prince wanted Money, or rather every thing: He could neither get Supplies from the Empire, nor his own Duchy; for the States, taking Advantage of the Disorder of his Affairs, had seiz'd on all his Revenues, driving and cutting off his Troops, as well as razing and demolishing his Fortresses and Castles. Nevertheless the Day of Combat approach'd; but a

M

little

HENRY IV.

Fortune begins to frown upon the Emperor, who is reduced to offer to fight a Duel with his Domestic Servant, who is carried away by the Devil.

HE MAY
IV.

little before, the Devil, as was pretended, carried off the Impostor; and thus in spite of himself, rendered a signal Service to the Emperor, who, on this Occasion, had consulted his Courage more than his Prudence, and the Honour of his Dignity.

1074.

THE Emperor being deliver'd from this Enemy, endeavour'd afterwards to win the Princes who were disaffected, by Negotiation, wherein he had Success, and thus enjoy'd some Ease; but the Saxons a little after began again to rebel; which oblig'd him to resolve once for all to reduce them by Force: To which Intent he rais'd the same Year an Army of about 60,000 Men, by the Assistance of the Princes and States of the Empire. As soon as he was arriv'd in Saxony, he deliver'd all up to Pillage, quartering his Troops at Discretion in the Cities, whilst the Saxons, who kept the Field, were dying with Hunger and Cold. He might have promis'd himself to have compleated their Ruin by an entire Victory; nevertheless, according to Custom, giving Ear to his Prudence sooner than his Passion, or Fortune which flattered his Courage, he made Peace, even to his own Disadvantage, by the Mediation of some Princes of the Empire: Then having disbanded his Troops, after rewarding them according to their Merit, he caus'd himself to be conducted in Triumph to Goslar by the Forces of the Saxon Princes.

IN the Treaty of Peace, amongst other Conditions, were these, That the Emperor should first disband those Troops that were in the Fortresses in the Country, which Fortresses the Inhabitants should be at Liberty to demolish; that he should make those States amends that were ruined by his Forces; that he should dismiss all Strangers from the Saxon Council, and put Sax-

ons

Chap. IX. of the EMPIRE.

161

HENRY
IV.

ons in their Room; that he should reform the Course of Justice, and assist in Judgment himself, for the more speedy rendring it to all Men; that he should make Satisfaction within the Year to Duke *Otbo* for the Duchy of *Bavaria*, whereof he had dispossest him; that he should not take up his ordinary Residence in *Goslar*, but in other Places in the Empire; and lastly, that he should govern the Empire only by *German Councils*.

IN Consequence of this Treaty, the Emperor went to reside at *Worms*, where he was very safe, having experienced the Zeal and Fidelity of that City, by the Assistance she had given him in the Time of his Adversity. In the mean while the *Saxons*, on their side, demolish'd the Castles and Towns he had built, and both the Ecclesiastical and Secular Princes paid him due Homage, and also restor'd those Lands and Possessions they had unjustly taken from him.

NEVERTHELESS, this Peace was not of long Continuance, the *Saxons*, who were naturally unquiet, and us'd to live in Luxury and Abundance, the Strongest at the Expence of the Weakest, again occasion'd new Commotions. The Emperor had built a large Monastery, with a handsome Church and stately Castle, at *Harlesberg*, where he had a large Park inclos'd with Walls; and the *Saxons*, in Performance of the Articles of Peace, had ruin'd the Fortifications, but preserv'd the Church and Castle. But a little after, both the one and the other were maliciously raz'd by the Peasants in the Neighbourhood, after having pillag'd the Ornaments, Furniture, and all Things of Value, even to the Iron Instruments and Stones, without sparing the Tombs and sacred Places.

Another
Rebellion
against the
Emperor,
which he
suppresses.

THE Emperor, having Advice hereof, and

1275.

M. 2

seeing

HENRY
IV.

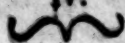
seeing how the *Saxons* continued to abuse his Clemency and Goodness, bent his Thoughts upon a Way to prevent the ill Consequences thereof, and as the Festival of *Easter* drew nigh, which he had resolv'd to celebrate at *Bamberg*, and several Princes of the Empire went there to meet him, to pay their Court, according to the Custom observ'd on great Festivals, he thought it proper to take Advantage of this Opportunity to represent to them the Proceedings of the *Saxons*, and demand their Sentiments, upon what Measures he should take on this Occasion. Accordingly he did so, and was answer'd by the Archbishop of *Mentz*, in the Name of all the Ecclesiastical Princes, and of *Rodolphus* Duke of *Suabia*, *Bertold* of *Carinthia*, and other secular Princes, That God, having been offended, and the Emperor, Empire, and its Members, treated unworthily, and with Contempt by this Sedition; it ought to be the more severely punish'd, as its Example might be of dangerous Consequence, if suffer'd with Impunity; that therefore his Imperial Majesty should exhort the Princes and States of the Empire to unite all together to chastise this Sacrilege and Rebellion: That as for themselves, they were entirely disposed to assist him to the utmost of their Power. The Emperor could hardly be persuaded to come to this Extremity, but defer'd their Punishment for some Months, as hoping other Expedients might be found to reclaim these People; but heard that, whilst they pretended to be willing to submit, they were endeavouring, by secret Intrigues, to strengthen themselves in their Revolt. Hereupon he follow'd the Princes Advice, and caus'd an Order to be publish'd throughout the Empire, for the States to march their Troops against the *Saxons*, at the same

same Time declaring War against them by his Ambassador, then at their assembly at *Goslar*, the Rendezvous of the Forces being at *Bredingen*, a Place depending on the Abbey of *Hirschfeld*.

HENRY
IV.

THE Rebels thought, that, to throw all the Blame upon the Emperor, they need only complain to his Ambassador, that he had resolv'd to wage War with them without hearing their Justification; they being ready (as they said) to repair all the Damage he might have suffer'd, either in Gold, Silver, Jewels, Furniture, Ornaments of the Crown, or in what related to the Demolition of his House; protesting that all these Outrages had been committed only by Peasants, and Men without any Authority, as well as without any Order from the States of *Saxony*, who were inclin'd to punish them severely. But the Ambassador answer'd them, that the Emperor would only act against Rebels, and not against such as, quitting the League made amongst them, should join themselves to the other States of the Empire.

ALL the Archbishops and Bishops met the Emperor at *Bredingen*, except those of *Cologne* and *Liege*, who nevertheless sent their Forces; the Dukes of *Bobemia*, *Suabia*, and *Bavaria*, with the Marquis *Ernest* of *Bavaria*, the Dukes of *Lorraine* and *Carinthia*, together with the Counts and Nobility of the Empire, came also thither with a fine and numerous Army. The Princes of *Saxony* rais'd likewise a considerable Body of Forces, and gave the Command to *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*. The Arms on both Sides were Coats of Mail, Halberds, Javelins, and Swords. The Emperor caus'd his Army to seize on the most advantageous Posts, and offer'd them Battle on *May* 13, 1075; the Duke *Rodolphus* beginning the Onset, according to the common Practice

HENRY
IV.

of the antient Emperors, who always gave the Command of the first Attack to the Dukes of *Suabia*. The Battle was very bloody, and lasted till Night, when the *Saxons* were defeated; and their Generals, with the other Ecclesiastical and Secular Princes, made their Escapes to their Strong-holds; and *Henry*, being Master of all *Saxony* by this Victory, dismiss'd his Troops, on Condition that they should return to *Gerstingen*, on the first of *October*, in better Case and greater Number, to put a final End to the War; after which he return'd to *Worms*.

The Emperor
now agrees
with the
Rebels,

DURING this Interval, the Princes and States of *Saxony* endeavour'd to make an Agreement with him, but continued however to raise Forces to be always in Readiness to defend themselves; the Emperor also strengthen'd himself on all sides, and took the Field first with his Army, where the *Saxons* follow'd him soon after; but at last, by the means of Mediators, both Parties were brought to an Agreement, which was consented to by the whole Empire. The Princes and States of *Saxony*, viz. *Werner*, Archbishop of *Magdebourg*, *Bucco* Bishop of *Haldberstat*, *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, *Magnus* and *Herman*, Dukes of *Saxony*, *Frederick*, Palatine of *Saxony*, with the Counts and Nobility of the Country, ask'd Pardon of the Emperor for their Revolt, in Presence of the Imperial Court, which was in the open Field, begging he would honour them so far as to restore them to his Favour; and that Prince granting it, gave Orders to the Princes and Officers to disperse their Troops, and retire to their respective Homes, which was executed on all sides. This important Expedition being thus ended in a small Time, the Emperor return'd back again to *Worms*, whither he arriv'd on *St. Martin's Day*, in the same Year.

But

BUT he was not to enjoy this Repose long, having a Difference with the *Italians*, much more difficult to compose, as will be seen in the sequel. Cardinal *Hildebrand*, during his Employments under *Alexander II.* and the former Popes, had made his Efforts, by his Intrigues, to deprive the Emperors of their Right of electing and confirming the Popes, and giving the Investitures of Bishopricks in their Dominions, which they had enjoy'd ever since *Charlemagne*. The Contest about Investitures had of late been revived at *Rome*, on account of some that had been conferr'd by the Emperor, as was said, on Prelates whose Lives were not irreproachable, and they had recourse to indirect ways to abolish the Custom; but, before we farther proceed, it may be proper, in order to clear up this Dispute, to give an Account, not only of the original Matter of Fact, but also of the original Right. We read in Scripture, that, to supply the Vacancy of the Apostleship of *Judas*, the Believers, to the Number of 120, propos'd *Barsabas* and *Matthias*, and, having cast Lots for each, the Lot fell upon *Matthias*; and that likewise when they were to elect Deacons, the Believers, being then many more in Number, chose seven whom they presented to the *Apostles*, who, after Prayer, laid their Hands upon them. Wherefore there are two Things in these Elections, the Presentation made by the Believers, and the Imposition of Hands by the *Apostles*. The Presentation was wholly secular, as being perform'd by Laymen; the Imposition of Hands was a sacred Thing, or a Sacrament, as being the visible Sign of the invisible Descent of the HOLY GHOST; accordingly this Action belonged to consecrated and holy Men.

HENRY
IV.The Empe-
ror has a
great Diffi-
culty with
Rome, on
Account of
the In-
vestitures.

HENRY
IV.

THE Presentation is what onemay call the Investiture; for the People first electing the Persons they judged capable, and then presenting them, gave, as much as in them lay, the Investiture of the Ministry in question to the Person elected, that he might be afterwards consecrated by the Priests, and thereby rendred capable of the Ministerial Functions. This was the Practice in the Infancy of the Church, when all the Believers were but one Body, and one Soul, and liv'd in common.

SINCE that Time the Dignities of the Church, having been endow'd with large Possessions by Princes and Persons of Condition, were coveted by such as had more a View to the Possessions annexed to them, than the Office it self, that is, who had more Value for the Revenue of the Benefice, than for the Order, or the Office. Then 'twas that they strove to obtain them by Factions, Simony, and other unlawful Ways, whence generally sprung Seditions, contrary to the publick Tranquility, and the Authority of the Sovereign, oblig'd these Princes (whom God commands above all things to preserve the Peace of their Dominions, which they hold of him) to have recourse to some Means more safe and agreeable to the publick Quiet.

THESE Means were, to do themselves what was before done by the People, that is, themselves to elect, present, and invest the Incumbents; and in effect, being the Heads of the People, and representing (as is said) the Persons of the People, what they do in the Name of the Publick, is esteem'd to be done by the Publick it self. The Prince also knows, better than any one, the Subjects most capable of these Dignities; because he is better inform'd of their Conduct and Reputation; whereof we have an
Example

Example in the Popes themselves; it having been remarked that those who have been nominated by the Emperors, have generally been great Men; and that, on the contrary, those who have been introduc'd other ways, have not always acted answerably to their Engagements.

HENRY
IV.

BESIDES, two strong Reasons are to be consider'd, which incontestably conferr the Right of electing and investing the Bishops and other Incumbents on the Sovereigns. 1. That the Temporalities of these Benefices were their own Gifts, which they have erected into a sort of Fiefs in the Persons of the Bishops, whence came the Name of *Benefices*; and, 2. That the Incumbents being their own Subjects, and becoming their Vassals by the Possessions of these Temporalities, which are accompany'd with Honour and Authority, the Princes, by their Duty as Sovereigns, and for the Good of the Publick, are bound to secure themselves of the Person and Fidelity of these Vassals; insomuch that, to contest the Right of these Princes, is to destroy the political Order establish'd by God.

AGAIN, these Investitures were given by the Emperors with the Crosier and Ring, in the same manner as they gave the Investitures of other Fiefs with the Scepter, Sword, or Standard; all which was but a pure outward Ceremony, to signify, by these Marks, that they invested the Vassal with something real. For to say, that, because the Bishops carry a Crosier, which represents the Crook wherewith a Shepherd keeps his Sheep; and a Ring, which is a Token of their Marriage with their Church, these two Things denote their Spiritual Power, is a very arbitrary Explanation.

THE Emperors therefore, as well as other Sovereigns, had a Right, not only to invest the Bishops

HENRY
IV.

Bishops, whose Bishopricks were in the *German Territories*, but the Popes themselves; and 'tis this Right from which the same Popes were endeavouring to free themselves under the Emperor, pretending to the World, that it is a kind of Sacrilege for Laymen to lay their prophane Hands upon the Sanctuary, in making Bishops, who are sacred Persons, and the Successors of the Apostles: But, in effect, they only made use of this Pretence to render themselves independent of the Emperors, and be invested with the full sovereign Authority. One manifest Proof of this Design is, that they are very careful, not to distinguish the Temporalities from the Spiritualities of a Benefice, as we have just done; for the one, as has been explain'd, is different from the other. The Temporalities of a Benefice, or the Benefice it self, are of the Nature of other Possessions of the Commonwealth, whereof the Prince has the Disposal, as first Proprietor, in the Name of the Publick, to conferr them, when vacant, upon whom he sees proper. The Spirituality of a Benefice, or the Order, or the Office, is the Function of a Bishop, Abbot, &c. which is deriv'd from the Imposition of their Hands who ordain the Bishop or Incumbent. Thus it has been, by the Help of this confounding, or not distinguishing between two Things entirely different, that the Court of *Rome*, putting Scruples into weak Heads, has carried Fire and Sword into the Heart of the Empire, in order to accomplish their Ends during the Troubles.

THIS Quarrel also being a Quarrel wherein all Princes were concern'd, every one endeavour'd to be resolute in the Maintenance of his Right; for which Reason Pope *Urban II*, not finding perhaps the *French* so tractable as the *Germans*,

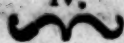
Germans, explain'd the Thing in a Council. There 'twas decreed, that Kings have a Right to elect and name, but not to invest with the Crozier and Ring, as being Signs of the spiritual Power, which they would seem to confer thereby; this shews, that the great Dispute about Investitures, was about the Name of the Thing, and not the Thing it self.

HENRY
IV.

THE Court of *Rome* did not, however, think it proper to make this Explanation so soon in the Empire; they were willing first to have an honest Pretence to establish the Pope's Sovereignty; and indeed, considering the Conduct of those Emperors who had supplanted the House of *France*, to whom the Imperial Crown rightly belong'd, one might say, that, if the Popes were guilty of any Crime, in making themselves independent, they have only follow'd the Example of the Emperors themselves, the Popes having as much Right to make themselves absolute Sovereigns, as the first Comer to make himself Emperor.

BUT, to resume the Thread of our History, Cardinal *Hidebrand*, a Man of consummate Knowledge in Negotiations, but of a fiery Temper, by his Experience in the Affairs he had manag'd in *Germany*, having discover'd that their Minds were not hard to be shaken, during the Lives of two or three Popes (under whom he had been employ'd) had laid the Foundation of the Scheme he had form'd in his own Person, viz. to deprive the Emperors of the Right of Investiture to Benefices. Thus he had couch'd under a general Pretence, his particular Aim of taking from them the Right of electing or confirming Popes; hoping that this Point being gain'd, and it not being possible to miss the Papacy in the Post he enjoy'd, he should then see himself really

Election of Gregory VII, without the Emperor's Knowledge, and his Confirmation by the Emperor himself.

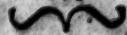
HENRY
IV.

ally invested with the Sovereign Pontificate. However, he came to the Papal Dignity before the Affair was brought to Perfection; for after *Alexander II* his Death, which happen'd in the Year 1073, this Cardinal was immediately elected by the Faction of the Populace, without the Clergy's having any hand therein, and assum'd the Name of *Gregory VII*; but in the end, the Cardinals, not being able to prevent this Election, had given their Consent. This being all done without the Emperor's Knowledge, who, as well as the Princes of the Empire, was surpriz'd at the Novelty, he call'd a Diet at *Mentz*, where the States representing to him, that, since he had received from his Predecessors the Right of electing and confirming the Popes, whereof *Nicolas II*, had given him a precise Declaration, in a full Council held at *Rome*, on his coming to the Crown, he was bound in Duty to maintain this Right, and declare *Gregory's* Election null. Thereupon the Emperor, approving the Opinion of these Princes, sent an Ambassador to *Rome* to complain of this Incroachment to the Pope and Cardinals, with Orders to the latter, to depose Cardinal *Hildebrand*, if they did not demand of him the Confirmation of his Election.

BUT the Pope, not being willing to embroil Affairs, *mal a propos*, received the Ambassador very civilly, protesting that he never desired the Papacy, but that the *Romans* had oblig'd him to accept that Honour; to which nevertheless he did not agree, but on Condition of being rais'd to it with Consent and Approbation of the Emperor and Princes of the Empire; for which Reason he had deferr'd his Coronation, and would not have that Ceremony perform'd till he was confirm'd by his Imperial

Imperial Majesty. The Emperor, being inform'd of these Excuses, was satisfy'd, and sent immediately the Confirmation of the Pope's Election to his Ambassador, after which Gregory was crown'd.

HENRY IV.



THE Pope being thus settled in St. Peter's Chair, and acknowledg'd by all the World, began his Pontificate by a great Number of Excommunications, which he issued out against the German Princes and States, both Secular and Ecclesiastick, particularly against the Arch-Bishops of *Saltzbourg* and *Bremen*, and the Bishops of *Bamberg*, *Spire*, and *Strasburgh*, because they were either married, or liv'd with Concubines. Besides this, he excommunicated every Ecclesiastick who should receive his Investiture of a Layman, and every Layman who should conferr it; but these first Steps, tho' vigorous, were only to make an Essay of the Thunder of the holy See: For he thought, to signalize himself, he must level it at the Heads of Sovereigns. With this Intent he sent four Legates into *Germany* to officiate at a Council, which was not held, thro' the Obstacles laid in the Way by the Bishops; nevertheless the Legates treated *Henry* (as excommunicated) till he justify'd himself of the Crime of Simony, where-with he was charg'd before the former Pope.

The Pope excommunicates several Members of the Empire.

The Pope excites Revolts against the Emperor.

To carry his Point yet further, against the Emperor, *Gregory* (according to some Authors) insinuated it into the Minds of the Saxons to send Ambassadors to *Rome*, with Complaints of the Wrong suffer'd by the Treaty, they were forced to conclude with *Henry*; and to beg the Pope earnestly to depose him, as having render'd himself unworthy of his Dignity by his Vices and Misconduct.

'Twas in Consequence of these Articles that
Gregory,

HENRY
IV.

1076.
The Pope
cites the
Emperor to
Rome, and
the Empe-
ror degrades
the Pope in
a Diet.

Gregory, being falsely persuaded of his having a Right to elect and depose Emperors, and resolving not to accept of the same Reasons as had been given his Predecessor, whose Summons had been condemn'd by the Emperor, sent again Legates to the Diet at *Goslar*, which was call'd on Account of the *Saxon* Princes who were taken Prisoners at the last Battle. These Legates, and the *Nuntio*, according to the Pope's Orders, began first by complaining, that the Emperor had given the Investiture of some Bishopricks, contrary to the Prohibition of the Court of *Rome*, and that he had not caus'd the Decrees of the last Council against these Investitures, Simony, and the Incontinency of the Clergy, to be publish'd. In the second Place, they demand'd the Enlargement of the Princes who were Prisoners, and that the Archbishops, who were excommunicated, should be depriv'd of their Dignities and Possessions; and lastly, that the Emperor should appear at *Rome* on *Shrove-Sunday*, there to answer the Accusations laid to his Charge, adding, that he should be excommunicated, and deposed, if he did not pay due Obedience to the Church.

THE Emperor was the more sensibly touch'd at this Attempt of *Gregory's*, because esteeming the Pope and *Roman* People his Vassals, and dependent on the Empire, 'twas an In-croachment upon the Imperial Dignity: Accordingly the Legates were sent back after a Manner not very obliging, and he immediately summon'd the Ecclesiastical Princes, and other Prelates, to *Worms*. Thither they came, in great Numbers; and, having deliberated on these Attempts, till then unheard of, concluded, that *Gregory* ought only to be considered as a Man who had usurped the holy See by artful and indirect

direct Means, infected the Church with many Abuses and Novelties, and swerv'd from his Duty, by several scandalous Outrages; wherefore the Emperor, by Virtue of his Sovereign Authority, according to the Example of his Predecessors, ought to deprive him of the Popedom, and settle another Pontif in his Place.

HENRY
IV.

AGREEABLY to this Resolution, the Emperor sent an Ambassador to *Rome*, who, by Letters to the Pope, and several Writings to the Publick, inform'd them, not only of the Reasons that induc'd the general Assembly of *German Bishops* to pronounce *Gregory* unworthy and incapable of the Papacy, but declared, that the Emperor depriv'd him of that Dignity, discharging the *Romans*, and all others at the same Time, from the Obedience they ow'd him in that Quality.

THE Pope, being exasperated at this Embassy and these Writings, immediately summon'd a Council at *Rome*, whereat 110 Bishops were present, who, having consulted upon the Emperor's Proceedings, concluded, that the Pope ought to deprive him of the Crown, declare the Princes and Members of the Empire discharged from the Oath they had taken to him, and prohibit their having any manner of Communication with him, which the Pope executed, excommunicating the Emperor and his Adherents. This is the first Pontif who ever durst excommunicate his Sovereign, and this is the first Step the Popes took, in the Person of *Gregory VII*, to shake off the Yoke of the Emperors, and make themselves absolute; for the Popes, having maintain'd themselves ever since in this Independence, have held no more of the Empire.

The Emperor, being depos'd by the Pope, stoops to great Indignities, to satisfy him.

THIS Sentence fill'd Christendom with Troubles and Divisions, and *Germany* with long and bloody

HENRY
IV.

bloody Wars; whereby the Emperor was reduced to such an Extremity, that seeing almost all the Princes of the Empire rise in Arms against him, by the Pope's Instigation, and not being able to submit to the unjust, unworthy Conditions propos'd him, he thought his best way would be to endeavour to appease the Pope's Anger by an Action of singular Humility, imagining that the Spiritualities only were in Question. Hereupon he resolv'd to go into *Italy* as a Penitent, and undertook this Journey in *December*, 1076, with his Wife, and Son *Conrad*, then but two Years old, suffering great Fatigues and Inconveniencies in the Journey.

BEING arriv'd at *Canossa*, an Imperial Town, belonging to *Godfrey* and *Matilda*, where the Pope was, the Emperor was let in at the first Gate, and, shutting him close within whilst all his Retinue were left waiting without, they gave him to understand between the two Gates, that he must expect no Pardon, unless he would fast for three Days, stand each Day till Evening barefoot in the Snow, and after that Penance, ask Forgiveness of the Pope; to all which he submitted, and the Pope received him on the fourth Day, (*June 25, 1077*) gave him Absolution, and made an Accommodation with him. But 'tis incredible how infinitely an Agreement, so extraordinary and outrageous, displeas'd the *Italian* Princes, they could neither bear the Pope's Arrogance, nor the Emperor's excessive Meanness.

THAT Prince, being even enraged at his own Weakness, which had reduced him to such a violent Necessity, came over to the Sentiments of the Princes, States, and Cities of *Italy*; pacifying them to the utmost of his Power, giving
ing

ing them to understand the strange Extremity whereunto he was reduced; and, to convince them how sensible he was of this Outrage, declared himself the Pope's mortal Enemy.

HENRY IV.

The Pope
involves
Affairs in
gain, and
induces the
Princes of
the Empire
to choose a
new Em-
peror.

THE Pope, on the other hand, summoning all his former Animosity, left no Stone unturn'd to disturb the Affairs of Germany, and he incens'd the Minds of the Princes so effectually for his Revenge, that he induced them unanimously to consent to ruin the Emperor. Hereupon, making the Excommunication issued against him their Pretence, they deprived him of the Sovereign Dignity at *Forsheim*, electing *Rodolphus* Duke of *Suabia* in his Place, and crowning him at *Mentz*, the second of *March* following.

THE Emperor, being inform'd of what was transacted in Germany, set out from Italy with all Expedition, and, being there arriv'd, took the Field immediately with what Troops he could gather together: Herewith he attack'd *Rodolphus*, and defeated him near *Wirtzbourg*, on the first of *July*, the same Year, whence the Duke made his Escape. The Year following, 1078, *Henry* and *Rodolphus* each again set another Army on foot, and giving Battle on the seventh of *August*, fought with great Obstinacy. At last the Resolution of *Henry's* Troops made those of *Rodolphus* give Ground, and, being routed a second Time, *Rodolphus* was again oblig'd to save himself by Flight.

1078

THE Emperor after this made himself Master of the Dukedom of *Suabia*, whence he drove out *Bertold*, Son-in-Law to *Rodolphus*, who defended that Country, when, having Advice that the Partisans of *Rodolphus* were again assembling together in *Saxony*, he march'd thither at the head of 60,000 Men, notwithstanding the Rigour of the Winter, and meeting the Rebels

A famous
Battle be-
tween the
two Rivalr.

N

near

HENRY
IV.
1079.
Henry
again ex-
communic-
ated.

1080

near *Flaterheim*, engaged them about the End of *January*, 1079, and put them to the rout. But as the Bishops, who had elected *Rodolphus*, bent their Mind incessantly upon crossing *Henry's* Success, they bethought themselves of soliciting the Pope to excommunicate him once more; and that Pontif, being but too well inclin'd to enter into their Sentiments, thunder'd out a second Sentence of Excommunication against him in *March* 1080, whereby he also depriv'd him of all Authority, and the Imperial Dignity; confirming at the same Time the Election of *Rodolphus*, and sending him a Crown with these Words:

Petra dedit Petro, Petrus Diadema Rodolpho.

THE Emperor, on the other hand, considering seriously that the Intrigues of *Rome* was the Source of all the Disorders and Misfortunes wherein Christendom was involv'd, bent all his Thoughts on Expedients to deliver it from this Oppression. With this View he assembled the Bishops of *Germany* at *Mentz*, to be inform'd by them, Whether the Pope had the Power to deprive an Emperor of his Crown? and, Whether the Emperor had not a Right, both in Reason and Justice, to depose the Pope, *Hildebrand*, and nominate another in his stead? Nineteen Bishops, who compos'd this Diet, having deliberated upon this Proposition, thought it proper likewise to ask the Opinion of other Prelates, and to call an Assembly at *Brixen* for that Purpose. Hereupon *Henry* appointed the Month of *June*, and thirty Bishops, both of *Germany* and *Italy*, appear'd at this National Council, where he, in Imitation of his Predecessors, perform'd the Office of President. Here 'twas unanimously concluded, That the Pope having no Power over the

the Emperor, he could not deprive him of the Empire; but that, on the contrary, the Emperor, having a Right to depose the Pope for lawful Reasons, might with Justice deprive *Gregory* of that Dignity, since he had render'd himself unworthy thereof, both by his ill Conduct, and the Outrages he had committed. Upon this Foundation these Prelates elected Cardinal *Wiberti*, whom others call *Guibert*, or *Gilbert*, Archbishop of *Ravenna*, a Man of Virtue and Merit, in the Room of *Hildebrand*, who took the Name of *Clement III*. They also beg'd the Emperor to prepare to march into *Italy*, and put this Decree in Execution; which he promis'd to do. But before he undertook this Expedition, he was oblig'd to gather all his Forces, to render his Rival's new Attempts, to re-establish his Affairs, fruitless: For *Rodolphus* had already levied a Body of Troops in *Saxony*. But *Henry*, that he might not give him Time to make any Progress, march'd with all Speed that Way, and the two Armies meeting near *Mersbourg* on the 8th of *October*, fought with great Courage, insomuch that *Rodolphus's* Men seem'd to have some Advantage; but they did not pursue it. For the News being spread that *Rodolphus*, (as was really true) had his right Hand cut off by *Godfrey* of *Bulloign*, Duke of *Lorraine*, who serv'd the true Emperor, (and seem'd, as it were, to be born for the Extirpation of Rebels) entirely discourag'd them. *Rodolphus*, finding himself very ill, ordering his Hand to be brought to him, spoke thus to the Princes and Officers who were present: *This is the Hand wherewith I took the Oath of Allegiance to Henry my Sovereign, which I have violated by Order of the Court of Rome, and at the Desire of some Bishops, to aspire by Perjury to an Honour not my due; and, having*

HENRY
IV.Henry's
good Sense.

utter'd these Words, with great Signs of Repentance, he expired. He was buried with great Pomp at *Mersbourg* in *Saxony*, and they even engrav'd a Crown, with the other Ensigns of Royalty, on a Brass Plate on his Tomb, on which the *Saxons*, apprehending that *Henry* might have some Resentment against them, would have taken away all these Marks of Honour; but the Emperor order'd them to be let alone; adding, that he wish'd all his Enemies were as magnificently interred, that the Empire and himself might breath a little, and recover their Force, which had been weaken'd by the Effusion of so much Blood.

1081.

HENRY being thus delivered from his Rival, left no Stone unturn'd to disperse entirely the Party of the confederate Rebels; which he effected in some Measure; and, having settled the Affairs of *Germany* in as good Order as possible, prepared for the Expedition he had promised to make into *Italy*, to establish *Clement* in *St. Peter's* See. He set out thither in the beginning of the Year 1081, attended by *Clement*, and march'd up to the Gates of *Rome* without meeting any Resistance; but he found more Difficulty in entering the City, for he was forced to attack it in Form, and the Siege lasted above two Years and a half. However, at last he gain'd his End in *Lent*, 1084, and as he took it by Storm, 'twas not without great Difficulty he saved it from Plunder; nevertheless he did secure it, in Consideration of a Sum of Money which the People offered, wherewith he oblig'd the Soldiers to be contented.

1084.

GREGORY, apprehending above all Things to fall into the Emperor's Hands, sav'd himself in the Castle of *St. Angelo*, which was very well fortify'd, and gave his Friends Time to come

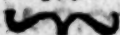
come to his Assistance, and, whilst he was defending himself there, the Emperor publish'd the Reasons that had induced him to put Cardinal *Wiberti*, or *Clement III.* in the Place of *Gregory*; and the Romans, having acquiesced with them, had him crown'd with all the usual Ceremonies in *St. Peter's Church*; which done, *Clement*, by way of Retaliation, crown'd and anointed the Emperor the *Easter-Day* following, in the Presence, and with the Applause, of the *Roman Senate* and *People*, who took an Oath of Allegiance to him.

HENRY
IV.

IN the mean Time, they still continued their Attacks upon the Castle of *St. Angelo*; but some Affairs calling the Emperor into *Lombardy*, it happen'd, that, during his Stay there, *Guicbard*, Duke of *Apulia*, coming to *Gregory's* Assistance, found means to deliver him from the Castle, and have him conducted to *Salerno*, where he ended his Days the Year following. But the Troubles that arose in *Germany* did not permit *Henry* to taste the Joy he might have hop'd from the happy Success of his *Italian Expedition*.

THE Saxons, who were naturally Seditious, and always stirr'd up by the Emperor's Enemies, taking Advantage of his Absence, had again began to embroil Affairs, they had united Interests and Councils with the other Rebel-Princes, and having all, by *Gregory's* Instigation, elected Count *Herman* of *Luxembourg* King of the Romans the Year before, and crown'd him at *Mentz* by the Archbishop *Sigefrid*, they made Incursions into *Franconia*, and waged War with such as had assisted the Emperor against them. This oblig'd *Henry* to leave *Italy*, and hasten his return into *Germany*; where, being inform'd that several Things, contrary to his Interest, had pass'd in some private Assemblies of Prelates,

New In-
surrections
in Saxony
against the
Emperor,
with the
Election of
a King of
the Ro-
mans.

HENRY
IV.

lates, in Consequence of the Excommunications thunder'd against him and his Adherents by *Gregory*, he appointed a general Assembly at *Mentz*, in *February*, 1088, where, by the common Consent of the *Italian*, *German*, and *French* Bishops and Prelates who assisted thereat, all *Gregory's* Acts were repealed, and those of the Emperor against *Gregory* approv'd and confirm'd. The Bishops, who had espous'd the Rebels Cause, were also depriv'd of their Benefices, as was Count *Herman* of the Title of King of the *Romans*, which had been conferr'd on him by the Rebels.

1086.

SOME Days after the breaking up of this Assembly, they receiv'd News that Pope *Gregory* died at *Salerno* the twenty fourth of *May*; and that, without making any Mention of *Clement III.*, they would have rais'd Cardinal *Didier*, Abbot of Mount *Cassin*, who was then at *Rome*, to the holy See; but that he was fled to his Abbey, which occasion'd the deferring his Election to the *Witsunday* following, 1086. In the mean while, the Emperor, being inform'd that *Herman*, tho' depos'd, us'd his utmost Efforts to maintain himself in his assumed Title, pursued, and obliged him to forsake all, and seek Refuge in *Saxony*; whereupon the Rebels elected *Egbert*, Marquis of *Thuringia*, King of the *Romans*, in his Place, who, like Count *Herman*, was forced to yield to the victorious Arms of the Emperor, and in the End had no better Fortune; for as *Herman*, two Years after his Deposition, was kill'd by a Stone which a Woman tumbled upon his Head from the Top of a Tower, as he was passing thro' a Town; so *Egbert*, after the Loss of a Battle against the Emperor in 1090, making his Escape to a Mill, was kill'd there by one

1089.

Chap. IX. of the EMPIRE.

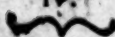
181

one of *Henry's* Friends, or, as others say, by his Guards. HENRY
IV.
1090.

WHILST the Emperor was thus employ'd in getting rid of his two Competitors, his other Enemies did not fail to create him new Disturbances in *Italy*, and took care that the Popes, who had succeeded *Gregory VII*, should nourish the same Hatred against him. Their Negotiations were of no great Consequence to the Emperor during the Pontificate of *Victor III*, who had enjoy'd the holy See but about ten Months after *Gregory*; but they work'd their desired Effect upon *Urban II*, Successor to *Victor*, he being well convinced, that his Election, having been made without the Emperor's Knowledge, as well as that of his Predecessor, was not agreeable to him. This Pope had also been excited against *Henry*, not only by *Matilda* Countess of *Tuscany*, who was again married above a Year to *Guelpho* Duke of *Bavaria*, but also by the *Normans*, and all taking Advantage of the Employment the Emperor found in *Germany*, had enticed away a good Part of *Italy* from their Obedience to him.

THE Emperor, having Advice of these secret Practices, resolved to pass over into *Italy* with all his Troops; and as soon as he had cross'd the *Alps*, re-took all the Cities on this side the *Po*; amongst the rest, *Mantua*, wherein his Forces enter'd on *Easter-Eve*, after a Siege of twelve Months. After this, he reduced almost all the rest of *Lombardy*, notwithstanding the Countess *Matilda* made a very vigorous Defence, not fearing in Person to oppose the Emperor incessantly at the Head of her Troops. The *Romans* seeing *Henry's* Progress, who always maintain'd the Anti-Pope *Clement*, took hold (in Order to oblige him,) of this Occasion, and of

1091.

HENRY
IV.

Urban's Absence, to recall *Clement* to *Rome*, where he remained some time; which forced *Urban* to renew his Excommunications against *Clement* and *Henry*.

1093.

1095,

IN the mean while, *Conrad*, the Emperor's eldest Son, being enrag'd at some sharp Words spoken to him by his Father, and likewise gain'd over by *Matilda* and the *Normans*, revolted against him; and having in his Rebellion carried over with him the City of *Milan*, and several other Towns in *Lombardy*, assum'd the Title of King of *Italy*. This was by the Consent of Pope *Urban*, Duke *Guelpho*, *Matilda*, and several other Dukes and Noblemen, and he was crown'd at *Milan* by *Anselm*, who was Archbishop thereof. Some time after he married the Daughter of *Roger* King of *Sicily*, and push'd his Revolt so far, that he enticed most part of the Cities and Noblemen from their Allegiance to the Emperor, who by this means was reduced to fortify himself in some strong Places, to get time to re-establish his Affairs. He thought he had found a favourable Opportunity during Pope *Urban's* Journey into *France*, where he held the famous Council of *Clermont* in *Auvergne*, which was opened during the Octave of *St. Martin*, wherein two considerable Things were transacted. The first was the Excommunication of King *Philip I.* of *France*, for having put away his lawful Consort, and married one of his Relations, nam'd *Bertrade*, who had left her Husband; and the second was, the Resolution of the *Croisade* for the Assistance of the Christians in the *Levant*, and the Recovery of the Holy Land. But this Absence of *Urban's*, and the Practices of *Clement*, who had remained in the mean while at *Rome*, with the Efforts of several Noblemen in
favour

favour of the Emperor, were of no great Service to him, *Conrad's* Party, being strengthen'd by the Alliance of the King of *Sicily*, and *Urban's* Return, becoming so powerful a little after, that *Henry*, giving over all hopes of reducing him by Force, or otherwise, resolv'd to return into *Germany*.

HENRY
IV.

1097.

THE Emperor had not been long there before he discovered how much he resented his Son's undutiful Behaviour; for he no sooner arriv'd at *Cologn*, where he had assembled divers Princes of the Empire, but he caus'd *Conrad* to be put to the Ban of the Empire, and his second Son *Henry* declared King of the *Romans*, having him crown'd at *Aix la Chapelle*, after taking an Oath, that, during his Life, he should not intermeddle with the Government of the Empire without his Allowance. Then he assign'd him the City of *Ratisbon* for the Residence of his Court; and that Prince going thither, and living peaceably according to his Father's Intention, it seem'd as if Things, being thus settled, would have confirm'd the Peace they had begun to enjoy in *Germany*, since the Death of the Head Rebels, who had ended their Lives during his last Expedition to *Italy*. People were the more perswaded of this, in that the *Saxons* and *Bavarians* were also agreed with the Emperor; and thus they might have promis'd themselves a firm and lasting Peace on all Sides. But his application to the rendering all Things more stable, and the re-establishing good Order and Justice in divers Places, whence the Licence of former Wars had banish'd them, instead of turning to his Glory, was, by a very fantastical effect of Fortune, the Cause of the Confusion whereinto he fell in the last Years of his Life. He had re-

1099.

solved

HENRY
IV.

1100.

olved to correct some considerable Disorders that had happen'd at *Mentz*, at which the Archbishop, who was concerned therein, took alarm; and though the Emperor, knowing he cou'd not punish the Accomplices without comprehending him in the Number, had put a stop to the Proceedings, in consideration of him; the Archbishop, instead of acknowledging *Henry's* Discretion and Goodness herein, fled to *Thuringia*, where he no sooner arriv'd but he declar'd for the contrary Party, which had begun to stir at the Sollicitation of *Gebehard*, Bishop of *Constance*, to whom Pope *Paschal II.*, who had succeeded *Urban* ever since the *August* before, had sent the Commission of Legate of *Germany*, to maintain the Pretensions of the Court of *Rome*, with regard to the Church, against those of *Henry*. What chagreen'd the Emperor most, was the continual Attempts of the Church of *Rome*, with respect to the Election of Popes, three of whom had been made successively without his Allowance; this it was that rendered him likewise so obstinate; for, after *Clement's* Death, which happened the Year following, he caus'd three other Anti-Popes, *Albert*, *Theodorick* and *Magniulphus*, to be elected, who succeeded to one another, to preserve in some measure the Rights of the Empire. But this only serv'd to confirm the true Popes in the Power they had usurp'd; for two of these Anti-Popes were confined in Cloisters, and the third died suddenly, leaving *Paschal II.* at last peaceable Possessor of the Holy See.

1102.

NEVERTHELESS this Pontif, not to degenerate from the Vigour of his Predecessors, having cited the Emperor in a Council held at *Rome*, in the beginning of *Lent*, *A. D.* 1102, and he neither appearing, nor sending Ambassadors, excom-

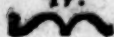
excommunicated him again, on account of the Intrusion of the Anti-Popes; confirming at the same time all that had been done against him by *Gregory* and *Urban*, and accordingly he immediately felt the Effect of this Thunder: For, by the Insurrection of the Party that oppos'd him in *Germany*, they engaged his own Son in the Revolt, wherein he plunged himself so deeply, that, forgetting both his Duty and his Oath, he made himself Head of the Party.

His Pretence was, that most part of *Germany* refusing any longer to acknowledge the Emperor, on account of the last Excommunication issued against him, he was obliged to take the Reins of the Empire, in order to obviate all the Disorders that this Division might produce, and prevent the dismembring of this great Body, which might ensue in time. He even palliated this Perfidy under Colour of a Zeal for Religion, and respect for the Pope; pretending to believe those Laws preferable to the Law of Nature, and consequently refusing to acknowledge *Henry* for his Father, till he should be absolved from his Excommunication. Thus the Father's Remonstrances had no Influence upon the Son's Mind, and Things proceeded so far, that they took Arms against each other, and met at *Ratisbon*; but the two Armies only skirmish'd; for the Emperor finding himself too weak, judg'd it not proper to hazard a Battle, and retired towards the Duke of *Bohemia*. In the mean while King *Henry* bent his Thoughts wholly upon seizing the City of *Spires*, where his Father's Treasure was reposit'd; and accordingly march'd with his Army from *Wirtzburg* to *Spires*, whereof he made himself Master, as well as of its Riches.

THE

HENRY
IV.

1105.

HENRY
IV.

1106.

*The Son's
pretended
Repentance
reduces the
Father to
the last Ex-
tremity.*

THE young Prince, being puff'd up with this Success, and resolving to take advantage of his favourable Fortune, conven'd an Assembly of the Princes to meet at *Mentz*, on the first Day of the Year 1106, where the Emperor prepared to come also, to which end he rais'd a powerful Army, with intent to dispute his Right publicly with his Son. But this impious Rebel oppos'd Stratagem to Force, or, to speak more properly, knowing his Father to be extremely tender of him, took him by his blind Side, and, seeing that the Safety of his Affairs depended upon the preventing him, resolved, by the advice of his Friends, to meet him at *Coblentz*, and there pretend Repentance. On his first arrival there, he went and threw himself at his Feet, asking Pardon for his Crime, and excusing his suffering himself to be over-reach'd by evil Councils. Hereupon the Emperor, relenting, embraced him, and forgave all that was pass'd; after which first Step, the Prince, pushing home his Deceit, advis'd him to go to *Mentz* with a small Retinue, that he might not give Umbrage to the Princes of the Empire; which Council he only gave to disperse his Father's Army, and send home a Number of Persons of Quality who had follow'd him: The Emperor, not mistrusting his Son, followed this Advice, and contented himself with three hundred Horse for them both.

THESE two Princes, and the whole Court, made great Rejoycings all that Night, and, Things being well concerted, set out from *Coblentz*, and arrived at *Bingen* the Friday before *Christmas*; where the Prince again represented to the Emperor, that, being excommunicated, it was to be fear'd, if he enter'd *Mentz*, the Archbishop would not release him again; where-

wherefore it would be safer to spend the Holy-days at *Bingen* whilst he would go to *Mentz*, open the Diet, negotiate his Reconciliation with the Princes, and accommodate every Thing, that he might come thither in Safety. The Emperor again followed this Advice, whereupon the Prince confined him in a Chamber, where he left him Prisoner with three Persons only, and departed, without having any regard either to the Respect he ow'd him, the Word he had given, or the Oath he had taken.

HENRY
IV.

To put the finishing Stroke to this Intrigue, the Pope's Legates, at the beginning of the Diet, renewed the Excommunications heretofore thundered against the Emperor; and the Assembly at the same time, with one Consent, deprived him of the Imperial Dignity, investing *Henry* his Son therewith, and proclaiming him Emperor. This done, the Archbishops of *Mentz* and *Cologne*, with the Bishop of *Worms*, were sent to *Bingen*, to inform the Father of this News, and demand of him the Crown, and other Imperial Ornaments.

The Em-
peror de-
pos'd.

HEREUPON the Emperor refus'd to deliver them, maintaining that he had been condemn'd unjustly and unheard; but all his Reasons did not avail, and the Deputies, insisting upon their Commission to make him deliver them, and even threatening to use means that would not be agreeable to him; the Emperor withdrew into his Chamber, cloathed himself in his Robes and Ornaments, returned to them, and, sitting down in his Chair, spoke to this Effect: *Gentlemen, These are the Ensigns of Royalty wherewith God, and the Princes of the Empire, unanimously invested me; I ought to believe that you will not attempt to strip me of them; nevertheless*
if

HENRY
IV.

if you neither fear the Anger nor Punishment of GOD, nor the eternal Infamy of this Injury, you may lay your Hands upon your Sovereign, we are not in a Condition to defend our selves against Violence.

ALTHO' the Emperor's Discourse touch'd the Deputies very sensibly, they nevertheless approach'd that Prince, and, taking away the Crown, drew him from his Chair, and stripp'd him of all his Royal Robes, imagining that the Pope had sufficiently discharged them of their Oath of Allegiance: The Emperor, during this Outrage, addresting himself to God in these Words:

Almighty GOD, the GOD of Vengeance! Thou canst, if Thou pleasest, avenge this Outrage. I own I have sinned, and deserved this Disgrace by the Debaucheries of my Youth; but, Great and Just GOD! Thou knowest very well how to punish the Crime they commit against my Person, and their Violation of their Oath of Allegiance!

THIS done, the Ambassadors return'd to Mentz, and delivered the Ornaments into the Hands of the new Emperor and the Princes; whereupon the Success of this Assembly having been so favourable to young Henry, there remained nothing more but to excuse the Violence that had been exercis'd against his Father, in having caus'd him to be condemn'd unheard. To clear himself of this Imputation, he be-thought himself of assembling his greatest Confidants among the Princes at Ingelheim, in order to oblige the Emperor himself to abandon the Empire voluntarily. There 'twas (as 'tis reported) that this Prince, looking on himself as a dead Man, ask'd pardon of all whom he might have offended; after which he fell at the Feet of the Pope's Legate, who was with them,

them, and beg'd him to absolve him of his Excommunication. But the Legate refus'd it, saying, that none but the Pope could give him that Absolution; which shewed plainly that was not the Reason of his being depos'd; accordingly they left him in Confinement alone in this City, lest he should go and demand it of the Pope.


NEVER was Patience put to a severer Tryal than his; for young *Henry's* Impiety went so far that, after taking from him his Treasures at *Spires* the former Year, and stripping him of all he had in the World, he reduced him to such a degree of Poverty, that he often wanted Bread. Thus, from a very potent Prince, he became the most miserable of all Mankind: An astonishing Example of the Inconstancy of Fortune, and the Instability of worldly Greatness. This unhappy Prince, being in this Necessity, conjured *Gerald*, whom he had made Bishop of *Spires*, to give him a Canonicate, to enable him to subsist, as being Scholar sufficient to perform that Office, and believing himself entitled to demand that Benefice, as his Ancestors and himself had founded and built the Cathedral Church. This the Bishop refus'd him, on Pretence that he durst not do it without the Pope's Leave; whereupon the Emperor, surpriz'd at this Denial, could not refrain Tears, but said sighing to those about him: *Dear Friends! at least have you Compassion on me; for the Hand of the LORD has touch'd me, and lies very heavy upon me.*

HENRY
IV.

The Incredible Poverty of the Emperor, who is despis'd by all the World.

ONE cannot too much admire the surprising Effects of GOD's Providence in this Prince, who seems to have been reserv'd for a Lesson to Sovereigns. For, besides an infinite Number of Dangers he had undergone in War, his Enemies

HENRY
IV.


 mics at *Rome* in 1084, after the deposing of *Gregory VII*, had recourse to all manner of Stratagems to deprive him of Life. One, amongst the rest, had placed a large Stone upon a Beam in the great Church, just over the Spot where the Emperor us'd to kneel at his Devotions, with a Resolution to let it fall upon that Prince's Head; but the very Moment that he was going to execute this execrable Design, he came to the Ground himself with the Stone, and was kill'd before *Henry's* Face, without doing him any Hurt. The Body of this Wretch was fasten'd to a Wheel, and drawn for three Days thro' the Streets of *Rome*; nevertheless the Emperor, touch'd with the Misfortune of the Reprobate, and out of a Principle of Charity, order'd his Body to be buried.

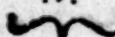
HENRY then having experienced all the Inhumanity in the Power of Fortune, even to the seeing himself despoil'd of all, made a Prisoner, abandon'd by his Sons, Relations, and those he had rais'd and enrich'd in *Germany*, 'tis evident that all these Disgraces were more than sufficient to have made him sink under them. Nevertheless he was not discouraged, and at the very Time when he was thought overwhelm'd and crush'd, recovered himself, and shewed what he was. In short, escaping from his Guards, he went down the *Rhine* to *Cologne*, where he was receiv'd and acknowledged for lawful Emperor; thence he pass'd on to the *Low Countries*; where his Friends had rais'd a good Body of Forces to re-establish him; and, stopping at *Liege*, wrote Circular Letters to all the Christian Princes, to induce them to interest themselves in his Disgrace: He even wrote to the Pope, to let him know that he was ready to be reconciled to him, provided it could be done without

without any Prejudice to his Crown; which ^{HENRY IV.} shews, that as much as he was humbled, his Soul was incapable of an unworthy Action; but at last Providence, having destin'd him to die as unfortunate as he had liv'd, took him out of the World at *Liege*, on the seventh of *August* 1106 at the Age of fifty six Years. The *Liegeois* made him a magnificent Funeral, and buried him in the Cathedral; but young *Henry*, who pursued his Father every where, coming before the City, with a Resolution to be revenged of them for daring to give him Refuge, they were obliged, in order to make their Peace, to dig up the Emperor's Body by his Sons Command, and deliver it to him. This done, it was carried to *Spires*, where it remain'd five Years without Sepulture, on account of his Excommunication. Thus he underwent his wretched Destiny, and his Son's Inhumanity even after Death.

NEVERTHELESS, it must be own'd, that this Prince was endued with very great Qualities; or, to use the common Phrase, that he was the greatest Prince the Earth ever bore. He had hardly attain'd the Age of twelve Years, but he fought in Person against the *Hungarians*; and had likewise very bloody Wars, during his Reign, with the *Saxons*, his Subjects; and both against them, and his other Enemies, had himself commanded his Armies in sixty two Battles, in almost all which he came off with Victory; whence it has been said, that in this Point he had not only exceeded *Julius Caesar*, and all the other Emperors, but even all the Monarchs in the Universe. He was very charitable, and sensible of the Misery of the Necessitous, having usually the Blind, the Lame, the Wounded and the Sick at his Table, and making them

O

lie

HENRY
IV.

lie in his own Chamber, that he might himself take care of them. He endeavour'd to procure all the Ease in his Power for his Subjects, even to the giving them often Part of his Revenues. Nor was he less Praise-worthy for his Wisdom and Capacity in the Administration of Affairs, having long used the Councils of the Princes and States of the Empire, hearing their Advice with Leisure and Attention, and taking such Resolutions as were prudent, advantageous to the State, and conformable to Equity.

His Personal Qualities.

His fine Shape was agreeable to the Person of a Hero, and answerable to the Greatness of his Soul: He was eloquent, and had a very lively Wit: And as, with all these excellent Qualities, he had rendered himself very illustrious by his Actions, so he was at the same Time an Example of Fortitude in Adversity, which generally oppresses the Brave. One cannot propose a better Pattern for Princes to follow, to teach them to sustain Disgraces with Courage, and not be puffed up with a Grandeur which may sometimes degenerate into Beggary. What is not to be imitated in this Picture, is, that this Prince in his Misfortunes, having made it a Maxim to gain Time, as the sovereign Remedy of the unfortunate, had not sometimes been careful enough to use Means suitable to his Dignity, that he might the better put in Practice the Dictates of Prudence that had often been so advantageous to him. But he thought, that, provided he had Success, the Glory of the End effaced the Shame of the Means us'd to attain it, which is a great Error.



CHAP.



C H A P. X.

H E N R Y the Fifth.



ENRY V, call'd the *Young*, born
A. D. 1081, having got Possession
of the Imperial Dignity, after the
Manner before mentioned, pre-
tended, at the beginning of his
Reign, to favour the Ecclesiastical

HENRY
V.
1106.
Henry V,
profits by
his Father's
Misfortunes

State in all Things, with a View both to please the Court of *Rome*, and profit by his Father's Misfortunes; neglecting, to this Intent, the Rights and Authority of the Empire, which his Father during his Reign had maintained at the Peril of his Honour, Possessions, and Life. But after he had acted this Part sufficiently, and considered that the Princes of the *Roman* Party had only made use of him for their own Ends, and that their Designs and Intentions were quite different from what they had pretended, he resolv'd to hazard all to maintain the Authority of the Empire, in its Honour and Dignity, as his Predecessors had left it; in a Word, he resolv'd to walk in his Father's Steps, and follow the same Path he had before trod.

He apply'd himself then to take Example by the Conduct of that generous Emperor; but whatever Care he could take, or how prudently soever he managed, all his Actions were continually attended with the Curse he had drawn on himself by his Impiety to his Father. GOD himself from his first Election had shown a ter-

HENRY V. *He is struck with Thunder.* ribble Mark of his Justice and Anger on him; the Thing happen'd thus : Being at the Diet at Goslar A. D. 1103, there arose a dreadful Thunder, which, piercing thro' his Chamber, hurt his right Leg, broke the point of his Sword by his Side, and shiver'd his Buckler in Pieces. So signal a Warning did not hinder his giving himself up to Avarice, and placing more Confidence in earthly, than heavenly Treasures, whence it happen'd at last, that, to amass immense Riches, he made no Scruple of loading his People with Taxes.

He is subjected to Avarice.

The Pope in a Council, deprives the Emperor of Investitures, and throws himself under the King of France's Protection.

Two Months after the Emperor Henry IV his Death, Pope Paschal II call'd a Council at Guastala, a City on the Po, where he renew'd the Decrees of his Predecessors against the Investitures, which News mortify'd the Emperor very sensibly. However, not thinking it proper as yet to oppose the Attempts of the Court of Rome openly, he invited the Pope into Germany, to compose their Differences amicably. But Paschal, being appriz'd that the Emperor was not satisfy'd with his Conduct, and that he was entirely altered from that very tractable Temper he had before shewn to the Popes, dreading a Prince so very haughty and rough, durst not accept of the Offer; but thought it his best way on this Occasion to go into France, and demand King Philip's Protection. He travell'd thither immediately, and was very well received at St. Dennis by the King, and Lewis his Son, who first paid him their Respects by a Bow to the Ground.

The Pope grants a Conference to the Emperor at Châlons.

Tho' this Step of the Pope's disturb'd the Emperor very much, he took no notice of it, because that, having already but too much Employment in the Empire, he would not embroil himself with France. Wherefore as he

was

Chap. X. of the EMPIRE.

129

was very politick, by the Mediation of the Most Christian King, desir'd the Pope that he might send Ambassadors to him, to regulate Affairs in a Conference; which was accordingly appointed at *Chalons* in *Champagne*, whether *Adelbert*, the Emperor's Chancellor, and Chief of the Embassy, came with his Colleagues; but the Chancellor would not assist therein, because the Pope was there in Person. He thought it beneath his Master's Dignity to give place to the Pope, whom he still esteem'd as Vassal to the Empire; however, the Pope being not willing to consent to the Investitures, and the Ambassadors having Orders not to recede in the least from thence, the Assembly broke up abruptly, without deciding any Thing.

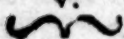
HENRY
V.

1107.

AFTER this Rupture the Pope went to *Troyes*, to hold a Council, as the Emperor did a Diet at *Mentz*; 'twas in the Year 1107. The German Bishops were for the Investitures, and the Fathers of the Council for maintaining the Decrees of the Former Popes, saving to the Emperor the Right of coming to *Rome* within a Year, to represent his Reasons to the contrary.

THE Emperor, not being content with this last Decision, did not think it proper, in Defence to it, to neglect his other Affairs, having a Design upon the Conquest of *Silesia*. That Duchy belong'd then to the Crown of *Poland*, and being desirous to execute his intended Purpose, to subdue and re-unite it to the Empire, he march'd with as many Troops as he thought necessary to make himself Master thereof, where at first he took some Cities, and advancing into the Country, laid Siege to *Glogau*; but the Inhabitants thereof defending themselves with great Courage, he was oblig'd to retire. He next attack'd *Bresslau*; but *Boleslaus* Duke of *Poland*,

Wages War
with the
Poles, and
is defeated.
1109.

HENRY
V.

land, who had usurp'd the Title of King without the Emperor's Consent, came to its Relief, and some Engagements and Skirmishes pass'd, in all which little Actions the *Poles* had almost always the Advantage. But in the last, which was a general Battle, the Emperor got the Victory, which obliged the King of *Poland* to send an Ambassador nam'd *Scorbius* to declare that he was dispos'd to conclude a Peace.

THE Emperor, who was then at *Prague*, propos'd such Conditions to the Ambassador, that he soon judg'd there was no Treaty to be hop'd for, unless *Poland* would remain subject and tributary to the Empire; and *Henry*, to shew him that he was almost assur'd of the Conquest of *Silesia*, carry'd him to see his Exchequer, and the Riches he had in his Treasury, to reduce it soon to his Obedience. Hereupon *Scorbius*, taking immediately a Ring from his Finger, and throwing it into the Treasury, said in Raillery, but in a very respectful Manner: *I will encrease it with this Ring*; to which the Emperor, answering in the *German* Tongue, *Hab-dank, I thank you*; the *Poles* have since honour'd the Family of *Scorbius*, with the Name of *Hab-dank*.

THE King of *Poland* being inform'd of the hard Conditions the Emperor would impose on him, resolv'd to try by Arms if Silver would carry the Day from Courage; and the two Armies coming to an Engagement in open Field, a League from *Breslau*, fought with great Bravery and Obstinacy from Morning to Night, but at last the *Poles* were victorious, and the *Germans*, losing abundance of Men, were forc'd to quit the Field of Battle.

THIS bad Success made the Emperor desist from his Attempt upon *Silesia*, and apply himself to

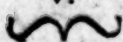
to the greatest Affair of his whole Reign. This was his Difference with Pope *Paschal*, who, as has been already observ'd, confirmed the Decrees of his Predecessors *Gregory VII*, *Victor III*, and *Urban II*, in the Council of *Troyes*, importing that it belonged to the Popes, and not the Emperors or Kings, to confer the Investitures of Bishopricks, Abbeys, and other Benefices.

HENRY V.
The Sequel of the Difference between the Emperor and the Pope about Investitures.

THE Emperor, looking upon these Decrees as farther and farther Incroachments upon the Rights of the Empire, conven'd a Diet at *Ratisbon*, where the Princes and States, on mature Deliberation, granted what he desir'd, with the necessary Assistance for maintaining the Rights of his Crown in *Italy*. Hereupon this Prince passed the *Alps* that same Year with 30,000 Horse, and near 50,000 Infantry, which he made march by different Ways. Besides these Forces, he had order'd all the Quality and Gentry in *Germany* to follow him, especially such as were well acquainted with the Rights of the Empire, with a Resolution to defend them either by Negotiation, or Arms.

The Emperor's Expedition into Italy.

THE Emperor being advanced as far as *Tuscany*, some Cities would have oppos'd his Passage, which he easily took, and spent his *Christmas* at *Florence*. He had before sent a famous Embassy to *Paschal*, with many Protestations of Respect to the Holy See; nevertheless it did not hinder the Pope's providing for his Defence, and causing all the Troops he could raise to file off into *Rome*; however, he likewise dispatch'd his Legates to meet him. After which first Civilities, 'twas thought proper to come to a better explanation before the Emperor's entrance into that City. Several Assemblies were held on this Account at *Sutry*,

HENRY
V.

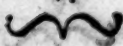
where some Articles of Agreement were propos'd, and the Treaty was sign'd by the Commissioners on both Sides, to the Satisfaction of the Emperor, to whom they had granted all he demanded, and even more, whereof he acquainted the Princes of the Empire with much Joy. But the Pope complied herewith only to amuse him, doing at the same time all in his Power to sow Division between the Ecclesiastick and Secular Princes of the Empire.

1111.
12 February

IN effect, the Day appointed for his solemn Entry into *Rome*, which was also to be that of his Coronation, as had been agreed, one might see the beginning of the Tragedy prepared for him. For if the Imperialists stirr'd never so little from their Ranks, they were plunder'd, abus'd and imprison'd; and though these Proceedings offended the Emperor very sensibly, he dissembled in his turn, and continued his Cavalcade. Besides, before they proceeded to his Coronation, the Treaty that had been made was read in presence of the Princes of the Empire, and the *Italian* Bishops and Prelates; which the *Italian* Bishops oppos'd formally, as the Pope well knew they would, and this Dispute lasted till Night: Hereupon the Emperor, seeing they impos'd on him, order'd the Pontif to be seiz'd on, for having violated his Word and Oath. The Soldiers, who were at the Doors, hearing this Order, enter'd tumultuously into the Church, and, thinking it was the intention of the Emperor and Princes of the Empire, abus'd the Cardinals and Bishops; but most part of the latter made their escape as well as they could; and this 'twas that increased the Disturbance. For some of them complaining, and giving the Alarm to the Consul, and Captains of the Quarters in the City, the Officers put the Soldiers

diers and Citizens under Arms all Night, in which posture they remained till Morning. Then nothing was to be seen but Skirmishes; and the Emperor, going to the assistance of his Men, fought very bravely, exposing his Person but too much, and hazarding his Life; and, to say all in one word, the Slaughter, which lasted till Night, was so great, and so obstinate, especially on the *Romans* side, that the Waters of the *Tiber* were died with the Blood spilt. Some Cardinals, several Bishops, and some principal Citizens, were taken Prisoners, and the Emperor beating down the City Walls in divers Places, marched out three Days after. Then encamping in the open Field near the City, he kept the Pope and the other Prisoners very safe during the whole *Lent* and *Easter* Holidays, but caus'd his Holiness always to be served with much respect.

HENRY
V.



DURING this time a great many Negotiations and Proposals were made for their liberty, and to re-establish Peace; the Cardinals, Bishops, and Prelates in particular, solicited the Pope to give up the Right of Investiture to the Emperor, and crown him, in order to obtain all their Liberties. But *Paschal* was in no wise disposed to renounce the Advantages and Rights which (as he said) his Predecessors had lawfully acquired for the Holy See, and resolved to support them at the hazard of his Life.

*The Pope's
Resolution
to maintain
his Rights.*

THE Emperor, hearing with Grief of the Pope's Obstinacy, ordered them immediately to behead the rest of the Prisoners in *Paschal's* presence; and the Execution was upon the point of being perform'd, when his Holiness, mov'd with Compassion for the Prisoners, promis'd to give the Emperor an entire satisfaction: Thus the Agreement that had been made, and after-

*The A.
greement
made.*

wards

HENRY
V.

wards broken, was renewed and ratify'd the 11th of *April* following, by the Pope and Emperor.

By this Treaty it was resolved, that his Holiness should no more disturb the Emperor on account of Investitures; that the Emperor might invest with the Crosier and Ring such as were canonically chosen by his Consent, and that they should be afterwards instituted by those whose Office it was; but that no one should be instituted before he had taken his Investiture: That the Archbishops and Bishops might, without difficulty or scruple, consecrate such as had been invested in that manner by the Emperor: And, in fine, that the Pope should never excommunicate the Emperor, nor derogate from all the Conditions of the Treaty, on any Pretext whatsoever: To this his Holiness swore, with sixteen Cardinals. The Emperor, on the other hand, promis'd to restore to the Holy See what had been taken from it, and, saving the Honour of the Empire, to render that Obedience to the Pope which his Predecessors the Christian Emperors had paid to the *Roman* Pontifs; to which he swore jointly with his Chancellor, and eight Princes of the Empire. Agreeably to this Treaty the Bull for Investitures was drawn up, and 'twas inserted therein, that the Pope had given them up for two Reasons; the one was, in consideration of the former Emperor's having enriched and endowed the Church by their own Beneficence; the other, because there was generally too much Strife and Disturbance in the Elections; after which the Pope, and other Prisoners, enter'd the City in great Pomp. The Emperor came thither also, and was crown'd the first *Sunday* after *Easter*, at which Ceremony his Holiness took

took one part of the consecrated Host, and gave the other to *Henry*, in Testimony of their perfect Reconciliation, and as a Pledge for both, of the Sincerity wherewith they had promis'd to execute the Treaty. After this the Emperor caus'd another Bull to be given him to the same Purport with that already drawn up about Investitures, lest the Pope should think fit to protest against the former as null, in that it was given during his Confinement.

HENRY
V.

THIS Prince, in consideration of this Reconciliation, confirmed the Privileges of the *Romans*, and, more out of Policy than Liberality, made great Presents in Money and other Things of value, particularly to the Ecclesiasticks; after which he return'd to *Germany*, being attended by the Pope, and divers Cardinals and Prelates, as far as the *Alps*.

THE first Thing he did after his arrival into *Germany*, was to make a magnificent Funeral for the Body of the Emperor *Henry IV.* his Father, which had all this while been deposited at *Spire*, and had remain'd without Sepulture, only because that good Prince had maintain'd the Right of Investitures, which the Pope had just declared lawful. 'Tis true, the Sequel has shewn, that the Court of *Rome* had only acted thus to make (as one may say) a Virtue of Necessity. However, the Pope kept outwardly the appearances of Sincerity; but nevertheless his Legates, and, amongst the rest, the Archbishop of *Vienne* in *Dauphiny*, excommunicated him in the National Councils: Even most part of the Ecclesiastical Princes of the Empire would neither acknowledge nor receive the Pope's Bull concerning the Investiture of Benefices, and *Albert* or *Adelbert*, whom the Emperor of his Chancellour had made Archbishop

The Em-
peror buries
his Father
Henry IV.

The Ec-
clesiasticks
of Germany
dispute the
Pope's
Grant to
the Empe-
ror.

HENRY
V.

1112.

bishop of *Mentz*, being incited thereunto by the Legates (who endeavoured every where to arm the Bishops against the Emperor, as against an excommunicated Person) managed Matters so in the Diets that were held afterwards, that they declared the Pope had a Right to revoke this Bull in a Council.

The Pope in Council revokes the Grant made to the Emperor of Investitures.

HIS Holiness opening the *Lateran* Council on the 28th of *March*, 1112, they, on his refusal, as thinking himself bound by his Oath, ordered the Bull concerning Investitures to be burned, and excommunicated the Emperor. Besides, the Archbishops, Bishops, Prelates and Chapter, seeing themselves thus supported by the Court of *Rome*, resolved to maintain themselves in their Possession of the Right of presenting to their vacant Sees by Election, without the Emperor's Intervention; and thus every thing broke out again into Dissension and Disturbance.

The Emperor goes a second Time to Rome.

1115.

HEREUPON Pope *Paschal* resuming Courage, and seeking Occasion in these Divisions to mortify and be revenged of the Emperor, a favourable one soon offered. The Countess of *Matilda* dying the 24th of *July*, 1115, *Henry*, as her nearest Relation, resolved to march into *Italy*, there to receive that rich Succession, notwithstanding her having given away *Liguria* and *Tuscany* to the Church in 1077, under the Pontificate of *Gregory VII*, (reserving only the Revenues thereof for her self) and her Confirmation of it in 1102; for he pretended, that as these States were immediately dependent on the Empire, she could not dispose of them without his Consent.

1116.

ON his arrival in *Lombardy* the Year following, whilst he was reducing some Places belonging to the Dominions of this Princess, he sent

sent Ambassadors to the Pope to desire him to revoke the Sentences of Excommunication issued against him, as being contrary to the Treaty made between them; but the Pope gave no Ear to this Embassy. On the contrary, that same Year he call'd a Council at Rome, where his Treaty with the Emperor was again condemned, and not only the Decrees of his Predecessors were confirmed, but even the national Councils by which he had been excommunicated. Thus the Pope reveng'd himself without forfeiting his Word; having promis'd (as he said) not to excommunicate the Emperor, but not that he would not cause him to be excommunicated by others; as if confirming the Excommunication were not the same thing.

HENRY V.

The Pope confirms the Revocation of Investitures in a Council.

THE Emperor being exasperated at the Pope's Procedure, advanced towards Rome, to destroy by his Presence the Measures taken against him, and his Interests; but his Holiness, who knew him by his own Experience, retired into *Apulia*, not thinking it proper to wait his coming. Hereupon Henry continuing his March, made himself Master of some Cities and Castles that were for the contrary Party, and, in order to defend himself, and engage more and more in his Interests those who were for him, managed them so dextrously, especially *Ptolemy* Count of *Tusculum*, who was their Head, that he brought the *Roman* People to decree him a Triumph. In effect, he was received in *Rome* with an extraordinary Retinue, and great Magnificence; and not thinking his Coronation valid, as being perform'd by a Person who retracted all he had done, he thought proper to be crown'd a second time. For this Ceremony he chose *Maurice Bardin*, a

The Pope leaves Rome on the Emperor's approach.

Limosin,

HENRY
V.

The Em-
peror
crown'd by
the Arch-
bishop of
Prague.

1117.
Death of
Paschal
and crea-
tion of
Gelafius.

1118.

Limofn by Nation, Archbishop of *Prague*, a Prelate who came to embrace his Party, to incense the Pope, with whom he was dissatisfy'd; accordingly he was crown'd some Days after in *St. Peter's Church* by this Archbishop.

THE Emperor being withdrawn into *Tuscany* on account of the Heats, Pope *Paschal* return'd without Noise to *Rome*, to try in this Juncture to re-establish his Authority there; but fell Sick and died at the end of two Days, about the 15th of *January*. Three Days after his decease, they elected Cardinal *Cajetan* under the Name of *Gelafius II*, without the Emperor's Knowledge, though he was then in *Italy*, which incens'd him so much, that he advanced by long Marches to surprize the Pope. But he, being appriz'd of his coming, had time enough to retire; however, he narrowly escaped falling into *Henry's* Hands, for they even shot at him as he went down the *Tiber* to *Cajeta*.

The Em-
peror cre-
ates the
Archbishop
of Prague
Pope.

THE Emperor, in revenge, declared the Election of *Gelafius* null, as being made without his Consent, and against his Will, and put in his stead *Burdin*, who had crown'd him, and took the Name of *Gregory VIII*. This new Pontif took off the Emperor's Excommunication, and confirmed to him the Right of Investitures: But this, in the end, produced no other Effect, than to give an Opportunity to *Gelafius* to excommunicate them both, I mean the Anti-Pope and the Emperor.

The Em-
peror re-
turns into
Germany.

THIS was all the Fruit of his Expedition; for seeing that the Princes of *Apulia* took the true Pope into their Protection, and not having Troops sufficient to oppose them, he thought it best to return to *Germany*, leaving *Gregory VIII* in *Rome*, under the guard of his Creatures.

POPE

POPE *Gelasius* having in vain endeavoured to establish himself in *Rome*, whither he return'd *incognito*, was very fortunate to escape once more; whereupon he took a Resolution to retire into *France*, where he died the twenty ninth of *January* 1119, in the Abbey of *Clugny*. The Cardinals who were with him rais'd the Cardinal Archbishop of *Vienne* to the Pontificate, who was Legate of the holy See in *France*, and one of those who excommunicated the Emperor in the National Councils under *Paschal*, being a *Frenchman*, of the House of the Princes of *Burgundy*, and related to the Emperor himself; he assumed the Name of *Calistus II*. This Pontif, after his Election, call'd a Council at *Rheims*, whereat the Emperor resolv'd also to be present, in that *Germany* was weary of this long Affair of the Investitures, which had lasted and disturb'd her almost fifty Years; so that the States of the Empire assembling between *Mentz* and *Worms*, had express'd their Chagrin, and the little Satisfaction they took in this long Dispute.

HENRY
V.Pope Gela-
sius's Death.
1119.Election of
Calistus II,
and his Ne-
gotiations
for the Re-
union of the
Church and
Empire.

THIS Affair had been already almost concluded by the Ambassadors, which the Pope and Emperor had reciprocally sent to each other, the latter having receded so far as to be content with conferring the Investitures in the same manner as the King of *France*, that is to say, without giving Crozier or Ring; and the Pope, for his Part, promising to annul the Excommunications issued against the Emperor: There was even a Writing sign'd on each side, and a Day was appointed for a Conference between them at *Mouzon*.

ACCORDINGLY the Emperor came thither at the Head of an Army of thirty thousand Men; but the Pope, taking Umbrage at those Forces,

HENRY V. Forces, had stop'd by the Way, and kept himself safe in a Castle, whence he sent his Legates to know if *Henry* persisted in what had been agreed: And being inform'd by them that he had chang'd his Mind, disown'd his Writing, and was inexorable on the Point of Investitures, he went in great Haste to *Rheims*.

THE Emperor sent to desire him to wait only one Day, till he had ask'd Advice of the Princes of the Empire, without whom he could not conclude on any Thing; but he would not stay. The Reflection of his Treatment of *Paschal* had given the Pope such an Apprehension of being invested, that he pursued his Journey with excessive Diligence, giving hereby an Example to violent Princes, that Violence is attended with Consequences of long Duration, and that 'tis hard to regain that Confidence which has been once lost by some Transports of Passion.

THE Pope returning then to *Rheims*, without seeing the Emperor, continued the Council there for some Days; and after having made some Canons, the last whereof prohibited the Ecclesiasticks receiving the Investiture of Bishopricks and Abbies of Laymen, he excommunicated *Henry* and the Anti-Pope *Gregory VIII*, with their Adherents, whose Names were mentioned in the Sentence of Excommunication; which done, he dismiss'd the Council, that he might at Leisure go to *Rome*. He arriv'd there the Year after, and was very well received; which, not agreeing with the Interest of *Gregory VIII*, he left the City, and made his escape to *Sutry*, a strong Town, wherein was an Imperial Garrison; but 'twas there *Calistus* wanted him; for having spent till the Year 1121 in establishing himself at *Rome*. he went into *Apulia*, and, raising

1120.

Pope Calistus goes to Rome, arms against the Antipope, besieges and takes him Prisoner.

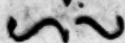
raising a strong Army there, by the Assistance of the Princes of that Country, to besiege the Anti-Pope at *Sutry*. After the Siege had lasted some Time, the Inhabitants, being too strong for the Garrison, delivered him up to the Besiegers, who, carrying him to *Rome*, mounted him upon a Camel with his Face to the Tail, and led him thro' the City, amidst the hollowings of the People; however, he gave him his Life, being contented with confining him in a Castle.

CALISTUS, being thus without a Competitor, bent his Thoughts also upon reducing the Emperor, as haughty as he was; in order to which, he took Advantage of the Revolt before-mentioned, which *Albert*, Archbishop of *Mentz*, had excited against his old Master and Benefactor. This Prelate's Infidelity, being cover'd with the Mask of the Interest of the Church, had been fomented by the Intrigues of *Rome*, and, under this pretended Zeal, Affairs had been exasperated to that Degree, that a formidable League had been made against the Emperor and his Partizans, whom they call'd Schismatics. The Armies that had taken the Field, were in Sight, and ready to engage, when (by the Mediation of the most prudent and considerable of each Party, who knew well that in Civil Wars, whether one conquers or loses the Day, 'tis always at the Expence of the same Blood) a Conference was demanded on both sides, and granted.

THERE it was resolv'd, that they would go unanimously and beg the Emperor to give Peace to the Church and Empire, which was done: And they found that Prince so well dispos'd to it, that he even offer'd to stand to the Judgment of the States; and they took him at his Word. A Diet was call'd at *Mersbourg*, where

HENRY
V.

*The Emper-
or being
oppress'd
with great
Leagues,
is forced
to labour in
earnest for
an Agree-
ment with
the Pope.*

[HENRY
V.]

1122.
*A general
Council at
Rome,
where the
Dispute a-
bout In-
vestitures is
decided.*

'twas concluded that an Embassy should be immediately sent to the Pope, to desire him to call a general Council at Rome to decide the Contest.

THE Ambassadors arriving at Rome, A. D. 1122, the famous Council was open'd in Lent, consisting of 300 Bishops, and near 700 Abbots; and the Ambassadors being heard, the great Difference about the Investitures, was at last ended with them, and by their Consent. The Conditions of the Regulation were: That the Emperor should leave the Elections free to the Chapters and Communities, and no longer confer Investitures by the Crozier and Ring; that he should restore the Possessions belonging to the Holy See, and the Churches; that the Elections should be made in the Emperor's Presence, or his Deputies, by Canonical Methods; that in Case there should be any Dispute about the Election, the Emperor, assisted by the Metropolitan, and his Suffragans, should be Judge thereof; that the Person elected should receive the Investiture of the Fiefs and Lordships of the Empire, not with the Crozier, but the Scepter, or some Wand, and should be faithful to him on account of the said Lordships; and that for the Countries distant from Germany, the Emperor should allow six Months to receive the like Investiture.

*The Empe-
ror's Ex-
communica-
tion taken
off.*

THESE Articles were delivered to the Ambassadors, to carry them to be ratify'd by the Emperor, and as soon as they arrived at Court, with the Pope's Legates, who had follow'd them, a Diet was call'd at Worms, where the Treaty was read and ratify'd; and at the same Time the Cardinal of Ostia, first Legate, gave Absolution to the Emperor, and all his Schismatical Adherents; after which he said Mass Pontifically, and gave him the Communion, as the last Mark of a perfect Reconciliation. The Legates return'd very well satisfy'd, and, in Testimony

mony of a singular Acknowledgment, the Emperor sent back new Ambassadors with them to the Pope, with rich Presents, as the Pledges of Friendship, which he ever afterwards cultivated with him very carefully.

HENRY
V.


Thus was this bloody and long Contest agreed and concluded on; by which one may plainly see, that most part of the Affairs which disturb Potentates, and cost so much Trouble and Blood, are only great in Imagination. From the Reign of Charlemagne till that of Henry IV, the Investiture was conferr'd by the Crosier and Ring, as by things indifferent; under that unfortunate Emperor 'twas imagin'd that the Crosier and Ring were some sacred Things, and what is still more deplorable, is, that the former Popes made use of this Imagination to disturb and dismember the Body of the Civil Society. Pope Calistus and the last general Council were more equitable, and the Emperor shew'd that he understood Reason: For as his Holiness and the Fathers of the Council would not inroach upon the political Authority, which is of divine Right, to maintain a meer Scruple; so the Emperor also receded from the Ceremony of the Crosier and Ring, seeing that, by the Custom which had been introduced, these Things were the Marks of the Spiritual Authority, and that, in fine, the Emperors having only a Right over the Temporalities, they could not, without laying Hands rashly upon the Altar, have any Right to invest Bishops and Prelates with the Spiritual Authority.

No Mention was made in this Treaty of the Right which the Emperors had formerly of investing and creating Popes, nor of what Share they should have for the future in these Elections; wherefore Calistus, not surviving this

The Death
of Calistus,
and E-
lection of
Honorius.
1124.

HENRY
V.

Accommodation long, the Cardinals, Clergy, and People, after his Death, which happen'd in 1124, proceeded to the Election of a new Pope, without the Emperor's Knowledge. So great was the Disorders of this Election, that they chose two Popes at the same Time, viz. Cardinal *Theobald*, whom they call'd *Celestine*; and *Lambert*, Cardinal-Bishop of *Ostia*, who was nam'd *Honorius II*; but these Cardinals, being Men of Probity, deprived themselves voluntarily; nevertheless they confirm'd the Election of *Honorius*, by correcting and amending all that had been contrary to the Canons,

The Emperor reduces those who rebel against him.

AFTER his Agreement with *Rome*, the Emperor had a Domestick War; for *Holland* revolting against him, he marched thither in Person, and reduced her to Duty by Force of Arms. He did the same by the City of *Worms*, which had also rebell'd against him, besieging and taking it by Composition, and punishing the Heads of the Sedition. This Spirit of Mutiny, which was occasion'd by the Misery whereunto the past Divisions had reduced many Cities, began to spread very much; the City of *Ruffat* had the Rashness to take up Arms against the Emperor's Officers, even in his Presence, and that in such a manner, that he but narrowly made his escape from the Tumult.

1123.
The Emperor Henry the Fifth's Death.

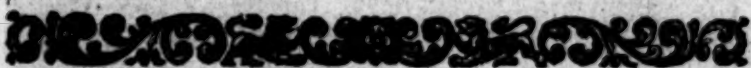
THIS Disgrace, touching him very sensibly, was partly the Cause of the Sicknes that seiz'd him afterwards, whereof he died on July 1, 1125. His Body was buried at *Spires* with those of the Emperors his Ancestors. 'Twas observ'd, that the Reflection of his ill Usage to his Father was continually before his Eyes, and that 'twas particularly the extream Sorrow he felt for it, which in the end contributed most to his Death. He had no Children by his Wife *Matilda*,

Chap. XI. of the E M P I R E.

211

Matilda, Daughter to *Henry I*, King of *England*, which Defect was ascrib'd to a particular Punishment of Heaven, he not deserving to be a Father, who had been so much wanting in the Duty of a Son. He left no Heirs but two Nephews by his Sister, viz. *Conrad Duke of Franconia*, and *Frederick Duke of Suabia*.

HENRY
V.



C H A P. XI.

LOTHAIRE the Second.



AFTER *Henry's* Death, 'twas thought that the States would have conferr'd the Imperial Dignity upon one of his Nephews, Sons to his Sister *Agnes*, that is, either on *Conrad Duke of Franconia*, or *Frederick Duke of Suabia*, both brave, generous, and powerful Princes; and even the Emperor *Henry*, before his Death, had given a very strict Order to deliver the Imperial Ornaments to them, which, however, was not executed. They also, on their Side, with a View to the Imperial Crown, had caref's'd and attended the principal Members of the Empire, to gain their Suffrages; but *Albert Archbishop of Mentz*, who could never forgive *Henry V* the ill Usage he pretended to have received from him, and who retain'd his Resentment against his Memory, and even against these two Princes, oppos'd their Designs to the utmost of his Power. Wherefore, that he might succeed the better, he be-
LOTHAIR II.
His Election oppos'd, but in vain.
 thought himself of getting Possession of the
 P 3 Crown,

LOTHAIR
II.

Crown, Scepter, and other Regal Ornaments, which remain'd in the Hands of *Henry's* Widow; and to this end he flattered her so effectually, that she could not avoid delivering them into his Hands, trusting to his Word, that he would take Advantage of this Confidence in Favour of one or the other of these Princes. Nevertheless this Prelate, being thus Master of these Ensigns of Royalty, managed the Minds of all the Princes with so much Address, that, without having any regard to the Pretensions of the two Competitors, they elected *Lothaire*, Duke of *Saxe-Supplenbourg*, Emperor; and he was crown'd at *Aix la Chappelle* in September 1126, in the Presence of the Pope's Nuntio.

ONE of the principal Reasons why the Archbishop of *Mentz* declared thus for *Lothaire*, was, because they had always been join'd together by Interest, both when they espous'd the Party of *Henry*, and afterwards when they left him to side with the Court of *Rome*, and her Partizans in *Germany*, of whom *Lothaire* was the Head. Besides, as this Prince had in that Quality contributed the most to reduce this Emperor to recede (in Favour of *Rome*, and the Ecclesiastical Princes of *Germany*) from the Rights of Election, Investitures, &c. for which so much Blood had been spill'd, these Princes having thus obtain'd all they desired, more especially by *Lothaire's* Assistance, rais'd this Prince to the Throne, in Recompence for this great Service; and after this, left nothing in their Power undone to maintain him therein against his two Competitors, *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*, and *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*. Nevertheless, the latter was elected King of the *Romans* by some Princes, Lords, and Cities of the Empire, and the other was crown'd King at *Milan*, by the

the Bishop of that City. But, in fine, after some Wars, which were of short Continuance, tho' very bloody, they were reconcil'd in the Year 1129, by the Mediation of several Princes their common Friends; and this Reconciliation was so sincere, that the Emperor honour'd them with his Friendship. He even in some Measure preferr'd *Conrad* to all the Princes of the Empire, entrusting him with the Imperial Banner, and procuring him all the Advantages he could on other Occasions. If he behav'd thus to reconcil'd Enemies, he was not wanting in Gratitude to those Princes who had set the Crown on his Head; for he continued the same Zeal for the Interests of *Rome*, during his whole Reign, and favour'd the Popes in all that was in his Power, as well as the other Ecclesiasticks of the Empire, to whom he granted many Privileges and Immunities.

LOTHAIR II.

1129.

1130.

HONORIUS II, dying the twenty fourth of February 1130, Pope *Innocent II* was elected Canonically the same Day; but Cardinal *Peter de Leon*, having a powerful Faction in *Rome*, got himself proclaim'd Pope, under the Name of *Anacletus*, notwithstanding the other's Election; which caus'd so violent a Schism, that, *Innocent* finding himself the Weakest, retired into *France*, where *St. Bernard* preach'd up loudly for his Interests. This Saint gain'd over *Lothaire* also to his Party, and induced this Prince to have a Conference with *Innocent* at *Liege*, where *St. Bernard* perswaded him also to come, and accompany him thither.

THE Emperor, on the Pope's Approach, who came on Horseback, mounted a Horse likewise, rode to meet him, and as soon as he saw him, dismounted, ran to him, supported him in his Arms on his getting off the Horse, and attend-

LOTHAIR II.

1132.

The Emperor goes to Italy to re-establish Pope Innocent II.

1133.

ed him to his Lodging. They had at first some Difference about the Investitures, the Right whereof the Emperor press'd the Pope to surrender to him, in the same Manner as the former Emperors had enjoy'd it; but he desisted from this Demand, on the urgent Reasons and pressing Intreaties of St. Bernard, who even engaged him to march to Rome, re-establish the Pontif, and drive out Anacletus, according to the Scheme projected between them.

THINGS being thus concerted between them, the Pope set out first for Italy, passing through France, where he receiv'd a considerable Sum for his Journey, and, advancing as far as Piacenza, waited there for the Emperor, who join'd him in a few Days, and, conducting him to Rome, re-established him in his See, in spite of all the Efforts the Anti-Pope could make to prevent it.

It perhaps might be, to add Weight to this Re-establishment, or else to excite others to honour the true Pope, that the Emperor afterwards, in the Ceremony of his Coronation, kneel'd down before Innocent, who sat upon a rais'd Throne, and having, thus kneeling, made Protestations of Obedience to the holy See, receiv'd the Crown; which he put upon his Head; the Ceremony was perform'd in the Palace of St. John de Lateran.

The Emperor introduces the Roman Law into the Empire.

THIS Solemnity being finish'd, the Emperor return'd to Germany, where, by the Advice of one Werner Ursperg, or Irnerus, who was very well vers'd in the ancient Laws of Justinian, he order'd that Justice should be administer'd in the Empire, according to the Pandects, or the Code, the Use whereof had been left off for five or six hundred Years. Insomuch that these Laws were introduced into Italy and Germany, and after that

Chap. XI. of the EMPIRE.

213

that into *France* and *Spain*, where the People before made use of their own proper Laws, and the Customs they observ'd in particular.

LOTHAIRE II.

THE Anti-Pope, *Anacletus*, having thrown himself into the Arms of *Roger*, Duke of *Apulia*, whose Dominions, to render him the more favourable, he erected into a Kingdom, under the Title of the Kingdom of *Sicily*, seeing *Lothaire* departed, took the Field with a good Army, and made himself Master of almost all *St. Peter's* Patrimony; which obliged *Innocent* to retire to *Pisa*, and once more implore *Lothaire's* Assistance.

Anacletus returns with an Army to Rome.

1134.

HIS Imperial Majesty, having not lost the least of his Affection for the Church, did not want much Invitation, but arming powerfully, passes the *Alps* in the Year 1136, and divides his Army in two, one Part whereof he gives to his Son-in-Law, the Duke of *Bavaria*, commanding the other in Person. After this there was nothing but Conquest; he retook all the Places of the *Patrimony*, and reconducted the true Pope in Triumph to *Rome*, causing hereby the Death of *Anacletus*, who died with Envy at the good Success of his Competitor.

1136.

1137.

1138.

NOT content with this, his Imperial Majesty push'd so briskly upon *Roger*, from Town to Town, that he retir'd shamefully into his Country of *Sicily*; insomuch that, making himself absolute Master of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, with all that *Roger* possessed in *Italy*, he form'd a State thereof, which he gave to *Renald*, a German Prince, his Relation, with the Title of Duke, whereof he depriv'd *Roger*.

AFTER this glorious Expedition the Emperor return'd for *Germany*; but his Progress was stop't by a dangerous Sickness that surpriz'd him at *Verona*. He thought he might overcome the

His Death.

Dis-

LOTHAIR
II.

Disease, by regaining the Place of his Birth, but at last he died in the *Alps*, near *Trent*, the third of *December*, 1138, after having reign'd twelve Years.

THIS Prince left no Male-Heirs, but is famous for his passionate Love of preserving the publick Peace, and administering Justice, had it but pleas'd GOD that his Intention had been follow'd in this latter Point. But the great Number of Comments that were, or have been since, made on the *Pandects*, have drawn upon his Memory the Reproach of having introduc'd Tricking, instead of rendring Justice easy.

'Twas apprehended that his Death would have chang'd the Affairs of *Rome*; but all things there remain'd peaceable, even *Roger* himself, seeing the Anti-Pope dead, was reconcil'd to *Innocent*, who, to secure himself so important a Support, confirm'd to him the Kingdom of *Sicily*.



C H A P. XII.

CONRAD the Third.

CONRAD
III.

His Election
and Coronation.



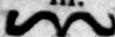
THE Princes of the Empire being assembled at *Coblentz* for the Election of an Emperor, deputed seven of their Number, viz. three Archbishops, and four secular Princes, one King, one Duke, one Count, and one Marquis, to whom they gave the Power of collecting the Suffrages of the Assemblies, and choosing the most worthy of those proposed. Hereupon they

they unanimously elected *Conrad* Duke of *Francia*, Nephew to the Emperor *Henry V*, and conducted him to *Aix la Chapelle*, where, in 1139, he was crown'd by Cardinal *Thierry*, the Pope's Legate, who perform'd this Ceremony for the Archbishop of *Cologne*, because he was not yet a Priest. *Henry*, Duke of *Bavaria*, firnam'd the *Proud*, who had marry'd *Lothaire's* only Daughter, and had receiv'd with her in Portion the Duchy of *Saxony*, the Emperor's Patrimony, was not at this Election. The Reason was, that he pretended he ought to have been declared Emperor, and he thought he had the more Right thereunto, in that *Lothaire*, having no Male-Heirs, had, before his Death, put the Regal Ornaments into his Hands, and thus design'd him his Successor to the Empire; but notwithstanding this Appointment, *Conrad* was preferr'd to him, and advanc'd to the Empire without any other Contradiction. Immediately after his Election he sent to desire the Duke of *Bavaria* to deliver those Ornaments; but he plainly refus'd it. Hereupon the Princes, who were resolv'd to maintain their Election, were oblig'd in a Diet at *Goslar*, to deprive him publickly of his Duchies of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*, the latter whereof was given to *Albert* Marquis of *Austria*; wherewith *Henry* was so sensibly touch'd, that he died the same Year.

CONRAD
III.

AT the same Time *Roger*, King of *Sicily*, re-conquer'd the Territories that were still dependent on the Empire in *Apulia*, which serv'd to augment his new Kingdom; and, in order to maintain himself therein, could contrive no better Way than to continue the Civil War in *Germany*. With this intent he animated *Welf*, or *Guelph*, Duke of *Bavaria*, Brother to *Henry* the

A Revolt
against the
Emperor in
Apulia,
which
spreads into
Germany.

CONRAD
III.

1140.

Origin of
the Guelphs
and Gibe-
lins.

the *Proud*, with a Desire of repossessing the two Duchies that had been confiscated from his Brother, to such a Degree, that, with the Assistance of the *Saxons*, he resolv'd to make War upon the Emperor, having receiv'd such a considerable Sum from *Roger*, that it enabl'd him to give *Conrad* a great deal of Trouble. Their Troops had several Engagements, but at last, in 1140, *Guelph* was besieged by *Conrad* in the Castle of *Weirsberg*; and the besieged, being resolv'd to make a Sally upon the Imperialists, gave for the Word to their Men, *Hiewelf*; which being discovered by *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*, Brother to the Emperor, and General of the Imperialists, he gave to his the Word *Hiegibelin*; which was the Name of a Village in *Suabia* where he had been educated. These two Names have since that Time been in great Vogue, especially in *Italy*: By the *Welpbs*, or *Guelphs*, were meant those who espous'd the Pope's Part, and by the *Gibelins*, the Imperialists. *Guelph* at this Sally lost abundance of Men, and was forc'd to retire in Disorder to *Weirsberg*, where he defended himself to the last Extremity; but at last he was oblig'd to surrender at Discretion.

The Genero-
sity of several
Women
disarms the
Emperor's
Anger.

THE Emperor would not use his good Fortune with Severity, but treated the Person sent by *Guelph* to capitulate with abundance of Civility; and gave his Word that the Duke with his Troops might pass through the Imperial Army. But the Duke's Wife, taking umbrage at so great Goodness, was afraid that, under such generous Appearances, his Majesty conceal'd some Resentment against her Husband on Account of some injurious Words spoken against that Prince, she would have an Obligation of more Force than his Word. Accordingly

cordingly she sent a Gentleman to him, to demand a Pass both for her self, the Ladies, and all the Women in the Castle, with Leave to come out without Danger, and be conducted to a Place of Safety, with whatever each of them could carry away; which the Emperor granted.

CONRAD
III.

UPON this they came out in Presence of Conrad, and the whole Army, who were not a little surpriz'd to see the Duchess, the Countesses, the Baronesses, and other Ladies of Quality, whose Husbands had offended the Emperor, each of them bringing, though with the utmost Difficulty, her Husband upon her Shoulders: 'Twas thought in the Army, that, when the Duchess desir'd this Permission, 'twas only to carry off their Jewels, Gold, and Silver, and they never mistust this Stratagem. Whereupon Conrad, being surpriz'd on a sudden at such a Sight, and reflecting upon the Tenderness and Courage of these Ladies, who esteem'd their Husbands as their real Treasure, and valued them more than Gold, or whatever was most pretious, was so much mov'd to see them in that State, that he could scarce forbear shedding Tears. He prais'd them, entertain'd them sumptuously at Dinner, and made a sincere Agreement with Duke *Welf*, and his Adherents, in spite of his Generals who oppos'd it by their Advice; answering them, *That 'twas unworthy of a King to break his Word.*

NEVERTHELESS, this Civil War gave an Opportunity to several Cities in *Italy* to withdraw themselves from their Dependence on the Empire, and, following *Roger's* Example, to erect themselves into Republicks: Even the *Romans* themselves had, for some time, form'd the Design of re-establishing the ancient Commonwealth,

Several Cities in Italy set up for Republicks.

CONRAD
III.

1141.

1144.

wealth, taking Possession of the Sovereignty of Rome, and all the Patrimony of the Church. They had already restored the Order of Senators, and conferr'd those Dignities upon the most considerable amongst them. In the Year 1144 they reviv'd also that of *Patrician*, where-with they invested one *Jordan*, giving him the same Authority as was heretofore conferr'd on *Charlemagne*. This new *Patrician*, attended by the Senators and People, remonstrated to *Lucius II*, that the Popes had never apply'd themselves but to Ecclesiastical Affairs, and that they were contented with their Tithes, which were paid them for Subsistence, without having any other Possessions, or interfering with political Affairs, the Administration whereof always belong'd to the Seculars, as might be seen by the Histories of the City of *Rome*, and *Germany*; that therefore it was not just for him to interpose any more in such Affairs, but to leave the Direction thereof entirely to them. Upon this Foundation these Mutineers attempted to dispute the secular Jurisdiction with him, or rather to deprive him of it; and began, by making themselves Masters of the City-Revenues, and putting Officers in the Place of those appointed by the Pope.

HIS Holiness, the Cardinals, and other Ecclesiasticks, oppos'd this Design openly, and maintain'd, as much as lay in their Power, their Authority and Rights; but, in fine, 'twas concluded to have Recourse to the Emperor *Conrad*, and to dispatch Ambassadors to him for that Purpose, which was done. He was then at a Diet at *Spires*, and it would have been reasonable to have referr'd it to his Decision; but both Parties were so incens'd, that Pope *Lucius*, during that Time, levy'd some Troops, besieg'd the Sena-

Senators in the Capitol, commanding himself in Person, and received there such a Wound, that he died thereof in few Days, (*viz*) the twenty fifth of *February*, 1145. On hearing this News, the Ambassadors return'd without Answer; nevertheless 'twas believed that the Emperor did not approve of the *Romans* Procedure, and had even received the Pope's *Nuntio* very well, and sent him back satisfy'd.

CONRAD III.

AFTER the Death of *Lucius*, *Eugene III* was elected, whom the Seditious likewise disturb'd at first; but he joining the Secular Arm to the Spiritual, and being seconded by the Well-affected, reduced the Rebels and the City to Reason, and re-established his Authority. This Repose gave him Liberty to apply himself diligently to the famous *Croisade*, which was then making against the *Saracens* for the Defence of the *Holy-Land*, wherein he engaged the Emperor *Conrad*. This was by his own Exhortations, join'd to those of *St. Bernard*, which were so effectual, that that Prince received the Cross from the Saints's Hands, and underook the Expedition to the *Levant* in the beginning of the Year 1147, with sixty thousand as fine Cavalry as had ever been seen; but he was not successful; for Part of his Army perish'd thro' the Malice of *Emmanuel Commenus*, Emperor of the *Greeks*, who caus'd Plaister to be mix'd in the Meal, wherewith he supply'd *Conrad's* Troops; and the other Part, having a long Time suffer'd Hunger, was almost entirely defeated by the *Turks*. 'Twas with much Difficulty that the Emperor sav'd some few Remains, with which he return'd to *Germany*, after spending two Years and a half in this Expedition. The rest of his Reign had but two Things remarkable; one was, the Revolt of Duke *Guelph*,

Pope Eugene III. succeeds Lucius; re-establishes his Authority in Rome, and sets about the Croisade.

Conrad goes to the Holy Land.

1147.

which

CONRAD
III.1152.
He appoints
a Successor,
and dies.

which was immediately appeas'd by the Emperor's giving him Satisfaction; and the other, the Death of his eldest Son *Henry*, who was elected King of the *Romans* before his going for the *Holy Land*. This Loss afflicted him so much, that, having but only one young Son, nam'd *Frederick*, left by his Marriage with *Gertrude*, Daughter to *Berengaire*, Count of *Saltzbach*, he took a Resolution to call a Diet at *Bamberg*, in the beginning of the Year 1152, wherein he represented to the States, that being threatened with Death every Hour, considering his ill State of Health, he thought himself obliged no longer to defer recommending to them the electing his Nephew *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia* for his Successor, he being a brave, experienced Prince, and worthy of that high Dignity. This being well received by all the Princes, he caus'd all the Imperial Ornaments to be delivered into his Hands, a little after which he died at *Bamberg*, after a Reign of thirteen Years, and, as high as can be guess'd, was buried near the Tomb of *Henry II*, altho' some say it was at *Spires*.



C H A P. XIII.

FREDERICK the First.

His Coronation.



AFTER *Conrad's* Death, the Princes of the Empire assembled at *Frankfort* to choose an Emperor, and, according to his Recommendation, elected *Frederick* of *Suabia*, his Nephew by his Brother; after

after which they crown'd him at *Aix la Chapelle*, being about the Age of twenty eight or nine. He was the first of this Name, and was call'd *Father of his Country*, from the great Concern he shew'd for the Glory of the Empire; and *Barbarossa*, on account of his red Hair and Beard.

FREDERICK I.

Assoon as he was elected, most Part of the Princes of Christendom sent Ambassadors to *Mersbourg* to congratulate him thereupon: Amongst others, the King of *Denmark*, who was just come to that Crown, came in Person to desire Investiture, which the Emperor granted, and crown'd him with his own Hands; after which the King took the Oath of Allegiance, as a Vassal of the Empire. A little after, he sent the Archbishop of *Treves*, and Bishop of *Bamberg*, on an Embassy to *Rome*, to receive the Crown in his Name, because he could not go thither himself, before he had appeas'd and terminated the Differences between the Princes of the Empire. Amongst the rest, there was one very considerable, which was the Dispute between *Henry Duke of Saxony*, with another *Henry Duke of Bavaria*, as having inherited the Duchy of *Bavaria* from his Brother, to whom the Emperor *Conrad* had granted it, confiscating it from his Father *Henry Duke of Saxony*; hereupon the Son reclaim'd the Duchy, and this great Contest had arm'd almost all the Princes in *Germany*.

WHEREFORE, to end this Difference, he caus'd a Diet to meet at *Spire*, where, by the Princes Advice, he order'd that *Henry Duke of Saxony* should be re-establish'd in the Duchy of *Bavaria*, which *Conrad*, after deposing the Father of this Duke (as has been before observ'd) had conferr'd upon *Leopold Marquis of Austria*,

Q

Brother

FREDERICK I.

Has a Dispute with the Pope; but it is happily ended.

Brother to this *Henry*, also Marquis of *Austria*. And to satisfy this Marquis, the Emperor erected *Austria* into a Duchy, discharging him thus of the Homage and Oath of Allegiance, which he owed to the Duchy of *Bavaria*, of which he before depended.

HOWEVER, *Frederick*, as well as his Predecessors, was very near embroiling himself with the Pope; it was thus, the Emperor had elected the Bishop of *Zeits* to the Archbishoprick of *Magdebourg*, on account of a Division of Voices at the Election of the other two. *Eugene* found Fault herewith, because it was not allowable to take a Bishop from his own Church, and translate him to another, but in Cases of the greatest Necessity; but *Frederick*, who well knew the Agreements his Predecessors had made with the Pope, supported his Archbishop, and when the Legates came from *Rome*, with Orders to depose him, prevented them, and obliged them to retire.

July 8.

1153.

POPE *Eugene* being dead, and *Anastasius IV* succeeding to the See, was resolv'd to tread in *Eugene's* Steps; wherefore he sent Cardinal *Gerard* into *Germany* to conclude this Affair: But this Legate speaking imperiously, and contrary to the Respect due to his Imperial Majesty, *Frederick*, who was as jealous of his Authority, as expert in his Affairs, caus'd him to be shamefully driven out of *Germany*, which chagrin'd the Cardinal so much, that he died on his return to *Rome*.

BUT the Emperor, who had before his Eyes the Trouble the Popes had given his Predecessors, and for that Reason would not expose himself to like Extremities, took a judicious Medium to terminate this Affair: Wherefore in the Year 1154 he sent the new Archbishop of *Magdebourg* to

1154.

to Rome, who, having inform'd Pope *Anastafius* fully of the Truth, he was satisfy'd, and gave him the *Pallium*; some Months after which he died, and *Adrian IV* was chosen in his Stead on the fourth of *December* the same Year.

FREDERICK I.

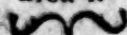

ABOUT this Time several Cities of *Italy*, that were Fiefs of the Empire, endeavour'd to free themselves from Subjection, as some had already done; even the *Romans* themselves would also have reviv'd their Pretentions in the Time of *Lucius II* against the Pope's Sovereign Authority in *Rome*, and the Sedition increas'd to that Degree, that the People having fallen upon a Cardinal, the Pope laid an Interdict on the whole City; whereupon, Things being again aggravated, *Adrian* was at last forced to seek Refuge at *Viterbo*, there to wait the Emperor, whom he had call'd to his Assistance.

1155.
An almost
general Re-
vols in Italy
against the
Emperor
and Pope.

FREDERICK had been in *Lombardy* the *October* before, to reduce the Cities to Reason that had fortify'd themselves, and would no longer acknowledge the Empire; some of these he had already taken and chastis'd, and had made them of *Pavia* deliver up the Iron Crown. Whilst he continued his Advances, he heard, with abundance of Displeasure, that Troubles were again breaking out in *Germany*; and that the Archbishop of *Mentz*, and Duke *Herman*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, were at Variance together, and in open Arms, with a Resolution to carry Things to the utmost Extremity, so much were they incens'd against each other. In short, this Difference caus'd great Disorders, and almost totally ruin'd the Provinces of the *Rhine*, and even the Count Palatine, assisted by the Counts *de Leiningen*, *Spanheim*, *Catselenbogen*, *Kirchberg*, *Didesheim*, and some others, plunder'd, sack'd and burnt the City of *Mentz*, af-

Frederick's
first Expedi-
tion into
Italy causes
Troubles in
Germany.

FREDE-
RICK I.



ter having ravaged the Country round a-
bout.

*Interview
between the
Emperor and
the Pope;
the Emperor
reconducts
the Pope
to Rome.*

THE Disquiet which the Quarrel of these Princes gave the Emperor, made him hasten his Expedition into *Italy*, where he soon reduced almost all the Places that had revolted, to his Obedience; and as his principal Business was to re-establish the Pope in *Rome*, he press'd the Interview that had been propos'd, in order to concert their Measures together. It was appointed at *Sutri*, where *Adrian* coming upon a Mule to meet *Frederick*, 'twas thought that Prince would have help'd him to dismount, and himself have held the Bridle; but he persisted in refusing it, till such Time as he had been inform'd that his Predecessors had not disdain'd that Act of Humility, in Consideration of the Person the Pontif represents. Hereupon the Emperor reconducted the Pope to *Rome*, where he received the Imperial Crown from the Hands of his Holiness, which Ceremony the *Romans* suffer'd him to perform without Trouble; but as soon as he was withdrawn to his Camp, they renewed their former Sedition, and came with open Arms to besiege the Pope in the *Vatican*.

*The Emperor
returns to
Germany.
1156.*

THE Emperor, on the first Advice he received hereof, march'd speedily to his Assistance, cut in Pieces all who resisted, and dispersed the Tumult; which done, and being all quiet in *Italy*, he returned into *Germany*; and no sooner arrived there, but he called a Diet at *Worms*, whereunto the Princes who had taken Arms were cited. They were heard, and Sentence being pass'd, with the Advice of the States of the Empire, were condemn'd, as disturbers of the publick Tranquility, to the Punishments allotted for such Crimes, (*viz.*) the Princes
and

and Counts to carry a Dog upon their Backs from one Province to another, the Gentlemen a Joint-stool, and the common People a Cart-wheel. This Sentence was put in Execution against all but the Archbishop of *Mentz*, who was dispens'd with by the Emperor on account of his Age.

FREDERICK I.

A LITTLE after, another Difference arose between *Adrian* and *Frederick*; for the Bishop of *London* having been robb'd and made Prisoner in the Imperial Territories, and having complain'd thereof, without any Reparation made him, the Pope sent Legates to the Emperor to demand Justice of him. These Legates found him at *Bezancon*, where he had summon'd a Diet, took Occasion to read the Pope's Letter in the open Assembly, which caus'd a general Murmur, and particularly at the Pope's having express'd himself in these Terms, *That he had conferred the Sovereign Authority of Rome, and the Kingdom of Italy, on the Emperor, as a signal Grace and Favour*; whence all the World imagined the Pope meant that he had given the Empire to *Frederick* to hold in Fief of him. What incens'd the Assembly yet more, was, that one of the Legates, thinking to salve the Matter, cry'd out, (without distinguishing the Empire from Rome,) *and from whom then do you hold it?* At these Words the Count Palatine, *Otho* of *Bavaria*, who, as Marshal of the Empire, kept the Sword, drew it from the Scabbard, and advanced to strike the Legate; but the Emperor with-held him, ordered them to leave the Assembly, and return without Delay to *Rome* the shortest Way. And that the World might not be led away by this false Opinion, he wrote circular Letters in Form of a *Manifesto*, wherein he gave them to know, that they who said he depended on any one but God, were Liars.

Another
Brawl be-
tween the
Emperor
and the
Pope.

FREDE-
RICK I.

NEITHER did the Pope keep Silence; he wrote to the German Bishops to represent to Frederick the Injury he had done him, in the Person of his Legates; to which the Emperor firmly reply'd, *That he held his Crown of God, and the German Princes; and that he would sooner resign it, than suffer it to be thus debased in his Person*: These resolute Words induced the same Bishops to advise the Pope to reconcile Matters. The prudent Pontif comply'd with this Counsel, and sent back other Legates, who paid Frederick all possible Honour, and presented him a Letter from his Holiness, in Interpretation of the former; this second was full of Civility and Respect, and represented that he meant the placing the Marks of the Imperial Dignity upon his Head was a good Action, and not that he had given or conferred them on him as a Favour. He chose, rather for the Sake of Peace, to give thus a foreign Explanation to his Letter, than to interpret it strictly as the Sense would have born.

Frederick's
great Pro-
gress in
Germany.

NEVERTHELESS Frederick, who was a Prince of great Penetration, understanding very well what all these Letters meant, knew that Rome wanted but a favourable Occasion to explain herself in another Manner. For which Reason he made his utmost Efforts to put an end to all the Affairs that might oppose him in Germany; and began by Poland, whose Duke Boleslaus (for Poland was then a Duchy) had revolted; Him he oblig'd to return to his Duty, and to pay him Homage, and the Tribute he ow'd him. On the other hand, he erected the Dukedom of Bohemia into a Kingdom, to preserve Uratislaus Duke of Bohemia in his Interests, and made him first King of Bohemia: not but the Emperor Henry IV had given the Title of King to Urati-

Uratissans in the Year 1086, but the Duchy it self had not been acknowledged for a Kingdom, as it now was. He in the like Manner assured himself of the Fidelity of the King of *Hungary*; and having thus quieted all *Germany*, and settled a good Intelligence amongst his Neighbours, prepared for a second Expedition to *Italy*.

FREDERICK I.

HE repass'd then the *Alps* towards the End of the Year 1158, with a powerful Army, to finish the Conquest of the Cities that had rebelled against him, where he besieged and took *Milan* at Discretion, with what other Towns remained in *Lombardy*. After which, resolving to regulate the Affairs relating to his Demelnes, he caus'd Search to be made into the Rights of the Empire, and had Homage paid him by those who held Fiefs, without excepting the Bishops. Hereat the Pope took Offence, and sent a great Embassy of Legates to complain thereof; to whom *Frederick* answered, That it was reasonable they should pay him Homage, as they possessed Fiefs; and that *JESUS CHRIST*, as much Master as he was of Sovereignty, yet condescended to pay the Tribute due to the Emperor for *St. Peter* and himself.

1158.

The Emperor's second Expedition into Italy; a new Dispute between the Pope and him.

DURING these Transactions, Pope *Adrian* IV dies, and the Election of his Successor caus'd a Schism; for the greatest Part of twenty five Cardinals, who were present at *Adrian's* Death, choosing *Rowland* Chancellor of the Church, who took the Name of *Alexander III*, and the others electing *Octavian* of *St. Cecilia*, the latter seeing them give the Papal Cope to his Competitor, fell upon him, tore it from him, and, causing himself to be adored under the Name of *Victor IV*, was at the same Time approved and proclaimed by the People.

Schism about the Election of a Pope.

FREDE-
RICK I.



NEITHER did the Pope keep Silence; he wrote to the German Bishops to represent to Frederick the Injury he had done him, in the Person of his Legates; to which the Emperor firmly reply'd, *That he held his Crown of God, and the German Princes; and that he would sooner resign it, than suffer it to be thus debased in his Person*: These resolute Words induced the same Bishops to advise the Pope to reconcile Matters. The prudent Pontif comply'd with this Counsel, and sent back other Legates, who paid Frederick all possible Honour, and presented him a Letter from his Holiness, in Interpretation of the former; this second was full of Civility and Respect, and represented that he meant the placing the Marks of the Imperial Dignity upon his Head was a good Action, and not that he had given or conferred them on him as a Favour. He chose, rather for the Sake of Peace, to give thus a foreign Explanation to his Letter, than to interpret it strictly as the Sense would have born.

Frederick's
great Pro-
gress in
Germany.

NEVERTHELESS Frederick, who was a Prince of great Penetration, understanding very well what all these Letters meant, knew that Rome wanted but a favourable Occasion to explain herself in another Manner. For which Reason he made his utmost Efforts to put an end to all the Affairs that might oppose him in Germany; and began by Poland, whose Duke *Boleslaus* (for Poland was then a Duchy) had revolted; Him he oblig'd to return to his Duty, and to pay him Homage, and the Tribute he ow'd him. On the other hand, he erected the Dukedom of *Bohemia* into a Kingdom, to preserve *Uratisslaus* Duke of *Bobemia* in his Interests, and made him first King of *Bobemia*: not but the Emperor *Henry IV* had given the Title of King to *Ura-*

Uratissans in the Year 1086, but the Duchy it self had not been acknowledged for a Kingdom, as it now was. He in the like Manner assured himself of the Fidelity of the King of *Hungary*; and having thus quieted all *Germany*, and settled a good Intelligence amongst his Neighbours, prepared for a second Expedition to *Italy*.

FREDERICK I.

HE repass'd then the *Alps* towards the End of the Year 1158, with a powerful Army, to finish the Conquest of the Cities that had rebelled against him, where he besieged and took *Milan* at Discretion, with what other Towns remained in *Lombardy*. After which, resolving to regulate the Affairs relating to his Demesnes, he caus'd Search to be made into the Rights of the Empire, and had Homage paid him by those who held Fiefs, without excepting the Bishops. Hereat the Pope took Offence, and sent a great Embassy of Legates to complain thereof; to whom *Frederick* answered, That it was reasonable they should pay him Homage, as they possessed Fiefs; and that *JESUS CHRIST*, as much Master as he was of Sovereignty, yet condescended to pay the Tribute due to the Emperor for *St. Peter* and himself.

1158.

The Emperor's second Expedition into Italy; a new Dispute between the Pope and him.

DURING these Transactions, Pope *Adrian* IV dies, and the Election of his Successor caus'd a Schism; for the greatest Part of twenty five Cardinals, who were present at *Adrian's* Death, choosing *Rowland* Chancellor of the Church, who took the Name of *Alexander III*, and the others electing *Octavian* of *St. Cecilia*, the latter seeing them give the Papal Cope to his Competitor, fell upon him, tore it from him, and, causing himself to be adored under the Name of *Victor IV*, was at the same Time approved and proclaimed by the People.

Schism about the Election of a Pope.

FREDERICK I.

1159.

The Emperor summons a Council.

1160.

ALEXANDER, on the other hand, and twenty two Cardinals who had elected him, seiz'd on the Castle of St. *Angelo*, the Governor whereof was their Friend, where the other Faction invested them, and kept them Prisoners, till the People, about nine Days after, being disabused, came to their Deliverance, crying in their Turn, *Long live Pope Alexander*; and he was crown'd in a Village near *Rome*.

BUT the Emperor declar'd for *Victor*, notwithstanding the plurality of Voices that had conferr'd the Popedom on *Alexander*; he espoused his Cause, by Reason he was before in his Interests; whereas the other was of *William King of Sicily's* Party, whom *Frederick* had long counted his Enemy; which, and the Example of former Popes, oblig'd *Alexander* to have Recourse to that King's Protection. However, the Emperor, that he might not support *Victor* without a plausible Pretence, order'd a Council to be call'd at *Pavia*, to judge of the Validity of each of these Elections; whither the two Competitors were cited, and *Frederick* open'd it on the second of *February* 1160, after which he went out immediately, that he might not by his Presence prevent their giving their Opinions freely.

VICTOR appear'd thereat, but *Alexander* did not think proper to be present, because that, esteeming himself the true Pope, he could not own a Council which had been call'd without his Consent. Here *Victor's* Election was confirm'd, the Emperor himself adoring him, and causing him to be acknowledged with the usual Solemnities. On the other hand, *Alexander*, having made use of Remonstrances to *Frederick*, to bring him to himself, finding he would not leave *Victor's* Party, thundered out a Sentence

Chap. XIII. of the EMPIRE.

233

Sentence of Excommunication solemnly against him at *Anagni*, in Presence of several Bishops and Cardinals, whom he call'd thither, absolving all his Subjects from their Oath of Allegiance; and at the same Time he also renewed that he had before issued out against *Victor*.

FREDERICK I.

NOTWITHSTANDING all these Excommunications, *Frederick* did all that lay in his Power to persuade the World that *Victor's* Election was lawful and Canonical; he even sent Ambassadors to the Kings of *France* and *England* to draw them over to his Side; but *Alexander* gain'd the better, and his Cause being examined by those two Princes, and found just, they took him into their Protection: Hereupon the *Milaneze*, and the rest of *Lombardy* also, espous'd his Party, and driving out the Emperor and *Victor's* Partisans, express'd their Sorrow for having own'd him. Nevertheless, *Alexander*, not thinking himself in Safety, neither in *Rome*, nor the rest of the Territories of the holy See, because those of *Frederick's* Party were very powerful, went to *Genoa*, and thence into *France*, where he arriv'd about *Easter*; sometime after which he went to *Clermont* in *Auvergne*, and held a Council, where he did not spare hurling his Thunder both against *Victor*, *Frederick*, and all his Adherents.

1161.

1162.

THE Emperor, on the other hand, lost no Time; for, as soon as the Season would permit, he took the Field against the *Milaneze*, and other Rebels, and had several Advantages over them in divers Engagements; but he received a Check which sensibly affected him. He had surpriz'd their Troops, and posting himself between the City and them, they were oblig'd either to fight, or surrender at Discretion, if he would not leave them a Passage open to *Milan*. This he refus'd, which

FREDERICK I.

1163.

1164.

The Emperor
returns to
Germany.

which threw them into Despair; hereupon they fought so bravely and resolutely, that they obliged the Emperor to retire with Loss. *Frederick*, incens'd at this Disgrace, ravag'd the *Milaneze*, and resolv'd to block up the City as close as possible; the carrying on of the Siege being long and bloody, he intrusted it to his Generals, and went in the mean while where his most pressing Occasions call'd him; but being weary'd with the Length of it, he return'd to *Milan*, and press'd the City so sharply, where most Part of the Inhabitants were already dying with Hunger, that they surrender'd at Discretion. His Imperial Majesty, touched with Compassion, gave the Men, Women, and Children their Lives, and Liberty to come out; but for the rest, he deliver'd the City to be plunder'd, and afterwards entirely demolish'd all but the Churches: He even had it plough'd up, and sow'd with Salt, as a perpetual Memorial of their Rebellion. After this, without Delay he dismantled *Brescia* and *Piacenza*, and reduced the rest of the revolted Cities, obliging them at the same Time to acknowledge *Victor*; then, elate with this Success, he returned to *Germany*, at that Time full of private Quarrels, which had arm'd most Families, and appeased them with his usual Address.

BUT as the Reflexion of his rigorous Treatment of *Milan*, was a Spur which continually incited almost all the Cities of *Italy* against him; they again revolted, being besides underhand stirr'd up by Pope *Alexander*, which oblig'd the Anti-Pope, *Victor*, to seek Refuge with *Frederick*, who, hearing of this general Insurrection, resolv'd immediately to return to *Italy*. He thought it proper for *Victor* to go before him, as he did; but, arriving at *Lucca*, he died there

Chap. XIII. of the EMPIRE.

233

there the same Year, 1164; and, few Days after his Decease, the Cardinals of his Faction elected *Paschal III* in his Room, whom the Emperor caus'd to be acknowledged in a Diet, which he call'd some Time after at *Wirtzburg* for that purpose.

FREDERICK I.

ABOUT this Time Pope *Alexander*, being inform'd how well dispos'd all *Italy* was to his Interests, was perswaded by their Entreaties to return to *Rome*, going by Sea to *Messina*, whence *William* King of *Sicily* convoy'd him in his Ships to *Ostia*; and thence he set out for *Rome*, while *Paschal* kept at *Lucca*, in Expectation of the Emperor.

Pope Alexander returns to Rome.

1165.

FREDERICK then having rais'd a formidable Army, return'd to *Italy* in 1166, and, defeating the *Romans*, assisted by the *Neapolitans* and Rebel-Cities, obliges *Alexander* to retire to the Territories of the King of *Sicily*, by whom he is protected; then, pushing on his Point, enters *Rome*, establishes *Paschal*, and makes him crown the Empress, to give the Pope more Authority by that remarkable Action.

1166. The Emperor's third Expedition into Italy.

TILL now every thing had smil'd on the Emperor; but his Troops being seiz'd with the Plague, it made so great Havock, that, seeing this Turn of Affairs, he was very fortunate to make Hastè, save what Forces he could, and regain *Tuscany*; whence, after having secur'd himself of some Towns, he return'd for *Germany*. This Disgrace happening to his Army, and this precipitate Retreat, made the Cities of *Italy* take Heart again; and, the Year following, almost all shook off their Yoke, and made a League together for the Preservation of their Liberties: Even those of *Milan*, finding the Emperor sufficiently employed in *Germany*, took that Opportunity to rebuild their City; which they did

1167.

FREDERICK I.

1168.

1169.

1174.
Frederick's
fourth Ex-
pedition in-
to Italy,
where he
loses one
Battle, and
gains ano-
ther, 1175.

did with so much Eagerness, that they almost brought it to Perfection in a very short Time.

POPE Paschal dying in the Year 1169, the Cardinals of his Faction elected *Calistus III*; but his Imperial Majesty receiving advice on all hands, that all *Italy* was weary'd with the length of this Schism, and that his Friends, as well as his Enemies, passionately desir'd to see it ended, made him fear that all would revolt; wherefore, finding he should be oblig'd to make another Expedition into *Italy*, he prepar'd long before-hand all things necessary for it. Hereupon, having rais'd a numerous Army, he cross'd the *Alps*, and, entring *Lombardy* in 1174, found the Enemy's Forces likewise in the Field; but the two Armies, contenting themselves with several Skirmishes, did not come to a general Battle till the Year following, when the Emperor was not successful, for he lost it, and narrowly escap'd being kill'd. He was the more sensible of this Disgrace, in that, being accusom'd to conquer, and reign in the midst of Laurels, he saw himself oblig'd to submit, and give up a Part he had hitherto gloriously sustain'd in the Eyes of all Christendom. What exasperated him the more, was, to see most of the Princes of *Germany* forsake his Interests at the same Time; amongst others, *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, (call'd after his Father, the *Proud*) abandon'd him entirely whilst he laid Siege to *Alexandria*. The Emperor did what he could to retain him; but all the Reason he gave him was, that he would not be excommunicated; however, the Event shew'd he was incited by the Pope to go into *Germany*, and invade the Empire. FREDERICK was not ignorant hereof, and for that Reason wish'd ardently within himself to make Peace; especially seeing Prince
Henry

Henry, his eldest Son, who commanded his Fleet against the *Venetians*, had lost a Battle, and was made Prisoner. But as he was of a great Soul, he thought it not proper yet to discover his Desire of an Agreement with the Pope; wherefore he rally'd his Troops, made a new Effort, and in a little Time put himself in a Capacity to dispute the Field with his Enemies. Hereupon, having given them Battle the Year after, he beat, and routed them; and as he was as great a Politician as General, he did not lose that favourable Opportunity of coming to an Accommodation.

FREDERICK I.

1176.

BUT as Authors differ about this Point of History, and about the Circumstances of the Emperor and Pope's Interview, I thought I might depend upon the Account given by *Romuald*, Bishop of *Salerno*. As this Prelate was then Ambassador of the King of *Sicily*, and in this Quality an Eye-Witness of all these Incidents, 'tis probable that he speaks without Disguise or Flattery, besides which he agrees with *Sigonius*. He says then, that *Frederick*, having gain'd a second Battle over the *Lombards*, was at the same Time sollicit'd and press'd by the Princes of the Empire, to make Peace with Pope *Alexander*, for the Good and Quiet of the Church and Empire; that, in order to this, he sent the Archbishops of *Mentz* and *Magdebourg*, and the Bishop of *Worms*, with the *Sieur De Palfy* his Secretary, Ambassadors to him, with a full Power to treat of an Accommodation, and conclude it; that they met the Pope at *Anagni*, who receiv'd them with the more Joy, in that he had himself a long Time wish'd for Peace; that it was concluded soon after, and agreed that the Pope and the Emperor should have an Interview so soon as possible, to ratify it in Person.

Reconciliation between the Pope and the Emperor, and their Interview.

THE

FREDERICK I.

THE same Author adds, that the Ambassadors returned to *Frederick* with this Treaty; all which this Prince approved, except the Expedient for a Peace, which the Pope had proposed with regard to the *Lombards*, which Expedient he refused to ratify; that *Alexander* having been inform'd of this Denial, it was agreed to have another Assembly at *Ferrara*, where he was again present in Person with the Ambassadors, to take other Measures, and remove this Difficulty; that in the meanwhile this Negotiation being spun out to a long Time, some Flaterers had taken Advantage of the Absence of the Ambassadors, who were the Emperor's most faithful and most able Ministers, to persuade him that they had favoured the Pope in their Negotiation to the Prejudice of his Reputation, and for their own particular Interests; that thereupon the Emperor fell into such a Passion, that he disown'd his Ambassadors, and declared for *Calistus*, which he had not till then done, that the Ambassadors being inform'd hereof, desired *Alexander* to send his *Nuntio* with them to *Frederick* to demand the Ratification of the Treaty; that the Ambassadors and *Nuntio*, being arrived at the Imperial Court, gave an Account of their Negotiation; and that afterwards the Emperor refused to ratify the Treaty; that he remain'd fix'd in this Resolution for some Time, endeavouring to find some Means to revoke the Power he had given them; that, on the other hand, the Archbishops of *Mentz*, *Cologne*, *Treves*, and *Magdebourg*, with the Bishop of *Worms*, the Vice-Chancellor *Godfrey*, and the Secretary *Palsy*, all of whom had been employ'd by him in this Negotiation, desiring to prevent the fatal Consequences of this Rupture, represented to him by the Archbishop of *Mentz*, that his Majesty could not but remember

Chap. XIII. of the EMPIRE.

237

FREDERICK I.
1177.

ber the Commission he had given them, to go to *Anagni* and treat with the Pope; that his Holiness had acted in this Affair like a Man of Honour; that 'twas not to be doubted but he desired Peace, and that he was gone to wait its Ratification at *Venice*; that nevertheless they were inform'd that his Majesty, at the Persuasion of some particular Persons, was no longer of the same Mind, as to the Agreement they had just made between the *Roman Empire* and the Church; that, if it were so, they would not dissemble with him, that they were all ready to pay him due Respect, and to assist him with their Troops and Counsels, because they were obliged by Oath thereunto, on Account of their Characters and Benefices; but as he, being Emperor, had Power only over the Body, and not over the Soul, they were not inclin'd to oblige him with that, at the Risque of their eternal Damnation, nor to lose Heaven for Earth; and that therefore they declared to him that they were all unanimously resolved to acknowledge Pope *Alexander III.*, as the true Head of the Church, and to regard *Calistus*, but as an Anti-Pope. Upon this Declaration, says the same Historian, the Emperor came to himself, and changing his Mind, made Answer, That 'twas just he shou'd conform himself to the Sentiments of his principal Ministers, and Princes of the Empire; that they ought to contribute to the Execution of what they thought for the Safety and Advantage of the Common-weal; and that, to shew them he did not desire to abandon either them or their Counsels, he was ready to send Count *Henry Dessau* with them and the *Nuntio* to *Venice*, to confirm by Oath in his Name the Treaty they had made. Hereupon he dispatch'd them immediately; and those Princes accordingly

FREDE-
rick I.



ingly were next Day at *Venice*, where they executed his Order. He also set out himself a little after for that Place, with an Intent to ratify in Person all that had been concluded, and to visit the Pope, as he had *Adrian*, and *Victor*, and as the Emperors his Predecessors had done with Relation to other Pontifs.

He arrived there on *St. James's Eve*, and as the *Venetians* were appriz'd of his coming, the Doge, the Patriarch, the Bishop, with the Clergy and the Senate went out to meet him, and conducted him in their *Gondola's* to *St. Mark's Strand*, where the Pope with the Cardinals waited for him before the Church. The Emperor, on his approaching his Holiness, who was seated in a Chair, made him a low Bow, and kiss'd his Feet. This Humility forced Tears from the Pontif, who inclining towards him, embraced him, and gave him the Kifs of Peace; after which *Frederick* taking him by the Hand, they entered the Church together, from whence, after Mass, which was celebrated by his Holiness, he reconducted him to the Church Door, giving him always the right Hand: And, when *Alexander* was going to mount a Horse, that was brought to carry him to the Sea, he held the Stirrop, and wou'd again have follow'd him; but his Holiness would not suffer him to go any farther, and begg'd him so earnestly to retire, that he comply'd.

Ratificati-
on of the
Peace made
by the Pope
and Empe-
ror in Per-
son.

THESE first Civilities being thus paid, the Pope, Emperor, and all the Princes met on the first of *August* in the patriarchal Palace, where his Holiness, being seated in a Chair prepared for him, made a Discourse in *Latin*, concerning the Peace concluded between him and *Frederick*; and, after he had done speaking, the Emperor answered it in his Mother Tongue, which was the

Chap. XIII. of the EMPIRE.

239

German, and interpreted into *Latin* by the Archbishop of *Mentz*, that all might understand it. Not but the Emperor was Master of the *Latin*, but he would not use it in this illustrious Assembly, that he might support the Honour and Dignity of the *German* Empire. And as his Imperial Majesty had publickly declared that he was sincerely inclined to execute the Treaty, it was sworn to be solemnly observ'd by the Deputies in the Name of the Pope and Emperor, and the Ratifications were exchange'd with all imaginable Marks of Rejoicing. This Joy lasted whilst they remained at *Venice*, that is, all the Month of *August* to the thirteenth of *September*, when the Emperor set out for *Ravenna*.

FREDE-
RICK I.

THESE Circumstances shew with how little Foundation some Historians have said, that *Frederick* suffered himself to be trampled on by the Pope; for without alledging that the Emperor had as great a Spirit as any Prince whatever, is it probable that he could have spent so much Time in Joy, and the best Understanding imaginable with his Holiness, after having received from him the most cruel of Outrages? That is, if after bowing to pay him Reverence, the Pope set his Foot upon his Neck, as upon a Serpent, repeating these Words of the *Psalmist*, *Thou shalt tread upon the Adder and the Serpent*; and that when the Emperor answered him, *That was wrote for Peter, not for you*, he should reply, *Both for St. Peter and me*. In short, there is no likelihood in it, and possibly 'tis only an imaginary Story, as disadvantageous to the Reputation of the Pope, as of the Emperor.

The Improbability of what some relate concerning this Interview.

Psal. 91

AFTER this Reconciliation between *Frederick* and *Alexander*, the Rebellious Cities that had leagued together for their mutual Prefer-

R

vation

FREDE-
RICK I.

vation, were not long before they sought to be restored to his good Graces. Their Agreement was made at *Constance*, and upon his granting them a general Pardon, with Liberty to retain their own Laws, and Manner of Government, they obliged themselves to acknowledge him as their Sovereign, and, in that Quality, took an Oath of Allegiance to him; 'twas also agreed; that, in any Cause which exceeded a certain Sum, they might appeal to the Officers whom he should appoint in *Lombardy*, that the Inhabitants of these Cities might not be obliged to solicit their Suits in *Germany*.

1178.

The Anti-Pope Calistus surrenders himself to Pope Alexander, who receives him with Humanity.

THE Anti-Pope *Calistus* seeing himself without Support by the Reconciliation of the Pope and Emperor, cou'd find no better Refuge than in the Goodness of that Pontif; in short, he flung himself into his Arms, and his Holiness, by receiving him with abundance of Humanity, made it appear that he had learn'd of Jesus Christ to be meek and humble. But to prevent the Schisms that were caus'd by the Divisions that happen'd in the electing of Popes, *Alexander* call'd a Council, whereby, among other Things, it was decreed, that, to be legally chosen, one must have at least two-thirds of the Votes.

The Pope holds a Council.

1180.

The Emperor returns to Germany.

WHILST all these Things were transacting in *Italy*, *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* had embroil'd the Affairs of the Empire; but the Emperor arriving with extraordinary Diligence in *Burgundy*, and having summoned this Prince to a Diet, where he did not appear, he confiscated his Dominions, wherewith he gratified his Creatures; who pushed so vigorously upon *Henry*, that *Frederick* had nothing to fear.

POPE *Alexander* dying the 27th of *August*, 1181, *Lucius III* was chosen in his Place, who
imme-

immediately set his Heart upon the Affairs of the *Christians* in the *Holy Land*. Some Difference he had with the Emperor on Account of the Succession to the Countess *Matilda's* Territories, which, he pretended, belonged to the Church, by the Will of that Princess, and whereof *Frederick* resolved to keep Possession, as having a right thereto; each of them came to *Verona* the Year following, in order to make some Agreement; but this Dispute was not decided.

FREDERICK I.
Pope Alexander's Death.

THIS Affair was again brought upon the *Tapis*, at the same Place, with *Urban III*, who succeeded *Lucius*, and the Contest was so sharp between the Emperor and him, that they were upon the Point of coming to an open Rupture. In the mean while *Frederick* being come into *Italy*, chiefly on Account of the Marriage of his Son *Henry*, who was Twenty one Years old, with *Constance*, Sister and Heiress to *William* King of *Sicily*, had advanced the Negotiation so far, that it was concluded on, and the Nuptials were celebrated with an extraordinary Magnificence in the City of *Milan*, which he had formerly sacked and destroyed, and which the Inhabitants had rebuilt with great Splendour.

The Emperor's fifth Journey into Italy, where his Son Henry marries the Heiress of Sicily.

AFTER the Consummation of this Marriage, which in less than three Years brought into his Family the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*, by the Death of *William* without Children, *Frederick* returned to *Germany*, where he governed his Dominions in a profound Peace; but being informed of the miserable State of the Christian Affairs in *Palestine*, and of the taking of *Jerusalem* by *Saladin* King of *Egypt*, he thought he cou'd not spend the rest of his Days better than in sacrificing them in the Defence

The Emperor returns to Germany where he undertakes the Holy War, but first divides his Dominions among his Children.

FREDERICK I.

1187.

of the Christian Name. He undertook then in 1187, a Voyage to the *Holy Land*, with several other great Princes; and that the Affairs of the Empire might not suffer in his Absence, he visited that same Year all the principal Cities of *Germany*, attended with the Prince his Son, intending to intrust him with the Care of the Empire during his Expedition.

BUT to establish Peace more securely, the Emperor resolved also that his eldest Son *Henry* should succeed him in the Empire, and by this Means obviate all Pretences that his other Children might have to disturb its Tranquility; wherefore he made a Distribution amongst them of their future Inheritance, and that in such a Manner as might content all. He had no Children by *Alix*, Daughter to the Marquis of *Ursbourg*, his first Wife, whom he had repudiated; but he had five Sons and two Daughters by his Second, the Empress *Beatrix*, Daughter to *Regimbaud*, or *Renaud*, Count of *Burgundy*, who died two Years before, and had taken very particular Care of their Education. As for his eldest Son *Henry*, he had him elected King of the *Romans*, and his Successor in the Empire in the Year 1181, and had married him, as has been before observed: And as for the States, Provinces and Territories which he inherited from his Family, he divided them amongst his other Children. To *Frederick* his second Son he gave the Duchy of *Suabia*, with that Part of *Bavaria* which came by Right of *Welf* his Brother, to which he added the County of *Pfullendorf*; to *Conrad* his third Son he gave the Duchy of *Rottembourg*; to Duke *Otho*, the Patrimony of the Empress *Beatrix*; and to Duke *Philip* his youngest, all the Possessions and Lands he had recovered from the Hands of the Eccle-

Ecclesiasticks : so that they were all great and Potent Princes. The Daughters were married; the One, (whom some call *Judith*, others *Luitgarde*) to *Conrad* Marquis of *Misnia*; and the other, named *Bertha*, to *Matthew* first Duke of *Lorrain*.

FREDERICK I.

THIS done, the Emperor *Frederick* set out for his *Asian* Expedition in 1188; and the next Year passed the *Hellepont*, with such glorious Success against the *Turks*, who disputed his Passage, that the Terror of his Name was spread every where, and rais'd the Courage of the *Christians*; but that was to be the Period of his Conquests. This great Prince was extreamly hardy, and as he was an excellent Swimmer, would bathe himself one Summer's Day in a River, as he had several times before; but the Stream prov'd so rapid, that he could not stem the Force of the Water, but was carried away by the Current, and drowned, without its being possible for any one to save him; however, his Body was taken up and buried at *Tyre*.

1188.

1189.

Frederick is drowned in Syria June 10, 1190.

DURING his Reign, the greatest of his Cares was to maintain Peace in the Empire, and with the neighbouring Princes; according to the *German* Etymology of his Name, *Frederick*, which signifies, *Rich in Peace*. He cou'd not be otherwise, being endued with so many good Qualities, and knowing well that a Prince ought only to be brave and warlike to maintain his Subjects in Peace. He was a Prince of great Courage, very good Sense, and of an extraordinary Vivacity; besides this, he was naturally eloquent, and of so happy a Memory, that he remembered the Names and Quality of all who treated with him. In a word, his Conversation was full of Charms, without any remarkable Vice; and for his external Accomplishments, he

Encomium of the Emperor Frederick.

was finely shap'd, strong and expert in Arms, both on Foot and Horseback; and his Air was agreeable, and altogether majestick, adding to all these great Qualities an extream Thirst of Glory.



C H A P. XIV.

H E N R Y the Sixth.

HENRY
VI.

*Is crowned
at Rome,
the Pope
putting on
and pulling
off the
Crown at
the same
Time.*



1191.

HEN Henry, surnamed the Severe, was informed of the Emperor his Father's Death, and almost at the same time of the Decease of his Brother-in-law William, King of Naples and Sicily, he immediately levied what Forces he could, and marched into Italy with his Wife Constance, in order to be crowned Emperor by Pope Clement III, who then enjoyed the Holy See, and afterwards to take Possession of William's Dominions, (who died without legitimate Issue) in the Name of his Wife. On his arrival at Rome, a little before Easter, Pope Clement died, and Celestine III, who was almost eighty six Years old, was chosen in his room; and being inaugurated on Easter-day, crowned the Emperor and Empress the next Morning, but with one very extraordinary Circumstance. The Pope being seated in his Chair, had placed the Imperial Diadem on the Ground before his Feet, and when Henry kneeled, and bowed down to salute him, his Holiness putting the Crown upon his Head, threw it down with his Foot; whereupon the Cardinals

Cardinals took it up and replaced it on him; which done, *Celestine* crowned the Empress also, but did not throw off the Crown with his Foot.

HENRY
VI.

BARONIUS owns, that this Action was indecent; but nevertheless excuses it, and says, that he designed by this to give the Emperor to understand, that the Popes had the Power to confer and take away the Imperial Dignity, when Necessity should oblige them to it. But as it has been already shewn in several Places, how little Grounds most Authors have for this Pretension, and how repugnant it is to natural Reason, 'tis entirely needless to make a more ample Detail of their Arguments, to destroy them, and prove they are without any Foundation.

THE Emperor being crowned, bent all his Thoughts upon taking Possession of the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*; however, this was not to be done without difficulty; for *Tancred*, *William's* Natural Son, had already made himself Master thereof, pretending they were Male Fiefs; nevertheless *Henry* advanced towards *Naples*, and besieged it. But finding some time afterwards that his best Troops perished before the Place, without much Advantage, and that the other considerable Towns declared also for *Tancred*, he judged that he was not strong enough to finish an Affair whereon his Reputation depended. For which reason he resolved to repass speedily into *Germany*, to raise new Forces there, and make such Preparations to drive out the Usurper of these two Kingdoms, that he should not fail of Success next Expedition.

DURING the Time he was making these new Levies, and other necessary Preparations, he

HENRY
VI.

did not neglect the Affairs of the Empire, but bent his Thoughts upon establishing good Orders to maintain Peace, and take all the Precautions imaginable to prevent the publick Tranquillities being disturbed in his Absence. He applied himself particularly to the having Justice carefully administered every where; and was so intent upon it, that he often spent much Time in hearing those himself who came to prefer their Complaints to him; in which he behaved himself with such Mildness and Patience, as attracted every one's Praise and Admiration. Some of his greatest Confidants having one Day taken the Liberty to tell him, that the Audience he gave to every one fatigued him too much, and made his Meals irregular; he immediately answered, That a private Man might eat when he would, but that a Prince must not, before he had settled the Affairs of the Publick.

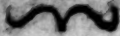
The Institution of the Teutonic Order.

As 'twas under his Reign, and almost at the same time, that the illustrious *Teutonic Order* of Knighthood had its Rise, 'twill not be improper (for the better clearing up some Places in the sequel of this Work) to say something here of the manner of its Institution. When the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* engaged himself in the famous *Croisade*, mentioned in his Life, and marched with a formidable Army for the Recovery of the *Holy Land*, an infinite Number of *German* Noblemen and Gentlemen followed him as Volunteers; some moved by a Sentiment of Piety, others by a Desire of Glory. They were besides incited thereunto by the Example of divers great Princes of *Europe*, who either out of the like Motives, or in deference to the Pope's pressing Instances, had imbarqued in the same *Croisade*. Of this Number

Number were *Philip Augustus* King of *France*, *Richard* King of *England*, *Frederick* Duke of *Snabia*, the Dukes of *Austria* and *Bavaria*, *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, *Philip* Count of *Flanders*, *Florant* Count of *Holland*, *William* Count *East Friezeland*, *Otho* Count of *Guelderland*, *Theodore* Count of *Cleves*, with several other Dukes, Marquisses, Counts and Lords; and 'twas before all these August Witnesses, that the Flower of the *German* Nobility signalized themselves in all the Emperor *Frederick's* great Exploits. After his Death the *Germans* being without a Chief before *Acon*, then besieged by the *Christians*, elected *Frederick*, the late Emperor's second Son, and *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, Captain Generals of their Nation. Under these Commanders they signalized themselves that Campaign by such glorious Actions, as well at the taking of *Acon*, as of *Jerusalem*, and other Cities and Places, that *Henry* King of *Jerusalem*, the Patriarch, and other Princes, thought themselves oblig'd, on this Account, to do something extraordinary for the *German* Nation, in order to excite others by their Example.

For this Reason, as an eternal Mark of their great Services already done, and which they still did in the *Holy Land*, it was proposed to create an Order of Knighthood, under the Name of *St. George*, because all those Heroes served on Horseback. But after that they judg'd it more proper to put it under the Name and Protection of the *Virgin Mary*, because there was an Hospital settled at *Jerusalem*, on Mount *Sion*, for the Pilgrims and Poor of that Nation, under the same Denomination of the *Virgin Mary*, or *Notre Dame*. Hereupon they drew up Statutes upon the Foot of those of the Order of *Templars*, and those of *St. John*, call'd now of *Malta*,

HENRY
VI.



HENRY
VI.

Malta, whence they took what they thought most agreeable to an Order, which they design'd to render both Military, and Hospitable; to the End that they who were received Knights, after having spent part of their Lives in the Defence of the *Holy Land*, against the Enemies of the *Christian* Name, might consecrate the other to the Exercise of Hospitality to the Poor, and Pilgrims of their Nation, who would visit the Holy Places.

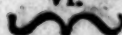
THESE Statutes, amongst other Articles, ordained, That all the Knights who should be admitted should be of noble Extraction; that they should be called *Brother-Knights of the holy Virgin*; that they should make a Vow to defend the *Christian* Church in general, and the *Holy Land* in particular; that they should protect the Ecclesiasticks, Widows, Orphans, and Poor, when in Affliction; that they should assist and serve those who were of a Quality requisite to be received into their Hospital; and, in general, that they should perform all that is contained in their Rules and Statutes. For their principal House, and original Foundation, they assigned them the *German* Hospital of *Notre Dame de Mont Sion*, whereof we have just made mention, which had been founded some time before by a Person of great Piety, and supported by the Alms of the *Germans*. And as this Institution was not made but on Condition of obtaining the Emperor and Pope's leave; they dispatched the Archbishop of *Bremen*, and the Bishop of *Paderborn* to them, to procure their Approbation and Consent. *Henry*, not content with granting their Request, and confirming it, would also be their Protector, and use his good Offices with *Celestine III*, to induce him to put the finishing Hand to it;

it; to which that Pontif willingly consented, and approved the Statutes that were presented him, adding likewise these that follow, viz. that the Knights should wear a white Habit, whereon a Black Cross should be worked after the Manner of that of the Order of St. John; that they should not only carry the like black Cross in their Banners, but also in their Shields and Coats of Arms, and that they should observe St. Austin's Rule. He also confirmed to them the Gift of the German Hospital of Mount Sion, for their principal Place of Foundation, and granted them the same Privileges with the Knights of St. John; and finally, he gave Indulgences to all who should assist or be Benefactors to this Order, as is recited more at length by the Bull he caused to be drawn up the 22d of February, 1191.

'Twas by Virtue of this Bull that the King of Jerusalem, jointly with Frederick Duke of Suabia, who was impowered by his Imperial Majesty, created the Knights of this Order, the Number whereof were at first but Forty; and at the same time Henry Walpot, a Gentleman of the Empire, was immediately chosen Grand Master, and, with the Knights, put in Possession of the German Hospital of Mount Sion.

THIS Order being thus established, all these Princes strove, as it were with Emulation, to be its Benefactors; the Pope and Emperor, amongst others, gave it considerable Marks of their Liberality; the latter adding, besides the Right of possessing for ever, all that the Order could conquer from the Infidels. And Philip King of France, being willing likewise to favour it, conferred many Benefits thereon, and granted the Grand Master the honour to bear the *Flower de Lis*, at the four Extremities of his Cross.

How-

HENRY
VI.

1192.

1193.
The Empe-
ror conquers
the King-
dom of
Naples.
1194.

Henry's
Cruelty.

HOWEVER, as the Emperor *Henry*, amongst all the Affairs that had employ'd him ever since his return to *Germany*, had in no wise neglected that for which he came, and having now what Forces he thought necessary for the Recovery of the two *Sicily's*, march'd without Delay for *Italy*. But, before he advanced in Person to the Kingdom of *Naples*, he dispatch'd a considerable Part of his Army, under the Conduct of one of his Generals, to make the first Attempts, which were very successful. This good Fortune, and the News he receiv'd almost at the same Time of *Tancred* his Competitor's dying a few Days after his Son *Robert*, made him resolve to follow with the rest of his Troops; and having joined the others, he soon made himself Master of *Apulia* and *Calabria*. Having carry'd the City of *Salerno* by Storm, he revenged himself barbarously of the Citizens for their having insulted the Empress his Wife in making her Prisoner. This severe Punishment, and his ill Usage of the other Cities that dar'd resist him, exercising all manner of Cruelty therein, made the rest implore his Clemency, in so much that, in a short Time, he saw himself peaceable Master of the two *Sicily's*,

THIS Prince was endow'd with fine Qualities, he was prudent, had a great Vivacity, spoke well, and was brave and active; but he blemish'd them all by his Cruelty, and breaking his Word. *Tancred* had left but one Son, an Infant, nam'd *William*, whom the *Neapolitans* declared King after his Father's Death; the Emperor could not rest till he made himself Master of this Child, and even of his Mother, who was withdrawn into *Sicily* with her Son, and two Daughters. Hereupon he pursued them so close, that they were obliged to surrender themselves upon
Terms

Chap. XIV. of the EMPIRE.

251

Terms propos'd to them; but without having any Regard to his Promise, he stripp'd them of all, and, out of an extraordinary Spirit of Revenge, caus'd the young Infant to be gelt, put out his Eyes, and confin'd the Mother with the two Daughters in a Monastery.

HENRY VI.

DURING this Conquest the Empress Constance, tho' almost fifty Years old, became with Child; and Henry, to avoid all manner of Suspicion of Imposture in her Lying-in, would have her deliver'd under a Tent in the open Field near *Palermo*, in the midst of all the People. Accordingly 'twas in that Place, and in the midst of that fine Company, that, on the twenty sixth of *December*, she brought into the World a Son nam'd *Frederick*, who was afterwards Emperor.

1196.
The Empress's Precaution about the Lying-in of the Empress.

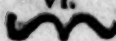
HENRY, having established new Officers every where, most Part whereof were *Germans*, and given what Orders he judg'd necessary, returned to *Germany*, carrying with him the Chief of the Nobility and Prelates in the Kingdom, as Pledges for the Fidelity of the rest. But this Precaution was of no use; for the others, not being able to bear the great Impositions he laid on them, rebell'd again; whereat he was so incens'd, that he caus'd the Eyes of all the Hostages to be put out.

1197.
The Emperor returns to Germany and treats the Sicilian Hostages severely.

THE first Thing he set about after his return to *Germany*, was, to get his Son *Frederick* elected King of the *Romans*, tho' in the Cradle; which the States of the Empire did, but more from the Fear of him, than any Love to his Person. If the Sentiments of these Princes were such, those of Pope *Celestine* were not much different; *Henry's* Power kept him in continual Fear and Disquiet, wherefore he perpetually sollicit'd him with the greatest Earnestness

Has his Son chosen King of the Romans.

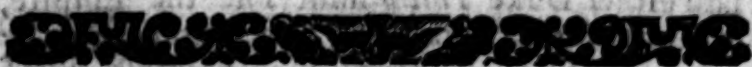
HENRY
VI.

 Earnestness to go to the Assistance of the *Christians* in the *Holy Land*, and for this Effect, to march with a considerable Army into the *Levant*, and to command them in Person, after the Example of his Father *Frederick*. But this Prince contented himself with sending thither an Army under the Command of the Archbishop of *Mentz*, with the Princes of *Austria*, *Brabant*, and *Thuringia*; and being press'd to return into *Italy*, to destroy the remains of some Insurrections, and establish Peace, he carried the Empress, and his Son the King of the *Romans* with him, and thence pass'd directly into *Sicily*, that he might provide the more conveniently what was necessary for the *holy War*.

Henry's
Death.

BUT having heated himself in *August* by hunting near *Messina*, and resolving to spend the Night in the cool Air near a Fountain, that he might rest the more agreeably, he found himself so struck on his awaking with the Cold of the Night, that he was seized with a very acute Disease, whereof he died soon after. Others say that his Wife poisoned him, she being of *Tancred's* Blood, and not able to digest the Cruelty wherewith he had treated the little Prince *William*; however he died at *Messina* in *Sicily* the twenty ninth of *September*, having by his great Actions spread the Terror of his Name as far as the Court of *Alexis* Emperor of the *Greeks*. He even pretended to render that Empire tributary to him, and had already sent Ambassadors to *Constantinople* with an Offer of Peace, on Condition of paying Tribute, or otherwise to declare War. But this great Design proved abortive by his Death, as well as the Measures he had taken to extend the Reputation and Power of the Western Empire in the *Levant*; but on the News of his Death, all the Troops he

he had sent, with a Number of brave Men, forsook the War, and returned to *Europe*, leaving the *Holy Land* a Prey to the *Saracens*.



CHAP. XV.

PHILIP.

PHILIP Duke of *Suabia* was on his Way to *Sicily* when he received the first News of the Emperor *Henry's* Death; and a few Days after, whilst he was yet on the Frontiers of *Italy*, he was met by an Envoy, who was dispatch'd to him according to the Emperor's Order, and delivered into his Hands the Crown, Scepter, Spear, and Imperial Globe, with the Will of the deceased, whereby he was intrusted with the Guardianship of *Frederick* his Son, King of the *Romans*, and the Government of the Empire till he should be at Age. He was inform'd at the same Time that the Inhabitants of the Kingdoms of *Sicily* and *Apulia* had mutiny'd, and put most of the *German* Troops to the Sword; but judging that his Presence would be more necessary in *Germany*, and that no Time was to be lost, he return'd thither in all Haste with his Forces, to endeavour to preserve the Empire for his Nephew.

In the mean while Pope *Innocent*, who had succeeded *Celestine*, being desirous to take Advantage of *Frederick's* Minority, as of a favourable Opportunity to ruin the House of *Suabia*, which he and his Predecessors had always esteemed

PHILIP.

He is declared Administrator of the Empire and Tutor to Frederick, Henry's Son.

The Pope's Faction to deprive the House of Suabia of the Imperial Crown.

PHILIP.

steemed to be averse to their Authority, resolv'd at any Price to translate the Imperial Dignity to another Family. For his own Part, he had so great an Enmity to those Princes, that he said either Duke *Philip* must lose the Empire, or himself the Popedom, and accordingly he did not fail to write to the Archbishops of *Treves* and *Cologne*, to proceed to the Election of another Emperor, exclusive of the House of *Suabia*. Nor did he omit any Thing afterwards to satisfy his Passion, and sow Divisions in *Germany*, even so far as absolving the Princes of the Oath of Allegiance they had taken to the Emperor *Henry*, in behalf of his Son.

Some Prin-
ces of the
Empire
chose *Otho*
of *Saxony*.

IN Compliance with the Pope's Desires, the Archbishops of *Treves* and *Cologne*, assisted by the Bishops of *Paderborn* and *Minden*, with *Henry* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, *Herman* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, the Dukes of *Brabant* and *Limbourg*, the Count *de Dachsbourg*, and others, chose *Berthold* Duke of *Seringia* King of the *Romans* at *Cologne*. But this Duke refusing that Dignity for some Reasons, they elected in his Room *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, who was then with the King of *England* his Uncle, and sent the Counts *de Dachsbourg* and *Leiningen* to him, to give him Advice of his Election, and desire him to return with all Speed to *Germany*.

Otho
crown'd.

OTHO having accepted of this Honour with Joy, did not delay coming, and having assembled his Partisans, with a good Body of Troops, which were reinforced by those of his Brother *Henry* Count Palatine, seized on *Aix la Chapelle*, where the Archbishop of *Cologne* crown'd him Emperor. On the other hand, *Conrad* Archbishop of *Mentz*, with the Archbishops of *Magdebourg* and *Bezancon*, the Bishops of *Munster*, *Ratisbon*, *Freisingen*, *Augsbourg*, *Constance*, *Eichstat*,

Nat, Worms, Spire, Brixen, Hildesheim, the Ab- PHILIP.
bots of Fulda, Hirschfeldt and Kempden, the King
of Bohemia, the Dukes of Saxony, Bavaria, The others
Austria, and Moravia, the Marquis of Rottem- elect Frede-
bourg, and several other Princes, met at Mul- rick, and
hausen, or, as others say, at Erfort, where they Philip his
confirmed the election of Frederick, who was Uncle King
not yet three Years old, and to give his Uncle of the Ro-
Philip more Authority to exercise his Guar- mans.
dianship, chose him at the same time King of 1198.
the Romans, did him Homage, and took the
Oath of Allegiance. These two different Elec-
tions of Otbo and Philip divided all Germany,
and the Princes forming two Parties, each of
which joined themselves to the two Rivals,
whose Side they espoused, caused the Ruin of
the Empire, and laid it entirely desolate.

THE Pope made no scruple of declaring for 1199.
Otbo, but approved his Election, and even sent The Pope
a Cardinal as Legate not only to confirm it, excommuni-
but also to excommunicate Philip, and all his cates Philip.
Adherents. Otbo thus supported by Rome, and Advanta-
elate with the Excommunication thundered ges gained
against Philip, resolves, with those of his Party, by Otbo.
to push him to the last Extremity. According- 1200.
ly they marched against him, made him quit 1201.
the Field in several Engagements, and at last
reduced him to shut himself up in a Place, where 1202.
they besieged him, and thought him already
taken, but he escaped very subtilly in the
Night. Otbo seeing himself thus Master of the 1203.
Field, calls a Diet at Mersbourg, where he was Otbo's fa-
a second time crowned by the Pope's Legate, conel Ger-
who again confirmed and approved his first nation.
Election.

HOWEVER, Philip was not in the least dis- Philip's
couraged by his ill Fortune, but levying a con- Success.
siderable Body of Troops, by the Assistance of 1204.
France,

PHILIP.

France, and divers other Princes, and following an old prudent Maxim which was successful to him, resolved to ruin the principal of *Otbo's* Confederates. He began then by the *Landgrave* of *Thuringia*, whose best Towns he took, and destroyed the Country; at the same time he marched against the *Bobemians*, who were coming to the *Landgrave's* Assistance, and utterly routed them. This Victory changed the Face of Affairs entirely, so that either by Force, or otherwise, his most formidable Enemies were obliged to agree with him; and as he was a Prince of a sweet Temper, they were in haste to have recourse to his Clemency, and the *Landgrave*, who was the first that implored it, immediately felt the good Effects thereof, which engaged him to espouse his Cause entirely. This was *Otbo's* first Disgrace; the second was, that the Count Palatine, *Henry* his Brother, whom *Philip* threatened to deprive both of his Office and Dominions, left him, and went over to *Philip's* Side; and the third was, that the Archbishop of *Cologne*, who had presided at *Otbo's* Election, and crowned him at *Aix la Chapelle*, did the same, abandoning his Interests, without any regard to the Oath of Allegiance he had taken, or the Pope's Excommunication. *Otbo* was sensibly touched hereat, seeing he lost such powerful Supports, and that without them he could not maintain himself in his Dignity.

Philip's second Coronation.

PHILIP, on the contrary, proud of his good Fortune, would, according to his Rival's example, confirm his Election by a second Coronation; and as the former Emperors were crowned at *Aix*, he received the Crown there solemnly at the Hands of *Adolphus*, Archbishop of *Cologne*, before mentioned. Pope *Innocent* seemed to be infinitely incensed at the Archbishop

bishop of *Cologne's* Change, and caused him to be publicly excommunicated by the Archbishop of *Mentz*; but the Sequel shew'd, that his Animosity against the House of *Suabia* was not gratis; he was willing (as they say) to fish in troubled Waters. For he took his time so well, in the middle of the Divisions that were fermenting in the Empire, between the Head and its Members, that, while they were employed in ruining each other, he conquered and secured to the Church of *Rome* the greatest Part of the Patrimony she possesses at present, and made himself be acknowledged Sovereign, tho' these Provinces were before dependent on the Empire.

PHILIP.
The Pope
fomented the
Divisions in
Germany
for his own
Advantage.

PHILIP, without regarding what the Pope did, whose Policy he knew, redoubled his Care and his Forces against his principal Enemy, whom he obliged to quit the Field, and shut himself up in *Cologne*; there he besieged him, and pressed him so close, that *Otho*, seeing no Safety but in Despair, resolved to have recourse to that, and to make a Sally with the Flower of his Troops, with an intention either to raise the Siege, or save himself by Flight, which last Design succeeded. All his Men were either killed or taken Prisoners, and amongst the last was the new Archbishop of *Cologne*; as for *Otho*, he escaped, and fled into *Saxony*, and thence into *England*.

Philip's
last Efforts
against
Otho.

THIS Advantage rendered Philip entire Master; he continued the Siege of *Cologne*; and, not being willing to destroy that fine City, took it upon Terms, and re-established *Adolphus*, keeping the other always Prisoner; and as he had no more powerful Enemies upon his Hands, bent his Thoughts chiefly upon confirming his Friends in their good Intentions. Wherefore

Philip re-
maind Ma-
ster, and
established
his Author-
ity by Al-
liances.
1205.

PHILIP.

he gave his eldest Daughter in Marriage to *Ottocare* King of *Bohemia*, and the second to the eldest Son of the Duke of *Brabant*, and to others he gave large Presents in Lands and Money. In fine, as he was naturally of a sweet engaging Temper, he used them all in a manner so civil and generous, that he gained the Heart of every one. His Generosity carry'd him even so far as to send Ambassadors to the Pope, in order to be reconciled to him; which were the more agreeably received by him, in that the Emperor thereupon sacrificed several Provinces to him, that were Fiefs of the Empire.

Agrees
with the
Pope.

1206.

1207.
Philip at
last agrees
with *Otho*
by a Mar-
riage.

THIS Reconciliation produced a general Peace; for the same Legates who, in the Pope's Name, had joined with the States of the Empire in favour of *Otho*, managed Matters so well in *Germany*, to stop the Course of a War so tedious and sharp, that they persuaded *Philip* to give his Daughter *Beatrix* in Marriage to *Otho*, and consent that he should succeed him in the Empire. The Minds of Men being calmed by this means, nothing remained for *Philip* to establish an universal Peace throughout *Germany*, but to suppress some private Factions that still disturbed *Saxony*.

Philip's
deplorable
Death.

ACCORDINGLY, this Prince took a Resolution to go thither in Person, and march'd with his Army; but on his arrival at *Bamberg* was seized with a Weakness which would not suffer him to proceed any farther; and this Indisposition was the means used by Providence to execute the Sentence it had pronounced against him. He had been let Blood, and, that obliging him to keep his Chamber, diverted himself, after the Operation, with *Conrad* Bishop of *Spires*, his Chancellour, and *Henry* Cruchs Count

1208.

Count *de Walbourg*, at which time the Count Palatine *Otbo of Wittelsbach* desired to see him, and the Emperor himself, hearing his Voice, ordered him to be admitted. Hereupon he entered the Room, after conversing there some time, went out, and, taking his Gentleman's Sword, who was then waiting at the Chamber Door, pretended to play with the Broad Sword. *Philip*, not approving this Play, ordered him to desist, and told him, that was not a proper Place for him to divert himself in that manner with a naked Sword; to which he answered roughly, that it was the only proper Place, and at the same time gave the Prince a Stroke on the Throat. The Chancellor was so much terrified hereat, that he hid himself; but the Count *de Walbourg* seized upon the Palatine, who, to disengage himself, gave him a Cut on the Cheek, and escaped to the Bishop of *Bamberg's* Palace. Whilst the Palatine and *Walbourg* were struggling, the Emperor, who was wounded in the Jugular Veins, was suffocated in his Blood, and died immediately, without its being possible to assist him. What prompted the Palatine to this detestable Action, was, that *Philip* had promis'd to give him one of his Daughters in Marriage, and had refused him afterwards, because of his being declared infamous in a full Diet, by the Princes and States of the Empire, on Account of a Murther he had basely committed in the Court of *Bavaria*, on the Person of a Baron, who was a Man of Courage and Honour.

No one was unconcerned at *Philip's* Death, because he had made himself entirely amiable by his good Qualities. He had an agreeable Countenance, and a fine Shape, though but of a middle Size; he was prudent, affable, eloquent, liberal,

PHILIP. liberal, and merciful; and, tho' brave, intrepid, and fond of Glory, had nevertheless, out of pure Goodness to his People, laboured incessantly, as much as possible, to maintain Peace in the Empire, notwithstanding all the Obstacles the Court of *Rome* laid in his Way, to cross so good a Design. He us'd to say, that it was no Shame to change any Measures that were ill begun. He was very powerful, rich, and Master of many Dominions hereditarily; but he had been obliged to sell one part, and mortgage the other to pay his Troops; as for his Body it was carried to the Church at *Bamberg*, where it was long deposited, till it was transferred to *Spires*, by Order of the Emperor *Frederick II*, his Nephew.

*The Death
of Philip's
Assassin.*

As for the Palatine of *Wittelsbach*, they did not defer his Punishment; for he was condemn'd to Die by the Emperor *Otho*, and the Princes of the Empire, in a Diet held at *Augsburgh*, and his Estate was confiscated; and a little after he was killed in a publick Duel by *Henry de Calate*, Marshal of *Philip's* Court.



C H A P. XVI.

O T H O the Fourth.

1208.
*Otho being
elected Em-
peror, pass'd
thro' France
and laid a
considerable
Wager with
the King*



It has been observed in the beginning of *Philip's* Reign, that when *Otho* was first elected King of the *Romans*, by some Princes of the Empire, he was with *Richard* King of *England*, his Uncle by the Mother's Side. But

But one Particular was omitted, which was, ^{Otho IV.} that on the News of this Election, Richard, ha-^{the Pay-}ving presented him with a very considerable^{ment} Sum of Money, advised him to pass through^{whereof he} France, in his Way to Germany, and endeavour^{demands by} to engage King Philip Augustus in his Interest.^{Force of} ^{Arms.} Otho, following this Counsel, went to Poitiers, where the King then was, and, being receiv'd very graciously, flattered himself at first with the Hopes of obtaining some Favour, but he soon found that he was deceived. For the King of France, (who loved the Emperor Philip, assisted him privately, and saw plainly that Duke Otho would be obliged to yield him the Empire, by reason of his having but few Men, little Money, and not many Friends in Germany,) was deaf to all the Proposals that were made in behalf of this Prince. He even said one Day to him, as it were in Jest: *I hear you are elected to the Empire: 'Tis true,* answered the Duke, *but that must be as pleases God. Do you believe,* reply'd the King, *that you shall really attain to that Dignity?* For my part, *I much doubt whether all the Germans will approve of your Nomination; and I am so thoroughly convinced of it, that if you'll give me Choice of which of your Baggage Horses I please, I consent, if you are Emperor, to give you likewise the Choice of three of my best Cities, I mean Paris, Estampes, or Orleans.* Otho accepted the Offer, and Philip Augustus chose the best Horse with his Burthen out of fifty laden with an hundred and fifty thousand Marks in Gold, which had been presented him by the King of England, and Otho delivered it to him on the proposed Conditions.

THINGS remained in this Posture some Years; but Otho (succeeding the Emperor Philip at his Death, which was ten Years after the

OTHO IV. Wager, by Virtue of the Agreement made between them, with the Consent of the States of the Empire, and the Imperial Dignity being confirm'd to him in an Assembly held for that Purpose at *Frankfort*) sent a remarkable Embassy to the King of *France* to notify his Election, remind him of the Wager, and desire him to perform his Promise, by delivering up the City of *Paris*, which he had chosen, according to the Liberty given him by their mutual Agreement.

THIS Compliment seemed something harsh to the King; accordingly he reply'd, that Things were no longer in the same Condition as at the time of laying the Wager, because he was then to win the Empire from his Competitor, which he, not having done, had himself lost the Wager a considerable Time, and that this was all the Answer he had to make; that as for the rest, if he had a mind to dispute it with him, he might do it any Way he thought fit, and he would reply by the same.

*He manages
the Clergy
dexterously.*

THE Emperor *Otho*, no ways satisfy'd with this Answer, and standing upon his Honour, resolv'd to push the Thing to the utmost, but first was willing to establish himself in the Empire. He had rais'd himself to it this second Time, not so much in consideration of the Right he pretended, as by his Address in procuring himself the Votes of the Bishops, and others of the Clergy, on his promising to abolish the Custom always retained by the former Emperors; which was, to seize for their own Profit not only the Lands and real Estates, but also the personal Estates of the Bishops, and other Incumbents, as Fiefs, to the Prejudice of their Heirs: I remarked this, because his not keeping his Promise served in the End as a Source of Discord.

AS SOON as *Innocent III.* heard of the Election of *Otho*, whom he esteemed his Friend, and thought so much the more devoted to the Holy See, in that he had declared openly for him against *Philip*, the Pope sent Legates to congratulate him, and offer to crown him if he would come into *Italy*. This Offer tempted the Emperor, whereupon he called a Diet at *Haguenau*, where his Journey was resolved on; however, he did not set out till 1209, and being arrived in *Lombardy*, was received in all Places as their Sovereign. From thence he went to hold a Diet at *Bologna*, where he got great Supplies of Men and Money; and, having formed a powerful Army, marched to *Rome*, where the Pope received him very well, and crowned him, on Condition he would leave *St. Peter's* Patrimony to the Church, that is to say, all the Countess *Matilda's* Succession, and moreover, according to others, that he would swear Obedience to the Pope. He made this Promise with the more Readiness, and from the same Motive as he did before to the Bishops of *Germany* before mentioned, without considering the Consequences; for a little after he shew'd 'twas only to attain his Ends, and that he was not so great a Bubble as was imagined.

OTHO IV.

1209.

His Coronation at Rome.

IN a little time Fortune offered him a favourable Opportunity to declare himself; for several of his Men, who were incamped under the Walls of *Rome*, going to see the City, the *Romans* picked a Quarrel with them, and it increas'd to such a height, that the Citizens taking Arms, above a thousand Imperialists were killed on the spot. Hereupon the Emperor complained to the Pope, and demanded Satisfaction, but could not obtain his Desire; however, he dissembled his Chagrin at this refusal, but,

OTHO IV. but, in the end, he made it a great handle for Discontent, besides his being dissatisfy'd with the Pope for taking Advantage of the Broils in Germany, to make himself Master of *Apulia*, the Marquisate of *Ancona*, and the Earldom of *Spoletto*, after first driving out his Officers. Wherefore he kept to himself his Design of discovering his Resentment at a proper Opportunity, and, continuing to act the same Part, pretended to be very well pleas'd with the Pontif, set out from *Rome*, and, to appearance, took the Road to *Germany*. But being arrived in *Lombardy*, he marched strait to *Milan*, where, meeting with a good Reception, he chose that City for his Residence, and distributed his Troops in Quarters in the Country to pass the Winter there.

Feint of the Emperor, who instead of returning to Germany, takes up his Residence at Milan.

1210.
He reconquers what the Pope had usurped from the Empire, whereupon his Holiness excommunicates him and stirs up the States of the Empire against him.

THE Spring following he took the Field, resolving to establish his Right and Authority in the usurped Countries by force: God favoured his Arms, he gained his Ends after some Victories, and entered again into Possession of all that had been taken from the Empire. *Innocent III.* was so much incensed hereat, that he excommunicated him, giving Orders to *Sigisfrid* Archbishop of *Mentz*, to publish this Excommunication throughout the Empire; upon which he accordingly, both in execution of the Pope's Command, and to resent the Emperor's not keeping his Promise, (of not using the ancient Right of the *Regalia* over the Ecclesiasticks) not only proclaimed and declared *Otho* excommunicated, and proscribed all over *Germany*, discharging the Princes, States and Cities from the Allegiance and Obedience they had sworn him, but, pushing his Point, summoned the States to proceed to the Election of a new Emperor. The Diet was held at *Bamberg*, where

where the King of *Bobemia*, the Dukes of *Bavaria* and *Austria*, the Landgrave *Herman* of *Thuringia*, and the other Ecclesiastick and secular Princes being met, they elected *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*, King of *Naples* and *Sicily*, being then about thirteen or fourteen Years old, and having been proclaimed King of the *Romans* from his Infancy, at the Desire of his Father *Henry VI.* Accordingly they immediately notified this Election to the Pope, and sent Ambassadors at the same time into *Sicily*, to declare it to *Frederick*.

~
Otto IV.

THIS Revolution obliged *Otto* to abandon *Italy*, and return with all speed to *Germany*, where he no sooner arrived but he held a Diet at *Nuremberg*, whereat, amongst others, were Duke *Henry*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, the Emperor's Brother, Duke *Henry* of *Brabant*, and the Duke of *Lorraine*, who having maturely weigh'd *Otto's* just Reasons for recovering the States and Countries usurped by the Court of *Rome* in *Italy*, advised him to make War upon those Princes, who, in complaisance to the Pope, had proceeded to a new Election, contrary to all Reason.

THE Emperor being encouraged by the Reasons of these Princes given in publick, deprived the King of *Bobemia* of his Kingdom, wherewith he invested his Son, who was come to the Diet to complain to the States and Princes that his Father the King of *Bobemia* had disowned him, in divorcing his Mother the Marchioness of *Misnia*, and marrying the King of *Hungary's* Daughter. He at the same time declared War against *Herman*, Marquis of *Thuringia*, after putting him to the Ban of the Empire; whilst *Henry* Count Palatine, *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, with some other Princes, attacked
and

OTHO IV. and ruined the Archbishop of *Mentz*, by his Order, which obliged that Prelate to withdraw, and take Refuge in foreign Countries.

AFTER these Advantages, the Emperor no longer doubted of his Re-establishment; but, to assure himself the better of it, judged it necessary to weaken the main Support of the Pope, and the Princes his Partizans in the Empire:

'Twas *Philip Augustus* King of *France*, whom he had long had a Design upon, on account of his Wager; and the Opportunity seemed the more favourable, as that Prince was at War with the King of *England* his Uncle. *Otho* then joined his Forces to the *English*, carrying likewise what Allies he could, so that the Confederate Army consisted of near 200,000 Men; but *Philip Augustus* utterly routed them at the famous Battle of *Bovines*; and the defeat of unfortunate *Otho* was so great, that he narrowly escap'd. He would have regained *Germany*, but was prevented by young *Frederick*, who had been there

*Frederick
received in
Germany.*

some Time with a powerful Army, to receive the Empire, and had been welcomed by all the World with open Arms. Thus *Otho*, seeing himself rejected and forsaken by all the Princes in *Germany*, resolved, in order to re-establish himself, to go again into the neighbouring Provinces, where he thought still to find Friends. There he levied many Troops, and joining with the Enemies of *France*, presented Battle again to King *Philip Augustus* near *Tournay*: It was very bloody, and the King was in great danger, but at last the *French* Arms were Victorious.

THE Emperor *Otho* escaped from the Fight, and finding himself without Refuge, sought a Shelter in his Territories, retiring to *Brunswick*, where he remained four Years without making

making any new Attempt; during which time he was an Example of Virtue by his Repentance, and finished this unfortunate Life with great Devotion in the Year 1218.



C H A P. XVII.

FREDERICK the Second.



FREDERICK II. being but nine Months old when his Father Henry II died, Constance his Mother had spared no Pains in his Education, nor to make him a great and virtuous Prince, nor was he wanting thereto by his good Temper and Wit; and, to improve himself the more, had learned the *Greek, Latin, German, French and Turkish* Languages. In particular, he followed the Steps of his Grandfather Frederick I, whose Name he bore, and whom he took for a Model. Like him, he held it for an inviolable Maxim, never to defer till To-morrow what could be done the same Day; imagining he had done nothing in an Affair, whilst any Thing remained undone. He was a very powerful Prince; for, besides the large Possessions he had by his Father and Mother, he inherited also the Duchies of *Suabia and Rottembourg* at the Death of his Uncle Philip, with other Territories, whereof he had taken Possession.

FREDE-
RICK II.

Frederick's
fine Educa-
tion, and
good Qua-
lities.

HAVING then been invited out of *Italy* into *Germany* from the Year 1212, and the Year following being confirmed in the Imperial Dignity by the Princes assembled at *Mentz*, where they

FREDE-
RICK II.

1250.
He is con-
firmed Em-
peror.

they paid him Homage, and took the Oath of Allegiance, as well as the Imperial Cities on the *Rhine*, he was crowned in 1215 at *Aix la Chapelle* with great Magnificence; and 'twas observed that, in return for the Favours God had till then shown him, he made a Vow to go in Person to the War in the *Holy Land*.

1219.
Prepares to
go into
Italy.

SOME Years after he called a Diet at *Frankfort*, where, having settled his most pressing Affairs, he demanded of the Princes and States to provide for his Equipage, according to the ancient Custom, on account of his Design to go to *Rome* for his Coronation. Hereupon they immediately set about furnishing him with all Things necessary, which being ready he set out for *Italy* in the Year 1220, and arrived at *Rome* in *September*, where he was crowned by Pope *Honorius III*, who succeeded *Innocent III*; and *Frederick*, after the example of his Predecessors, made great Presents in Money, and other Things of value, out of pure Liberality, which the Popes since that Time would willingly have converted into a due Acknowledgment, as if the Emperors were obliged to it for obtaining their Crown. *Frederick*, after his Coronation, received the Homage and Oaths of the States and Cities of *Italy*, and, having settled all Things in Peace and Tranquillity, by the assistance of the Princes of the Empire who attended him, retired into his Kingdom of *Naples*.

1220.
He is
crowned at
Rome.

THERE he found that *Richard* and *Thomas*, the two Brothers of the late Pope *Innocent*, with their Adherents, had made an Insurrection, and seized on one Part of the Kingdom; hereupon he immediately proceeded against the Rebels, and caused the Count *Richard* to be arrested, condemned, and sent into Exile in the Kingdom of *Sicily*. The Count *Thomas*, and some

some other of his Party, withdrew to *Rome*, where Pope *Honorius* received them with Joy; and some Bishops and Officers of the Inquisition being found guilty of this Revolt, were also driven out of the Kingdom, and deprived of their Offices and Benefices, which were supplied by others.

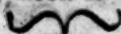
FREDERICK II.
1221.

POPE *Honorius* hearing the Complaints of these Exiles, exhorted the Emperor by Letters and Embassies to re-establish them in their Dignities and Offices; insinuating to him, that he had rashly assumed to himself the Office of Comptroller and Judge of the Ecclesiastick State, and that 'twas an Incroachment upon the Authority of the Holy See; and that if those Prelates and Officers had offended him in any wise, he ought to address himself to the Pope, as Head of the Ecclesiastical Order, to decide the Difference.

THE Emperor answered him, that he had been informed by the Princes of the Empire, and others, that ever since *Charlemagne's* Time the Emperors and Kings had a Sovereign Authority and Jurisdiction over the Ecclesiastick State; that they had promoted the Bishops and Abbots to their Dignities and Benefices, and had deprived them of them, in Case of Forfeiture or Misdemeanor; that his Grandfather *Frederick*, and his Father *Henry VI.*, had maintained this Jurisdiction entire; and that he, being rais'd to the same Imperial Dignity, resolv'd to have the same Authority; and that therefore he neither cou'd nor wou'd resign it to the Prejudice of the Empire, and his Successors.

THAT as to his Hereditary Kingdoms, his Mother *Constance*, and his Predecessors, who had always rendered great Respect, and been great Bene-

FREDE-
RICK II.



Benefactors to the Church of *Rome*, had to his Reign enjoyed the same Prerogative over the Clergy of *Naples* and *Sicily*; and that thus the Pope had no Reason to endeavour to deprive him of the Rights of his Sovereignty, and to assume the Quality of Judge over the Ecclesiasticks of those Kingdoms.

The Empe-
ror excom-
municated.

THE Nuntio who was sent to him, being returned to *Rome* with this Answer, the Pope held a Council or Synod, with the Cardinals and other Prelates, where they excommunicated the Emperor, put him to the Ban, confiscated the Imperial Dignity, with all his Hereditary Kingdoms and Territories, and discharged the Princes and States of the Empire from the Oath of Allegiance they had taken.

The Empe-
ror laughs
at the Ex-
communi-
cation.

THE Emperor did not much trouble himself about this Excommunication, but contented himself with answering coolly, that he would soon go to *Rome* to thank the Pope and Cardinals; but, without losing time, he immediately sent a Manifesto every where, especially through *Germany*, wherein having declared his Reasons, they were approved of by the Princes of the Empire: And, to strengthen the Justice of his Cause by his Presence, he went into *Germany*, leaving the Empress with his Son *Henry*, to govern the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* during his Absence. This Time he spent in regulating and pacifying all Things in the Empire; and, thinking it also proper to secure himself a Successor, he had his Son *Henry* declared King of the *Romans*, though he was then but twelve Years old. During these Transactions, the Empress *Mary* his Wife, who was Daughter to *Alphonso* King of *Arragon*, dying, her loss oblig'd him to return to *Italy*, and gave Birth

He returns
into Ger-
many.

Birth to a Reconciliation between the Pope and him.

FREDE-
RICK II.

JOHN DE BRIENNE, King of *Jerusalem*, being come to *Rome* to ask Assistance against the *Sultan* of *Egypt*, and having an only Daughter named *Toland*, the Emperor being a Widower, he proposed to give her in Marriage to him, with the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*; (reserving the Revenues thereof to himself during Life) on Condition that *Frederick* should accomplish the Vow he had made to go to the *Holy Land*. The Pope, who passionately desired to see all the Christian Princes engaged in the Recovery of the Holy Places, and who equally wanted the Emperor to be at a Distance, that he might be sole Master of *Italy*, approved mightily of this Proposal; and *Frederick* was immediately invited to *Rome*, for the Conclusion of this Affair. Accordingly he came, and having made Peace with the Pope, they concluded and signed the Articles of Marriage between him and *Toland*, who was Heiress to the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, in Right of her Mother; this was done, on Condition that in two Years he should march with an Army into the *Levant* to recover the *Holy Land*. In compliance with this Agreement Ambassadors were dispatched into *Syria*, to fetch the Princess, who was at *Ptolemais*, but she did not arrive at *Rome*, where the Emperor waited for her, till the beginning of the Year 1225, when the Marriage was celebrated with extraordinary Magnificence, the Pope himself performing the Ceremony; after which, he crowned *Toland*. But the Marriage was no sooner consummated, than his Holiness reminded *Frederick*, that the time for the Performance of his Promise approached, and press'd him to prepare for his Voyage.

1222.
Reconciliation of the Pope and Emperor, on Condition of his going to the Holy Land.

1225.

1225. 1

FREDERICK II.

1227.

THE Emperor endeavoured to be dispensed with, alledging divers Excuses, and managed Matters so well, that all the Pope could do was to get a fresh Promise, with an Oath on the holy Evangelists, that in two Years from the next *August*, without any more Excuses, he would march into the *Levant*, with sufficient Force to carry on the War vigorously, consenting to be excommunicated if he failed. But his Holiness could not see the Execution of this great Design which he had so much at Heart, for he died in the beginning of the Year 1227; and *Gregory IX*, a Relation of the two Counts, who (as has been observed) had been proscrib'd and banish'd the Kingdom of *Naples* by *Frederick*, succeeded *Honorius* in his Pontificate, and Maxims against the Emperor. In effect, he was no sooner advanced to *St. Peter's Chair*, but he dispatched a Legate *a Latere* to *Frederick*, to press him to perform his solemn Promise of going into *Syria*, and, in case of Refusal on any new Pretences, to threaten him with the Excommunication to which he had submitted himself by the last Agreement.

FREDERICK then, being no longer able to defer his Departure, seeing that several Princes, with great Numbers of Nobility, and others who were engaged in the *Croisade*, from all the Kingdoms in Christendom, were come to attend him, ordered his Fleet to be got ready with all Expedition, and set out from *Brundisium*, on the 11th of *August*, with the most magnificent Equipage, and the finest Troops in the World. But falling sick after three Days sail, or the Winds being contrary, as others say, he was obliged to return with his Family to *Brundisium*, contenting himself with sending his Army into the *Levant*.

THE

THE Pope, being incensed at the Emperor's quick Return, with the Consent of all the Cardinals, declared that *Frederick* had incurred the Sentence of Excommunication which he had imposed upon himself, in Case he did not execute his Promise of going in Person to the *Holy Land*, and declared him incapable of the Imperial Dignity. Hereat the Emperor was so much incensed, (as thinking the Cause for which he was returned was lawful, and more than sufficient to excuse him from that Punishment) that he sought all imaginable means to mortify the Pope; and succeeded so well by his Address, and the Power of *Frangipani*, and other rich Noblemen of *Rome*, that *Gregory*, fearing ill Treatment, was obliged to quit the City, and take Refuge at *Perusa*. 'Twas on this Occasion, and at this Juncture, that the Animosity of the Factions of the *Guelphs* and *Gibelins* began to appear, both at *Rome*, and in other Parts of *Italy*; the first of these espousing the Part of the *Holy See*, and the other that of the Empire, having remained in Inaction ever since the Reign of the Emperor *Conrad*, wherein they had their Rise.

NEVERTHELESS *Frederick* was press'd by his Friends to acquit himself of his Vow, that the Pope might no longer have any Ground for these Excommunications; and, on the other hand, he thought that 'twas necessary for him to take Possession of the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, as belonging to his Son *Conrad*, whom he had by *Toland* his Wife, lately deceased. Hereupon he again embarked in *August* 1228, and having pass'd over into *Cyprus*, landed at *Acon*, where he no sooner arrived but he was solicited by the *Saracens* to consent to a Truce, which he concluded in 1229, for ten Years, reserving to

1228.
The Emperor makes a Truce in Syria.

1229.

FREDERICK II.

1229.
He returns
from the
Holy Land,
and makes
War a-
gainst the
Pope.

the Christians the Kingdom and City of *Jerusalem*, where, having placed strong Garrisons, as well as in other Places, he was crown'd King of *Jerusalem*, a Title which has since been always retain'd by the Kings of *Sicily*. This done, he return'd to *Naples*, and found at his Arrival what he had very well foreseen, which was, that his Holiness had only sent him into *Syria* to make War against him in *Italy*.

GREGORY had already disown'd all that had been done in *Syria*, esteeming the Treaty he had made with the *Sultan*, as an Act unworthy of the Christian Name, whence he took a new Pretext not to absolve the Excommunication. *Frederick* seeing Things in this Posture, immediately put his Troops in a Condition to act, and retook the strong Places and Towns which the Pope had made himself Master of during his Absence, by the means of the Forces his Holiness had rais'd for *Syria*, whither, according to his Promise, he was to have sent them.

THE Emperor having thus driven out of his Dominions all the Garrisons placed there by the Pope, and having even ravag'd and pillag'd the Towns and Villages belonging to the Holy See, to the Gates of *Rome*, was advised by *St. Lewis* King of *France* to hearken to an Agreement: He consented, and for this end dispatch'd *Berthold* Patriarch of *Aquitain*, with the Bishops *Everard* of *Saltzbourg*, *Sefrid* of *Ratisbon*, *Sibold* of *Augsbourg*, and *Leopold* Duke of *Austria* to *Rome*; but the Pope receiv'd them so coolly, and would have carry'd his Pretensions so high, that they return'd without concluding any Thing. Notwithstanding this kind of a Repulse, *Frederick* sent again next Year *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, with the Grand Master of the *Teutonic* Order, who had better Success in

in their Negotiation, and the Advantage to conclude a Treaty of Peace with the Pope, on Condition of the Emperor's giving 120,000 Pieces of Gold, to recompence the Church for the Plunder of its Cities. This Treaty was ratify'd on both Sides, and the Ratifications being exchang'd, *Frederick* came to the Pope at *Anagni* where he was absolved from his Excommunication, and his Holiness, as a Mark of his sincere Reconciliation, entertain'd him very magnificently,

FREDE-
RICK II.

ONE would have thought this remarkable Agreement ought to have induced the Cites of *Lombardy*, (which had taken Advantage of the Divisions between the Pope and the Emperor, to withdraw themselves from his Obedience) to seek also an Accommodation: But, notwithstanding all the Negotiations us'd to engage them to it, they would not hear of it, and the Emperor was oblig'd to endeavour to reduce them by Force of Arms. He spent five Years herein without great Success, on Account of his being often diverted from it by other Affairs in the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*; he was even obliged to abandon the Enterprize, to go and remedy other Disorders that had sprung up in *Germany* during his long Absence. And as this would admit of no Delay, so he set out about the beginning of 1235, with so much the more Eagerness as he was inform'd of the ill Conduct of King *Henry* his Son, and of the Practices to raise a Conspiracy against him. He no sooner arriv'd there, but he apply'd himself with extraordinary Care to correct these Disorders, and to this Intent, in Conjunction with the Princes and States of the Empire, made several Decrees and Laws for the Administration of Justice, and Re-establishment of

1230.

1235.

FREDERICK II.

the Civil Government and Discipline, both with Regard to Seculars and Ecclesiasticks; in short, he omitted nothing that could secure the publick Tranquillity; For this Reason it was that his Son *Henry* being convicted of Rebellion, and of holding secret Correspondencies with some Princes, who had inspir'd him with those seditious Sentiments; the Emperor, instead of punishing, resolv'd to remove him, and send him Vice-Roy into *Sicily*. Nevertheless he only establish'd this good Order in *Germany*, that he might have Liberty to return to *Italy*, and once for all reduce the Cities in Alliance with *Lombardy* to his Obedience, and by this Means stifle the Spirit of Sedition which they diffus'd amongst their Neighbours; wherefore he caus'd Levies to be made every where, in order to compose a considerable Army, such as he should not fail of Success in his Design. During these Preparations he was sollicitated to marry again, and accordingly espous'd the Princess *Matilda*, Sister to the King of *England*. On the other hand, the Pope, apprehending the Emperor's Return into *Italy*, sent him a *Nuntio*, a Man of Wit and Experience, to endeavour to dissuade him from the Expedition, and accordingly he omitted nothing which he thought might induce him not to undertake it. He even propos'd to him, that if he would refer the Affair of the revolted Cities to his Holiness, he would engage to oblige them to return to their Duty, and submit themselves to the Obedience of the Empire. But *Frederick*, judging it was a Trap laid for him, dismiss'd the *Nuntio* without coming to any Conclusion with him, and remain'd firm in his Resolution.

1236.

HE set out then for his *Italian* Expedition, and as soon as he enter'd *Lombardy*, some States return'd

return'd to their Duty of their own Accord; but the chief Cities stood firm, trusting to the Succours they had received from the *Venetians*, and the Support they and their Confederates expected from *Henry* King of the *Romans*, who had engag'd in this Party at the Instigation of the Court of *Rome*. Besides this false Step, this Prince had continued his secret Practices with several *German* Potentates, that they might assist him in Case of Necessity, amongst the rest with the Duke of *Austria*, on whom the Emperor had conferr'd the Title of *King*. But this Conspiracy was spread into too many Places to be unknown to the Emperor, who was so incens'd at his Son, on his first hearing it, that (as one Passion drives out another) it dissipat'd all his Anger against the Pope, and even induced him to invite his Holiness to declare against *Henry*, and prohibit the Princes and States of the Empire from obeying or assisting him, on Pain of Excommunication. This Spiritual Authority being highly revered, retain'd all in their Duty; and the Emperor, for his Part, causing the Prince his Son to be narrowly watch'd, seiz'd and confin'd in a Castle in *Apulia*, wherein he afterwards died.

FREDE-
RICK I.

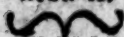
Prince
Henry's
Conspiracy
against the
Emperor his
Father.

THIS done, to put a final End to this Conspiracy, he order'd the Dukes of *Bohemia* and *Bavaria* to pursue *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, an Accomplice of *Henry's* Rebellion, till he should arrive himself to chastise him, as he accordingly did. For having settled Affairs in *Italy* in the best Order possible, and left his Difference with the Pope in some Appearance of an Accommodation he return'd to *Germany*, enter'd the Duke of *Austria's* Territories with Fire and Sword, and at last made himself Master of *Vienna*.

The Empe-
ror returns
to Germany.

1237.

FREDE-
RICK II.



AFTER this Expedition the Emperor assembled the States of the Empire, where he had his second Son *Conrad* elected King of the *Romans*, who was confirm'd the same Year in another Assembly held at *Spires*; thus having re-establish'd and settled Things on that side, he resolv'd in earnest upon his Return to *Italy*, having at Heart the Revolt of the Cities of *Lombardy*, which had fortify'd themselves, on Pretence of maintaining the Privileges granted them by *Frederick Barbarossa*.

The Emperor returns to Italy, and is Victorious.

HEREUPON the Emperor march'd thither with a fine and formidable Army, the Troops of the League being more numerous and stronger than before, whereupon *Padua* immediately surrender'd; but, to terrify the rest, he sack'd some Places that made Resistance, and on a sudden bent all his Powers against *Milan*, which was the Center of the League, and the Rendezvous of the *Venetians* and Confederates, who seeing their Army equal to the Emperor's, march'd out boldly to meet him. Upon this a bloody Battle was fought, the Success whereof was doubtful for some Hours, but at last Victory declared for the Emperor, their General *Petro Tiepolo*, Son to the Doge of *Venice*, and their other Commanders, being taken Prisoners, were all executed by the Hands of the Hangman. This done, he pursued his Advantage, turn'd his Arms against divers Places, burning some, and plundering others, but reserving *Milan* for the last Example of his Resentment.

1238.

POPE *Gregory* being sensibly touch'd at *Frederick's* Success, and his ill Usage of his Holiness's Officers, enter'd into the League with the *Venetians* and Cities of *Lombardy*, and was reconcil'd to *Rome*, whence he had been some Time absent. As soon as he return'd, he sent a

Nuntio

Chap. XVII. of the EMPIRE.

279

Nuntio to the Emperor to beg him, in Consideration of the many Favours he had received from the Holy Sec, to cease his Violence; but *Frederick*, having been inform'd of the Pope's entring into the Confederacy, and the Assistance he had secretly given the League, would make him no Answer; which oblig'd his Holiness to send three Cardinals, to whom he gave no better Satisfaction.

FREDE-
RICK II.

IN this Extremity the Pope, having Recourse to the same Arms he had us'd on other Occasions, on *Holy Thursday*, 1239, issued publicly an Excommunication against the Emperor, sending the Bull into *Germany* to sow a Division between *Frederick* and the Princes and States of the Empire, condemning by the same Bull those who should adhere to his Party, and remain Loyal. He also imagin'd to draw *St. Lewis* into his Interests, by sending a Legate to give him an ill Impression of *Frederick's* Person and Religion, offering him at the same Time the Empire for Prince *Robert* his Brother. But *St. Lewis* would not be prepossess'd in Prejudice of his Ally, and on his proffering the Empire, made him Answer, That supposing he were tempted to receive his Proposal, 'twas neither in the Pope's Power to confer the Empire, nor to depose Emperors.

The Pope
excommunicates the
Emperor.
1239.

WHEN *Frederick*, who was then at *Padua*, was inform'd of this Excommunication, he order'd his Answer to be read publicly before the whole Army by his Chancellor *Peter de Vignes*, thereby to give the Lie to the Aspersions cast upon him; he also sent this Answer into *Germany*, for the Defence of his Honour and Reputation; and it was found so reasonable, that all the Princes and States of the Empire remain'd firm to his Cause.

He makes a
publick
Answer to
the Excom-
munication.

THUS

**FREDE-
RICK II.**
He marches
to Rome,
but without
Success.

THUS, seeing there was nothing to be apprehended on that hand, he persisted in his Resolution of being reveng'd once for all on the *Romans*, and with this Intention suspended all other Designs, in order to march directly to *Rome*, thinking he had a Party there strong enough to oblige the *Romans* to open their Gates to him; but the Pope by his Preaching and Exhortations kept them in his Interest.

Factions of
the Guelphs
and Gibelins.

IN the mean while all *Italy* became a Prey to the two Parties of the *Guelphs* and *Gibelins*; the latter being for the Emperor, and the other for the Pope. These Distinctions caused Division and Slaughter, even in private Houses and Families, and neither the one nor the other gave any Quarter. *Frederick* was look'd upon by the *Guelphs* as a *Mahometan*, and an Enemy of the *Christian* Name; and he, for his Part, never forgave a *Guelph*: But finding that he could gain no Advantage over *Rome*, he march'd towards *Naples*, taking ample Revenge of the *Guelphs* every where, not granting Quarter to any who were found with Arms in their Hands, banishing and imprisoning the Ecclesiasticks, even to the Cardinals themselves. In a Word, this Animosity lasted till *Gregory's* Death, which happen'd in the Year 1241, without either the Pope or the Emperor's condescending to yield in the least to one another.

1241.

*Gregory
dies, and
Innocent
succeeds him
in his En-
mity a-
gainst the
Emperor.*

AFTER the Decease of *Gregory IX.*, and *Celestine IV* his Successor, who enjoy'd the Pontificate but eighteen Days, the Holy See remain'd vacant for twenty Months, during which *Frederick* often solicited the Cardinals to fill it up, but would not nevertheless release those whom he had imprison'd. But at last, the others insisting on the Liberty of their Brethren, to the End they might proceed unanimously to the Election

Chap. XVII. of the EMPIRE.

281

lection of a Pope, he was oblig'd to consent to their Enlargement. Hereupon all of them resorting to *Anagni*, they elected *Innocent IV*, who was of the Number of those Cardinals that had express'd a great Esteem and Friendship for the Emperor; whereupon that Prince's Ministers were the more pleas'd at his Exaltation, in that they flatter'd themselves with the Hopes of a sincere Union between the Church and the Empire. But *Frederick*, being more clear-sighted than they, always told them they had no Reason to rejoice, because he should thereby lose the Friendship of a Cardinal, and acquire the Hatred of a Pope; which Prophecy prov'd true in the sequel.

FREDERICK II.
24 June,
1243.

THE greatest Application of the new Pontif, and the Cardinals, was, to procure the Peace of *Italy*; but the Emperor resolving not to give Ear thereto, but on Condition of keeping what he possessed; and his Holiness, on the other hand, demanding the Restitution of the Cities usurp'd from the Church of *Rome*, representing to him that, without such a Restitution, there could be no sincere nor lasting Peace, all the Negotiations prov'd abortive. At last they agreed to have an Interview in the City of *Cassello*, to treat and conclude on all Affairs amicably. But whether it was true, that the Pope was inform'd of the Emperor's having a Design to seize him there, as was given out by his Holiness, or whether he caus'd this Report to be spread, that he might have a specious Pretence to avoid this Interview with *Frederick*, he would not appear at the Place and Time appointed; and, being inform'd that the Emperor was very much incens'd at it, he took a Resolution to fly for Refuge into *France*, as fearing the Effects of his Resentments. He even set about

The Reason
of the new
Broils be-
tween the
Pope and
the Emperor.

1244.

FREDERICK II.


1245.

The Council of Lyons
 whither
 the Pope
 cites the
 Emperor.

about the Execution of this Design immediately, and, having sent secretly for the *Genoese Gallies*, which came to attend him at *Civita Vecchia*, he went thither with all speed, and from thence to *Genoa*, whence, going to *Savoy*, he arriv'd at *Lyons* in *December* the same Year, 1244. There he gave Orders for the holding a general Council, on the twenty fourth of *June* following, and sent his Bulls to the Archbishops, Bishops, and Prelates of *Germany, Italy, France*, and other Kingdoms, summoning them thither to consult the Welfare and Safety of the Church. Upon these Citations a great Number of Prelates resorting to *Lyons*, 'twas immediately resolv'd that the Emperor should be cited to appear at the Council, to clear himself of what was laid to his Charge, threatening him with the Thunder of the Church, if he fail'd coming. This Citation seem'd so much the stranger to *Frederick*, in that his Holiness set himself up for Judge and Sovereign; whereas from all Antiquity the Emperors had call'd the Councils themselves, where the Pope and the Prelates paid them due Respect and Obedience, as to their Sovereigns; besides he consider'd that, if there was any Room to proceed against him by Course of Justice, it could only be done before the Princes and States of the Empire, both Ecclesiasticks, and Seculars.

The Emperor instead
 of going to
 the Council,
 sends, and
 is excom-
 municated.

HOWEVER he sent his Ambassadors to *Lyons*, who strongly refuted the Pope's Accusations, and justify'd the Emperor so well, that some declared for him, nevertheless that did not hinder *Innocent's* excommunicating him. *Frederick* being inform'd of this Sentence issued against him, seem'd not to value it, and indeed it appear'd by the Sequel, that he did not trouble himself about it; he even said out of Gallantry
 That

That before this Excommunication he obey'd the Pope and the Ecclesiastical Laws; but since his Holiness had exempted him from it, he no longer ow'd them either Respect or Obedience; but however he remain'd still Emperor as he was before, and enjoy'd that Dignity till his decease, having preserv'd the Affection and Fidelity of best Part of the Princes, Nobles, and Cities of the Empire.

THE Pope was so much chagrin'd at this Contempt, that he could have wish'd never to have thought on it, especially seeing that his own Subjects would bear the Burthen of this Excommunication; however, finding himself oblig'd to maintain what he had done, he manag'd some Princes of Germany so well, that he perswaded them to proceed to the Election of a King of the Romans. The three Ecclesiastical Electors, and the Bishops of Bremen, Strasbourg, Metz, and Spire, with the Duke of Brabant, and Henry Landgrave of Thuringia, were of this Number. They assembled on Ascension-Day 1246 at Frankfort, and, having deliberated upon this Election, declared Henry Landgrave of Thuringia, King of the Romans, who was some Time after surnam'd King of the Priests.

Some States
of the Em-
pire elect a-
nother King
of the Ro-
mans, who
dies after
some vain
Attempts.

1246.

THIS Election was made in Prejudice of Conrad the Emperor's Son, who, as has been before observed, had been crown'd King of the Romans in the Year 1237, after the Death, and in the Room of Henry his elder Brother. To strengthen the Party of this new Monarch, the Pope endeavour'd to procure him all Manner of Assistance, and even presented him with 25,000 Marks of Silver to enable him to maintain the War against Conrad, whom the Emperor his Father had left in Germany, as his Lieutenant; insomuch that Henry was in a Condition

FREDE-
RICK II.

Condition to offer him Battle, where he gain'd a considerable Advantage over him. After this he made an Irruption into the Dukedom of *Snabia*, *Frederick's* hereditary Country, and had taken *Reutlingen*, but for the Resistance of the Citizens, who defended themselves so valiantly, that he was oblig'd to retire. He also attack'd the City of *Ulm*, but was wounded in the Assault by an Arrow, whereof he died some Days after.

1147.

THE Emperor, seeing Things in this Posture, resolv'd to go to *Lyons* to justify himself in Person to his Holiness, and be reconcil'd to him, whereupon he set out under the safe Conduct he had obtain'd of the King of *France*, leaving the Affairs in *Italy* under the Management of *Entius* his natural Son, King of *Sardinia*. But he was no sooner in *Piedmont* than he heard that the Pope's Partizans had surpriz'd *Parma*, at the same Time that *Entius* was march'd out with a Part of the Garrison to attack *Brescia*. This News obliging *Frederick* to abandon his first Design, made him resolve to return back into *Italy*, where he obstinately bent himself upon the Siege of *Parma*, but as he found that this Place, being well provided, was vigorously defended, he resolv'd to take it by Famine. Hereupon he surrounded it with a high Wall, and caus'd a new City to be built close by it, which he called *Victory*, and which in a little Time was as well peopled as any other City in *Italy*. The Emperor, persisting in his Resolution to pursue the Siege of *Parma*, spent many Months therein, letting his Affairs go to Ruin every where else, without stirring to redress them, This gave *Innocent*, and all the Partizans of the Holy See such an Advantage over him, that they held an Assembly of several Princes of the Empire

Empire both Ecclesiastical and Secular near *Cologne*, with all the Ease imaginable, where they elected *William* Count of *Holland* King of the *Romans*, in the Room of the Landgrave of *Thuringia*. The Cities of *Cologne*, *Mentz*, and *Strasbourg* approved of this Election; but *Worms*, *Spires*, *Landau*, *Weissembourg*, and the other Cities of *Suabia* and *Bavaria*, continued faithful to the Emperor and King *Conrad*, in spite of the Pope's Excommunications.

FREDERICK II.


IN the mean while *Frederick*, being still obstinately bent upon the Siege of *Parma*, liv'd encompass'd with a Croud of implacable Enemies; and, as they could not work his Destruction by open War, they bethought themselves of effecting it by Poison, taking an Advantage of an Indisposition that oblig'd him to keep his Bed. In order to this, they not only corrupted his first Physician, both by Bribes and strong Persuasions, but they also gain'd over *Peter de Vignes*, a Native of *Capua*, his Chancellor and intimate Confident, and by their Means 'twas resolv'd to make him take Poison in a Dose of Physick. But the very Day that the Draught was to have been given, the Emperor was secretly appriz'd of their Treason; wherefore, when the Physician came to present him the Cup, that Prince refus'd it; upon which *Peter de Vignes* began to beg him to take it, assuring him it would do him good, that himself had oftentimes drank the like, and found Benefit by it.

They attempted to poison the Emperor, but he punishes the Contrivers.

THE Physician also pressing him on the other Hand; *Frederick*, looking fixedly upon him, order'd him immediately to drink off the Half to his Health; at which Command the Physician being surpriz'd, had recourse to Artifice, and, pretending to make a false Step in retiring

FREDE-
RICK II.

firing back, spill'd half the Draught. But not being able to do it so dextrously as not to have the Trick perceiv'd, both by the Emperor and his Attendants, *Frederick* order'd him and the Chancellor to be immediately seiz'd; and made a Criminal, who had been condemn'd to Death, drink off what remained in the Glass, whereof he died that Instant. As there was no Need of farther Proof to convict them, the Emperor commanded the Physician to be strangled forthwith; and causing the Chancellor's Eyes to be put out, deliver'd him up to the Discretion of the Inhabitants of *Pisa*, his mortal Enemies. But this miserable Traytor knock'd out his own Brains, by running his Head against a Pillar; thus preventing, like another *Sampson*, both their Derision and Revènge.

The Empe-
ror's Camp
plundered
and razed.

18 Feb.
1248.

HOWEVER Fortune, not content with threatening *Frederick*, at last declar'd wholly against him; for as he pursu'd the Siege of *Parma* slowly, as has been before observ'd, and as it usually happens, that People grow careless about any thing of long Continuance, he was not enough upon his guard. The Besieged being appriz'd hereof, form'd a Design to carry him off from his new City, *Vidory*, where he kept both his Camp and his Court. Wherefore, till they could put this in Execution, they sally'd out and skirmish'd as usual; and the appointed Day being come, they likewise sent out small Parties to harrafs the Besiegers, and draw them on to an Engagement; but as the Battle grew hot, the whole Garrison of *Parma* sally'd out, cut most Part of the Imperialists in pieces, and, pursuing the others, entered pell-mell into the Camp with them, and put to the Sword all they met. They would have made Resistance, but were routed every where, and the Empe-
ror

for himself being surprized, was forced to have recourse to Flight for his safety, mount his Horse in all haste, and make his escape, without Arms, to *Cremona*, during which the *Parmezans* plundered his Palace, and the Camp, and entirely destroyed the new City.

FREDERICK II.

THE News of this Victory being spread throughout *Italy*, not only encouraged the Party of the *Guelphs* infinitely, and heightened the Reputation of the Legate *Gregory of Montelongo*, who had the Conduct of the Enterprize, but also very much disheartened the *Gibelines*. As

for the Emperor he indeed did not lose Courage, but immediately levy'd as many Forces as possible, both those who had fled with him, and the *Gibelins*, who flocked to him from all Parts. But

Entius the Emperor's Son defeated and taken Prisoner.

this Blow having rendered him much less formidable than before, no Town that was any thing considerable would receive him; and, to add to his Disgrace, being in *Tuscany*, he heard, that *Entius* his natural Son, King of *Sardinia*, whom he had entrusted with the Command of his Troops, having marched against *Bologna*, had been defeated and taken Prisoner by the Inhabitants. This afflicted the Emperor the more, in that he could never get him out of their Hands, whatever Ransom he promis'd them, insomuch that that Prince remained almost twenty Years in Prison, at the end whereof he died.

1249.

FREDERICK, finding himself without Remedy, took a Resolution to return into his own Territories at *Naples*, to reinforce his Army, raising Troops on all Hands; but whether he had some Foresight of his Death, or whether the State of *Germany* (where his Son *Conrad* was engaged with the new King of the *Romans*, *William of Holland*) obliged him to

Frederick retires into his Kingdom of Naples.

1250.

FREDE-
RICK II.

think of his private Affairs, he resolved to divide his Dominions, viz. the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Naples*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Jerusalem*, and the Duchy of *Suabia*, amongst his Sons, that is, *Conrad* King of the *Romans* his eldest, *Henry*, or, according to others, *Jordan*, the next to him, *Frederick* Son to *Henry* his eldest Son by his first Wife, and two natural Sons *Entius* and *Manfred*. To the latter he gave the Principality of *Tarentum*, and the Government of his hereditary Dominions in *Italy* for ten Years; to *Entius* the Kingdom of *Sardinia*; to *Frederick*, *Austria*; and to *Henry* the Kingdom of *Sicily*, leaving to *Conrad* the Kingdoms of *Naples*, *Jerusalem*, *Italy*, the Duchy of *Suabia* and the Empire. He had besides two Daughters married, one to *Albert* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, and the other to the Landgrave of *Hesse*. Some Days after he died of a Fever the 13th of *December*, the same Year, at the Age of Fifty-five.

He was a Prince praise-worthy, in that he was of a firm, resolute Spirit, lov'd Study and Glory, and was a great Warrior; however, he was so violent in his Revenge, and, on the other hand, so complaisant to Women, that these two Passions have cast a Blemish upon his Reputation.





C H A P. XVIII.

CONRAD the Fourth.



WE have already seen how *Conrad* was elected and crowned King of the *Romans*, in the Room of his elder Brother when but eight Years old ; but we did not observe that ten Years after his Father *Frederick* gave him in marriage *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*. Nor must we pass over a Battle which he lost against *Henry* of *Thuringia*, called the King of *Priests* ; for all the Ecclesiasticks being against him, he was near losing his Life by the Treason of the Bishop of *Ratisbon*, and the Abbot of *St. Emeran* ; it happened after this manner :

CONRAD
IV.



KNIG *Conrad* had taken Possession of the City of *Ratisbon* some time before, whither he retired after the Battle, and took up his Lodging with a small Retinue in the Abbey of *St. Emeran*. The Bishop, resolving to take Advantage of so favourable an opportunity to perpetrate his execrable Design, sent some trusty Soldiers in the Night to assassinate him when he was at rest ; but by good Fortune he changed his Bed that Night, and that proved his safety. For the Murderers killed two of his Attendants, believing *Conrad* to be one of them ; and the Assassins no longer keeping any Measures, but only thinking to make their Escape, the Prince, awaking at the Noise, had time to regain his Army, which was encamped before the City.

Conrad escapes the greatest Danger by a narrow good Fortune.

CONRAD
IV.Conrad
goes to
Italy, and
dies there.

THE next Day he ordered the Bishop to be seiz'd, and the Abbey demolished, condemning him to perpetual Imprisonment, and depriving the Abbot of his Benefice. As for *Hochfels*, who had killed his two Servants, and was fled, he was crush'd in Pieces some Days after by a Thunderbolt. As soon as *Conrad* received News of his Father's Death, which happened, as has been observed, in *Italy*, A. D. 1253, he assumed the Title of Emperor, and set out from *Germany* for his hereditary Dominions, whereof he took Possession without any Obstacle, all but the Cities of *Naples* and *Capua*, which had thrown themselves under the Protection of the Holy See. This obliged him immediately to march all his Troops towards *Naples*; but, in spite of all his Efforts, he could not make himself Master of it, till after a Siege of eight Months. He did not possess it long, for falling Sick, after having several other Disputes with the Holy See, he died the 22d of May, 1254, leaving only one Child named *Conradin*, by his Wife *Elizabeth* of *Bavaria*.

SOME Authors will have it that he was poisoned by his natural Brother *Manfred*, Prince of *Tarentum*, who, taking Advantage of young *Conradin's* Minority whom his Father had left in *Germany*, usurped the two Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*.



CHAP.



C H A P. XIX.

WILLIAM of Holland.



WILLIAM II of that Name, Count WILLIAM of *Holland*, Son to *Florent IV*, and *Mabaut* of *Brabant*, was elected King of the *Romans*, A. D. 1247, at the Age of twenty, in an Assembly held at the Town of *Veringia*, near *Cologne*, wherein were several Princes of the Empire, who were in the Pope's Interest, and declared Enemies to the Emperor, and his Son King *Conrad*. As the Count thought it of the last Importance for him to be crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*, which City espous'd *Conrad's* Party, he made himself Master of it after a pretty long Siege, which lasted till the Year following, and was crowned there after the usual Form; which done, he gained a considerable Advantage in a Battle fought between them, where the latter was defeated.

ON his hearing of the Emperor *Frederick's* Death, he immediately assumed all the Ensigns of the Imperial Authority, the Pope himself confirming him in the Empire. This done, to enable himself the better to oppose *Conrad*, he took to Wife the Daughter of *Otho* Duke of *Brunswick*, whom he marry'd in the City of *Brunswick*, on whose wedding Night there happened a very remarkable Accident. Two Taylors working on the Cloaths of the new married Couple near their Chamber, and carelessly letting the Candle fall upon some Straw, it took

WILLIAM Fire, and could not be extinguished. The two Taylors perished in the Flame, and the new married Couple saved themselves in their Shirt and Shift only, with so much precipitation, that they abandoned their Jewels, Cloaths, and all their Furniture, to the Mercy of that cruel Element.

Another Misfortune that happened to the Emperor William.

THIS unfortunate Emperor was a second Time insulted by Fortune very dangerously, in the Year 1254, when he was at *Utrecht*, to deliberate on Means to take a Journey to *Rome*, whither the Pope invited him to be crowned; for he was wounded by a violent stroke with a Stone, thrown at him by an unknown Hand, so that his Life was in great Peril.

A third Misfortune where this Prince loses his Life.

AFTER this he undertook an Expedition against the *Friezlanders*, who were revolted, where he met with the third and last Misfortune; for this Prince going in *February* over a frozen *Morass*, to reconnoitre the Town of *Hoch-Wende*, unaccompany'd by any of his Men, the Ice broke under his Horse, and he stuck in the Mire. The Garrison, having observed him, sallied out of the Town, ran to him, and kill'd him, without knowing him, carrying of his Body into the Town, where some Inhabitants, finding it was the Emperor, were infinitely alarmed. Wherefore they interred him secretly in one of the Townsmen's Houses, apprehending the Anger of the Princes of *Germany*, for having lifted up their Hands against their Sovereign. Thus this young Prince ended his Life unfortunately, *A.D.* 1256.

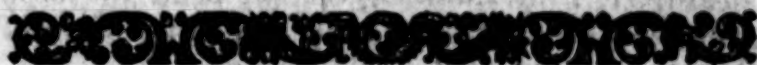
1256.
The different Factions cause great Disorders in Germany.

IN the mean while, the Elections of the Landgrave of *Thuringia*, and the Count of *Holland*, both whereof were effected by the Intrigues of the Court of *Rome* against *Frederick II*, had divided *Germany* into Factions. In short,

short, the Disorders there were so very great, that Men no longer regarded the Laws, either divine or human, but the Ecclesiasticks were inveterate against the Laymen, and the strongest oppress'd the weak. Some Princes and Cities had even been forced to enter into a mutual Alliance for the Security of the Highways and Commerce. This League had been agreed on between the Cities of *Mentz, Worms, Spire, Frankfort, Bingen and Oppenheim*, from the beginning of the Year 1254; and *Lewis Count Palatine* seeing that these united Cities had been successful in this League, which had been renewed for nine Years, enter'd also into it. By his example *Gerard Elector of Mentz, Conrad Elector of Cologne, Arnold Archbishop of Treves, Jacob Bishop of Metz*, and the Abbot of *Fulda, Conrad Wiltgraf, Richard Count of Catzenelebogen, Frederick Count of Leiningen, Bertold Count of Ziegenhagen, Ernich and Godefride Wiltgraves, Pappo Lord of Tubingen, Ulrick Count of Baor, the Count of Wirnberg, Sophia Landgrave of Thuringia, Adelaida or Alix Countess of Leiningen, the Lords of Tireberg, Ulrick of Mintzenberg, Gerlach of Limbourg, Philip of Hennekeufelt, Philip of Falkenstein, the Lord of Staremburg, the Cup-Bearer of Erbach, the Steward of Alzey, Henry of Ernberg, Runbof of Steinbach, the Cities of Cologne, Strasbourg, Basil, Zurich, Fribourg, Brijac, Colmar, Schelestat, Haguenau, Weissembourg, Neustadt, Wimpfen, Heidelberg, Lauterbourg, Fricdeberg, Wetzlar, Glelnhausen, Marbourg, Altsfelt, Fulda, Mulhausen, Achasfenbourg, Seligstadt, Diebach, Bacbarach, Wezel, Boppart, Andernach, Bonn, Nens, Aix la Chapelle, Munster, Bremen, Bra-venberg, Hirschfelt, and others, making together sixty Towns, enter'd into the same League.*

The Union of some States for their mutual Defence, and thereby establishing of the publick Peace.

These Confederates took off the Toll which had been unjustly laid upon Rivers, and increas'd during the Troubles, and re-established Peace in their Territories. But it did not continue long; which Misfortune happened thro' the Malice of those who would make their Advantage of the Disorders, as they had before done.



C H A P. XX,

RICHARD *and* ALPHONSO.

RICHARD
and AL-
PHONSO.

The Crown
is offered to
Richard of
England,
who accepts
it, and ob-
tains it by
the In-
trigues of
Part of
the States
of the Em-
pire.

AFTER the Emperor *William's* Death, the Roman Empire being left without a Head, the Princes often assembled to choose one, without being able to come to any Agreement; no Prince being willing to accept of that Dignity. At last *Conrad* Archbishop of *Cologne* sent into *England*, to offer it to *Richard* Duke of *Cornwal*, who accepted thereof, and accordingly went into *Germany*, though others say, that this Archbishop was himself over in *England* to present this Dignity to *Richard*. Be that true or not, 'tis certain, that the Imperial Authority was in the Hands of the Ecclesiastical Princes of the *Rhine*. This, in particular, was observed concerning this very Archbishop, that being a Prelate entirely devoted to the Interest of *Rome*, he had by his Address, since *Frederick's* Excommunication, raised three Princes successively to the Dignity of King of the *Romans*, viz. *Henry* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, *William* Count of *Holland*, and Duke *Richard*.

'Tis

'Tis true, as to this latter, the Archbishop foreseeing the Difficulty there would be in procuring him the Imperial Crown, without the Assistance of the Archbishop of *Mentz*, who had been detained Prisoner by *Albert of Brunswick* a whole Year, engaged *Richard*, from whom he had already had considerable Presents, to pay 8000 Marks of Silver more, for the Ransom of the Archbishop of *Mentz*, on Condition he would assist him with his Vote and good Offices to obtain the *Roman Scepter*. Accordingly the Archbishop of *Mentz* being set at Liberty, immediately called a Diet at *Frankfort*, which was held in 1257, on the Octave of the *Epiphany*, when the Princes that assisted proceeded to the Election of *Richard*. The Princes were the two Archbishops of *Cologne* and *Mentz*, and *Lewis* Count Palatine, with his Brother *Henry*, and some others who were persuaded by the two Prelates to follow their Advice.

RICHARD
and AL-
PHONSO.

On the other side, the Archbishop of *Treves*, and divers other Princes, refusing to be present at this Election, form'd another Assembly the Lent following, and gave their Suffrages for *Alphonso* King of *Castille*, Sir-nam'd the *Astrologer*. The Archbishop of *Treves* had already gain'd the Votes of the King of *Bobemia*, the Duke of *Saxony*, and the Marquis of *Brandenburg* in writing, in Favour of this King; after which they dispatch'd the Bishops of *Spires* and *Constance*, with an Account of his Election. He received them very favourably, and accepted the Crown, but being engaged in a War with the *Moors*, it hinder'd him from going at that Time into *Germany*. However, he sent back the same Ambassadors before hand, after having treated them magnificently, sending by them Letters,

The rest of
the States of
the Empire,
chose Al-
phonso of
Castille,
who accepts
of it, but
can't leave
Spain.

RICHARD
and AL-
PHONSO.

Richard is
crown'd, but
not being
able to sup-
port the
Expence, he
returns to
England,
where he
dies.

1258.

Letters, and Presents to the Electors, and other Princes of the Empire.

NEVERTHELESS they who chose Duke Richard, pursued their Undertaking, and conducted him sometime afterwards to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crown'd on *Ascension-Day*. This Ceremony was no sooner over, but he went to visit some Towns along the *Rhine*, viz, *Cologne*, *Boppard*, *Wexel*, *Mentz*, *Oppenheim*, *Frankfort*, *Worms* and *Spire*s, which paid him the usual Homage, but, to use that Expression, 'twas but a Fire of Straw. For this Prince having drain'd his Treasure by reason of his great Liberality in buying the Votes of the Electors, and being likewise without Credit, or any Way to recover himself, and enable him to sustain this his high Title with Honour, was oblig'd to leave *Germany*, and return to *England*, where he ended his Days in 1271.

Alphonso
remains in
his own
Dominions.

AFTER Richard's Death, *Alphonso* had undoubtedly enjoy'd the Empire in Peace, but his Troubles and Wars with the *Moors* increasing daily, it was impossible for him to leave his Dominions, and take upon him the Charge of the Imperial Dignity, tho' he always retain'd the Title of Emperor. This long Delay, at last disgusting the States of the Empire, occasion'd a new Election, (whereof we shall make mention hereafter) which took effect, notwithstanding the Pretensions of King *Alphonso*, who liv'd till the Year 1284.





CHAP. XXI.

An INTERREGNUM.



UTHORS are divided in their An INTER-
REGNUM.
Opinions concerning the Time of
this *Interregnum*; some of them Divers O-
pinions con-
cerning this
Interreg-
num.
making it last twenty eight Years,
that is, from the Year 1245, when

Pope *Innocent IV* being at *Lyons*, excommuni-
cated *Frederick II*, till 1273, when *Rodolphus*
Count of *Hapsbourg* was elected Emperor, with-
out comprehending either *Henry Landgrave* of
Thuringia, *William* Count of *Holland*, or *Richard*
Duke of *Cornwall*, in the Number of the Kings
of the *Romans*. But if we date it from the
Beginning of the Year 1259, when King *Richard*
left *Germany*, to 1273, when *Rodolphus* was
chosen, *Germany* was but fifteen Years without
a Head.

DURING this Time the Empire experienced The dread-
ful Con-
fusion of
the Affairs
of the Em-
pire during
the Inter-
regnum.
1160.
what is said in the seventeenth and twenty first
Chapters of *Judges* to have befallen the Chil-
dren of *Israel*, that is, as there was no King,
every Man did what was Right in his own Eyes;
for there was no Safety for any one through-
out *Germany*, but the Strongest oppress'd the
Weakest, without having Regard to the Consti-
tution of the Empire. These Disorders were
not confined to *Germany* alone, but spread even
beyond the *Alps*, and most Part of the Cities
and States of *Italy*, that were Fiefs of the Em-
pire, either set up for Republicks, or acknow-
ledged

AN INTER-
REGNUM.

ledged particular Persons for their Princes and Sovereigns: In short, all was in Confusion. We have even but a very confus'd Account of these Times, most Writers contenting themselves with deploring the unhappy State of *Germany*, without informing us of the Particulars. Wherefore we shall omit the Recital, that we may pass over an infinite Number of unjust Acts, and Usurpations which dishonoured the *German* Name during this *Interregnum*. But I must not forget the most remarkable Accident that can ever happen; for it relates too much to *Germany* not to be mentioned, tho' the Scene of this Tragedy lay in States independent of the Empire: I say it relates too much to *Germany*, in that one sees the last Prince of one of her most powerful Houses end his Days after a very tragical Manner.

1261.
The War
of Naples
between
Charles
Duke of
Anjou, and
Manfred
and Con-
radin the
last Duke of
Suabia.
1263.

THE Emperor *Conrad IV* had left one Son, yet an Infant, who was named *Conradin*; and *Manfred*, the Emperor *Frederick's* Bastard, seeing that all the House of *Suabia*, to whom the Kingdom of *Naples* belonged, was under the Government of a Child, had made himself Master of this Kingdom, and was become so powerful, that he gave Umbrage to *Urban IV*, which occasioned *Manfred's* Ruin. For the Pope, that he might not always have a Master so near him, sent in the Year 1264, and offered the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* to *Charles* Count of *Provence* and *Anjou*, Brother of *St. Lewis*, who accepted of them. Hereupon *Urban* dying towards the End of this Year, *Clement IV* who succeeded him, confirm'd the Choice his Predecessor had made of *Charles*, and sent into *France* to press him to come and take Possession of those Kingdoms.

1264.

ON these earnest Intreaties, this Prince immediately set his Affairs in Order, arm'd powerfully, and marched strait to *Rome*, where he waited for his Wife *Beatrix*, and the Rest of the Troops which she commanded. As soon as that Princess had join'd the King her Husband (for he had already been declared King in a publick Ceremony) the Pope, who was not then at *Rome*, gave Power to five Cardinals to perform the Solemnity of his Coronation. Accordingly he was crown'd with his Wife on *Twelfth-Day* 1266, on Condition of his holding his Kingdoms of the Holy See, doing Homage, and taking an Oath of Allegiance to her, and paying her Yearly the Sum of 60,000 Ducats as an Acknowledgment for his Fief. This done, he put himself at the Head of his Army, and being seconded by the *Guelphs*, who flocked over to his Party, he gained Advantages over *Manfred*. At last coming to an Engagement, he gave him Battle, and defeated him, and *Manfred* being kill'd in the Fight, *Charles* thus became easily Master of the two *Sicily's*. In the mean while *Conradin* Duke of *Suabia*, being then about fifteen Years old, hearing of his Uncle *Manfred's* Death, took upon him the Title of King of both *Sicily's*, which belonged to him by hereditary Right, notwithstanding *Manfred's* Usurpation: And being spurred on by the *Gibelins*, who could not bear to see the Party of the *Guelphs* raised in the Person of *Charles*, he resolved to hazard all, and dispute with him by Force of Arms a Crown to which he had so much Right. To this end he levied as many Troops as he could, hasten'd to *Italy* by long Marches, and passed the *Alps* in 1267. There he at first defeated one of *Charles's* Lieutenants, and, being elate with this Victory, flattered

AN INTER-
REGNUM.

1266.

1267.

INTER-
REGNUM.

flattered himself with the hopes of causing himself to be proclaim'd Emperor, and this with the more Appearance of Probability, as one *Honorius* a German, and distant Relation to *Conradin*, was Senator of *Rome*. With this View he march'd towards this Capital, where he was magnificently received as Emperor by *Don Henry de Castille*, who had been appointed Governor by *Clement IV.* This *Don Henry* was Brother to *Alphonso* of *Castille*, who had been acknowledged Emperor, and having been driven out of his native Country by some Intrigues, was come to throw himself into the Pope's Arms.

1268.

CHARLES having Advice of *Conradin's* coming into *Italy*, and finding he must put all to the hazard, went into *France* to desire Assistance, and managed Matters so well, that he rais'd a considerable Body of Forces, wherewith he returned into *Italy* in the Year 1268; and meeting *Conradin*, who had already made himself Master of *Sicily*, near *Alva*, judged it a favourable Opportunity to decide the Quarrel by a Battle, and so much the rather, in that Fortune having conducted him to an advantageous Post, he knew how to make the best of it. For leaving his best Troops in Ambush behind a little Hill, when the Battle grew hot, and had lasted above three Hours, so that his Men began to give Way, he immediately rushed out from his Ambuscade, and charged so vigorously upon *Conradin's* Men, who were already wearied, that he entirely routed them. *Conradin*, with *Frederick* of *Austria*, who accompanied him in this Expedition, and *Don Henry* of *Castille*, sought their Safety by Flight, but were stopped by the Way, disguised like Grooms, whereof *Charles* being apprized, sent to seize, and put them in Prison. But some time after, Pope

Clement

Clement before his Death, having, as is said, sent him this Advice, *Conradi vita, Caroli mors*, *Caroli vita, Conradi mors*, he caus'd *Conradin* and *Frederick* to be beheaded the same Year in *Naples*, as Usurpers, although the latter had only served his Friend in a just War, against a Prince on whom he had no Dependence; and the former, according to the Rights of Mankind, had only claimed his lawful Inheritance. Thus, by the Death of these two Princes, the Families of *Suabia* and *Austria* were extinct.



C H A P. XXII.

RODOLPHUS of Hapsbourg, called the Merciful.

RODOLPHUS the first of that Name, Count of Hapsbourg, was bred up by the Emperor *Frederick II*, who held him at the Font, and *Frederick* one Day observing that a very famous Astrologer who was at his Court paid more Respect to the Count than any other Nobleman or Prince whatever, asked his Reason for so doing. The Astrologer answered him, that he had this Veneration for *Rodolphus*, because God designed him for the Empire, and that it would not be in the Power of ten Heirs, which his Imperial Majesty then had, to prevent it, because they would all die young. This Prediction caused the Emperor to regard the Count with an evil Eye, which he perceiving, retired dextrously from Court, and, under a specious Pretence, went to *Ottocarus* King of *Bohemia*, where he for

RODOLPHUS.

RODOLPHUS.

for some Time exercised the Office of Great Marshal, whereof he acquitted himself with Honour. Thence he returned to his own Dominions, and behaved himself with so much Prudence and Valour on all Occasions, amongst his Neighbours, that he acquired a great Authority amongst them.

BUT 'twou'd be to be envious of Virtue it self, should I pass over in Silence the remarkable Example he gave of his Piety, to which some have even ascribed the Grandeur both of himself and his Posterity. Being one Day a hunting, there fell suddenly such a violent Rain that the Roads were rendered almost unpassable, at which Time meeting a Curate on foot, who was carrying the holy *Viaticum* to a sick Person, he was so much moved at seeing him walking in the Dirt, that, dismounting immediately from his Horse, he said to the good Priest, *What, shall I ride on Horseback, and you carry my Saviour on Foot?* No, no, *I will never suffer it, 'twou'd be a great Impiety, I desire you would mount this Horse;* and accordingly he made him do so, whilst himself accompanied the holy Sacrament bareheaded, and on Foot, to the sick Person's House. He even conducted it back to the Church, where the Curate (having given him the Benediction, being surprized at such an admirable and uncommon Zeal, and filled with the divine Spirit) foretold him, that he and his Posterity should possess the Empire. Others ascribe this Prediction to a *Swabian* Prophetess; but, however it was, his Piety was rewarded.

1269.
Rodolphus
his good
Office rewarded.

'Tis also observed, that when the Count *Werner de Falkenstein*, having been elected Archbishop of *Mentz*, went to *Rome* to take out his Bulls, *Rodolphus* conducted him with a strong Guard to the *Alps*; and, upon receiving Advice

Advice of his Return, went to meet him at the same Place, and convoyed him to *Mentz*; wherewith the Archbishop was so obliged, that he promis'd he would constantly pray to God to give him an Opportunity to testify his Gratitude to the Count before his Death. The Archbishop kept his Word, and found a proper Occasion to perform his Promise, in the Juncture hereafter mentioned.

RODOL-
PHUS.

THE Empire had now been fifteen Years without a Head, that is, from the Time that the Emperor *Richard* had been obliged to abandon it, and retire to the King of *England* his Brother, for want of Means to support the Imperial Dignity. *Alphonso* King of *Castile*, who was also chosen Emperor, was detained by his War with the *Moors*: And although he continually gave them hopes that he would soon come and take Possession of the Empire, yet he never made any Preparation for so doing. Hereupon the *German* Princes being wearied by these Delays, and not able any longer to bear the Confusion that reigned amongst them, by reason of the continual Usurpations and Violences that were exercised by the most powerful over the weaker, resolved to choose a Head for themselves, and press'd the Elector of *Mentz* to call a Diet for that Purpose at *Frankfort*.

It was accordingly held there in *October* 1273, and notwithstanding the Protestations of the King of *Castile's* Ambassadors against whatever should be done in a new Election to their Master's Prejudice, and the Pretensions of the King of *Bohemia*, and some other great Princes, to the Imperial Dignity, the Archbishop of *Mentz* managed the major Part of the Assembly so well, that he prevailed on them to prefer the Count of *Hapsburg*, whose Merit he extol-

1273.

RODOL-
PHUS.

led, to any other. The other Electors thought it more adviseable to raise some Subject of greater Quality to that Dignity, who might have larger Possessions, and consequently more Authority than he, to enable him to re-establish the Reputation of the Empire. But the Archbishop of *Mentz* answering, that to restore it to its pristine Lustre, it was more necessary to have a prudent, brave, experienced King, than a powerful and rich Prince; the Electors of *Cologn* and *Treves* made no difficulty of joining their Votes to his. The Secular Princes, especially *Lewis* Duke of *Bavaria*, and Duke *Albert* of *Saxony*, reflecting also that Count *Rodolphus* having six Daughters to be married, all of them handsome, and well educated, might make Alliances with the chief Princes of the Empire, and even with themselves, who were both unmarried, by giving each of them one, and thereby re-establishing the Union of *Germany*, agreed likewise to the Sentiments of the Ecclesiastical Electors, and unanimously chose Count *Rodolphus*.

As he was at that Time at the Siege of *Basil*, which he had undertaken on Account of the Protection he had granted to one of the Factions in that City, which had been driven out by the contrary Party, *Frederick* Burgrave of *Nuremberg* was dispatched to him with the Advice of his Election. As soon as he had receiv'd it he repair'd to *Frankfort*, and, having accepted of the Imperial Dignity, was conducted by all the Princes to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crowned the fifth of *January*, 1274, with the usual Solemnity.

THIS Ceremony being perform'd, the Emperor ask'd the Princes if they would not do him Homage, and take the customary Oath of Alle-

Allegiance; and they making some Difficulty thereat, alledging that they had not brought the Scepter, and that without it he could neither receive their Homage, nor give them the Investiture of their Fiefs; Rodolphus taking a Crucifix off the Altar, said to them, *This is the Sign of Him by whom we are saved, let us make use of this, instead of a Scepter.* Hereupon both the Ecclesiastick and Secular Princes were invested in their Fiefs by the Crucifix, took the Oath of Allegiance, and paid him Homage. Having thus taken Possession of the Imperial Throne, his first Care was to put an end to the Rapine and Robberies that were committed unpunished throughout Germany. He took such effectual Methods for this, that he re-established Peace and Safety there in a short Time, demolishing sixty Castles in *Thuringia*, which serv'd as a Retreat for the Robbers, and hanging ninety nine Highwaymen at one time in the City of *Erfort*.

RODOLPHUS.

He secures the Roads, and re-establishes Peace, by Force and Address.

A certain *Hungarian* Count had for some Years publickly robb'd, plunder'd, and massacred several Persons; and the Emperor not judging it proper to wage War against a whole Country for one Man, thought it better to bring this Count back to his Duty by the Interposition of his Friends. Hereupon they managed Matters so well, that they perswaded him to go to Rodolphus, giving him to understand, that he might do it with all the Safety imaginable; upon this he went, and was receiv'd with great Civility by the Emperor, who even did him the Honour to let him eat at his Table, and drink in the same Glass. Whereupon he said these Words: *I no longer doubt of my Safety, since I have drank with the honestest Man in the World.* After this good Reception, the Empe-

RODOL-
PHUS.

ror remonstrating to the Count what Injury he did himself by such wicked Actions, and he promising by all that was sacred that he would amend, *Rodolphus* dismissed him; but as the Count had many Enemies, he was set upon unawares upon the Road, and thrown into a River, whereby the Country was delivered from a notorious Captain of Robbers, without the Emperor's Word being violated.

THE States of the Duchy of *Austria*, whereof *Ottocarus* King of *Bohemia* had taken Possession, after the Death of *Frederick* their last Duke, seeing the Emperor near them, took Advantage of that Juncture to give him Information, and complain of the Oppression they suffered under *Ottocare's* Government, begging him to deliver them from his Tyranny. Upon these earnest Intreaties *Rodolphus* summoned a Diet at *Augsburgh*, whither *Ottocarus* sent his Ambassadors, but upon a very different Account to what was expected. They flattered themselves that he would pay Homage to the Emperor, which he had not yet done; but they were very much surprized when the first Ambassador made, on the contrary, a long Harangue, wherein he disowned the Election of *Rodolphus*, and declared it null in his Master's Name. This Speech incensed the Assembly so much, that they interrupted him, and made the Ambassadors quit the Diet: After which, the Princes declared *Ottocare* a Rebel to the Empire, and concluded, that he having unjustly invaded *Austria*, *Stiria*, *Carniola* and *Carinthia*, the Emperor should reclaim his Dominions.

JUDGMENT being thus given, Ambassadors were dispatched to King *Ottocarus* to acquaint him with the Resolutions of the Diet. Hereunto he haughtily answer'd, That he owed no Wages

Wages to *Rodolphus*, who was formerly his Servant; that his Queen had brought him *Austria*, *Stiria*, and *Carinthia* as her Dowry; that he had bought *Carniola* with ready Money; and that therefore he would keep Possession thereof, as being lawfully his. Hereupon the Ambassadors returning from *Augsbourg*, and giving an Account of *Ottocare's* Answer, the States resolved to chastise him for his Disobedience, and restore these Territories to the Empire by Force.

RODOLPHUS.

THE Emperor himself undertook the Execution of this Resolution, and, being reinforc'd with a sufficient Body of Troops, marched into *Austria*, accompany'd by the Archbishops of *Mentz* and *Cologn*, the Bishops of *Wirtzburg*, *Ratisbon*, and *Passau*, with *Lewis* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*. There he retook the Cities and Countries dependent on this Province, and put in Governors, to keep and defend them in the Name of the Empire, but as these Prelates grew weary of the War, and were not willing to see the King of *Bobemia* entirely ruin'd, they propos'd an Agreement in his Favour, on Condition he should content himself with *Bobemia*, and *Moravia*, and hold them as Fiefs of the Empire.

1276.

OTTOCARE accepted of these Conditions, and going to the Emperor, his Majesty invest'd him with these States, with great Magnificence. But *Ottocare's* Wife, who was very proud, not being able to consent to the Meanness, which the King her Husband had, in her Opinion, been guilty of, in submitting to *Rodolphus*, who had formerly been in his Service, incens'd *Ottocarus* so much, adding even cutting Reproaches to her Remonstrances, that he renounced the Peace he had concluded with the Empire, and

1277.

RODOLPHUS.

took the Field again, to reduce *Austria* a second Time to his Obedience.

1278.
He chastises
Ottocare a
second Time,
on his
breaking the
Treaty of
Accommo-
dation, and
transfers
Austria in-
to his own
Family.
1283.

THE Emperor no sooner had Advice hereof, but he levy'd an Army without farther De-liberation, and march'd against *Ottocarus*, as against a publick Infringer of Peace, and a perjur'd Man; accordingly this King was not long before he paid dearly for his Breach of Faith. For he was kill'd in a Battle in September 1278, after which Victory *Rodolphus* gave *Austria*, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, and *Carniola*, to Count *Albert* his eldest Son; and some Time after being at a Diet at *Augsbourg*, he invested him publicly therewith, by the Consent of the Princes of the Empire, declaring him Duke of *Austria*, and incorporating him in the College of Princes. He also invested *Rodolphus*, another of his Sons, with the County of *Suabia*, which belonged to him by Inheritance, in Right of his Wife *Anne* Countess of *Suabia*.

1284.

HE never went to *Italy*, not judging it proper to compromise his Authority there in Person with the Pope; and used to answer those who press'd him to go to *Rome* to be crown'd, that he imitated the Fox in the Fable, who, being invited with the other Animals to visit the sick *Lion*, stopt short at the Entrance of his Den, and would go no farther, saying, that he could plainly see the Foot-steps of those that had gone in, but none of those that came out. That 'twas the same in his Case; and that he would take Warning by the Example of his Predecessors, who had indeed gone into *Italy*, but had never come back without the Loss either of some of their Rights, or their Authority.

1285.

WHEREFORE he contented himself with sending his Chancellor into *Italy*, to receive the Homage, and take the Oath of Allegiance of the

the Imperial Cities, in his Name: And as they refused to pay this Duty to a Deputy of the Emperor's, 'twas thought that *Rodolphus* ought to have endeavour'd to reduce them to it by Force; but not being in a Condition so to do, he chose to come to an Agreement, and was the first who sold them the Privileges and Immunities they have since enjoy'd. It cost the City of *Lucca* but 12,000 Crowns, and the Cities of *Florence*, *Genoa* and *Bologna*, but 6000 each, on Condition, however, that they should always remain faithful to the Empire, as being Members thereof. This Conduct cast a little Blemish upon the Reputation of *Rodolphus*, and made him afterwards pass for a covetous Prince, who made Money of every Thing.

RODOLPHUS.

1286.

1287.

AFTER this, by the Consent of the States, he order'd that the *German* Tongue only should be used in the Courts of Judicature. and the Diets; to the End that every one might understand his own Affairs in his Mother Tongue. He also caus'd the first Constitution of the Empire to be drawn up in that Language at *Wirtzburg*, being that of the Year 1287; and he had it renew'd at *Spires*, in 1291, with Regard to what Measures the Ecclesiasticks and Secular Princes and States were mutually to observe to each other, as also with Respect to the Administration of Justice, and the Civil Government between the Vassals and Subjects of the Empire.

Orders that only the German Tongue should be used in the Empire.

RODOLPHUS having now reign'd eighteen Years, and finding himself decay'd and indispos'd, called a Diet in the same Year 1291 at *Frankfort*, where he desired the Princes of the Empire to secure the Succession to the Imperial Crown to his Son Duke *Albert* of *Au-*

1291.

RODOL-
PHUS.

The Empe-
ror foretels
his own
Death.

Stria, by creating him King of the *Romans*; but they never would consent, putting him off with this Excuse, that the Revenues of the Empire were not sufficient for the Maintenance of two Kings. Resenting this Refusal, he went to *Strasbourg*, and thence set out on the Road for *Spire*, saying, without imagining he spoke Truth, that he was going to pay a Visit to the deceas'd Emperors. He did so; and falling sick some Days after at *Gernersheim*, he died there the fifteenth of *July*, at the Age of sixty three, and his Body was carried to be interred in the great Church at *Spire*, with the other Emperors.

By his first Wife *Anne*, Daughter to *Albert* Count of *Hochberg*, he had seven Sons, and as many Daughters; but of the former there only remained *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, and *Rodolphus* Duke of *Suabia*, and Landgrave of *Alsatia*. The Daughters were *Jutte* or *Judit* Wife to *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, *Clemence* Consort to *Charles* King of *Hungary*, *Matilda* who espous'd *Lewis* Count Palatine, *Agnes* married to *Albert* Duke of *Saxony*, *Hedwig* or *Avoy*, Wife to *Otho* Marquis of *Brandenbourg*, *Katharine* Consort to *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, and *Euphemia*, a Nun. He left no Children by his second Wife *Agnes* of *Burgundy*.

His En-
comiums.

I shall make no mention here of his great Actions; one may judge of them by the happy State to which he restored *Germany*, which, from an extream Desolation, and prodigious Confusion, wherein it was involved at his Advancement to the Throne, was, by his good Conduct and Valour, become as well govern'd, and as flourishing, as it had ever yet been; I shall only take Notice of a certain free Manner, which gain'd him more Hearts than his Courage, as invincible as it was, could reduce to his Obedience,

He

HE gave an Example of this in the War he was oblig'd to carry on when but Count of *Hapsburg*, against the Bishop and City of *Basil*, and the Abbot of *St. Gal*. As he found that he should not come off with Honour but with great Difficulty, because these three Enemies were more powerful than he, he thought it proper to disengage the Abbot of *St. Gal* from their Party. To this Intent he went to dine with him, without giving him any Notice, and there speaking of their Difference, they agreed it with the Glass in Hand, without any Mediators; and he even persuaded the Abbot to assist him against the others. Besides this he was very affable, and had always some pleasant Raillery in his Mouth.

RODOL-
PHUS.

His free
Behaviour.

ONE Day, two Deputies of the same City coming before him, to remonstrate to him the Necessities of their Inhabitants, he observ'd that one of them had grey Hairs, and a black Beard, and that the Hair of the other was black, and his Beard grey; whereupon, after hearing them, he ask'd the Reason of such Patchwork. As they were very much surpriz'd at the Question, they desired the Emperor to give them Time to reply, which he granting, with an Assurance that this Business should be dispatch'd if they gave a punctual Answer, they return'd the next Morning, and resolv'd it in these Terms: *My Beard (may it please your Majesty) is turn'd grey sooner than my Hair, because having always made it my Study to provide for my Mouth, that Care has chang'd it. The other said, that he brought his Hair into the World with him, but he had no Beard till some Years after, that therefore his Hair being the eldest, it was reasonable that should be grey first.*

BUT

RODOL-
PHUS-

*His Sage-
city in do-
ing Justice.*

BUT this Emperor's predominant Virtue was his particular Zeal to administer Justice himself, whereof he gave divers Examples, amongst others this, which happen'd one Day at a Diet at Nuremberg. A rich Merchant made his Complaint to him, that having entrusted his Landlord with his Purse wherein were about two hundred *German* Florins, and demanding them again, his Landlord denied the Trust, because he had not Witnesses. This the Merchant back'd with so many Circumstances, that *Rodolphus* believed him, and said he would consider of it. The Landlord was Rich, one of the chief Men of the City, and it could not be proved upon him. A little after some Deputies from the City of *Nuremberg* came to make some Remonstrances to the Emperor, and the Landlord happen'd to be amongst them; whereupon *Rodolphus*, in a familiar Way, said to him, amongst other Things: *You have a very fine Hat there, let us make an Exchange.* The Landlord, very much rejoiced at the Honour, consented, gave his Hat immediately to the Emperor, and took his, which done, *Rodolphus* order'd the Deputies to wait, and went out of the Room, as if about other Business; in the mean Time, he order'd another Citizen to go in the Landlord's Name to his Wife, and demand a Purse wherein was the Merchant's Money, and, as a Token, to shew her his Hat. The Landlady, believing the Citizen upon that Token, delivered him the Purse, which was brought to the Emperor, who at the same Time had sent for the Merchant to appear before him, and, as soon as he enter'd the Chamber where the Landlord was, order'd him to approach, and speak for himself. The Merchant renew'd his Complaint concerning the Purse, and the Landlord for his Part
avers

Chap. XXIII. of the EMPIRE.

313

avers he was not intrusted with any, offering even to confirm it by Oath; but the Emperor shewing him the Purse, he stood confounded, and remain'd Speechless; whereupon he delivered the Money to the Merchant, and sentenced the Landlord to pay a heavy Fine.

RODOLPHUS.

RODOLPHUS was usually very plain in his Cloaths, and when, as has been observ'd, *Ottocarus* King of *Bohemia* did Homage to him for that Kingdom, and *Moravia*, according to the Treaty concluded between them, the Emperor was only dress'd in a grey loose Coat, tho' *Ottocarus* was in a very magnificent Habit. In this Garb he sat in his Tent, and received the King in the Sight of all his Army, who were surpriz'd to see a Prince, in such a rich Dress, at the Feet of an Emperor, who was only cloathed like a common Soldier.

The Extreme Modesty of Rodolphus in his Cloaths.

In fine, to the End of his Days, he observ'd, in all his Actions, a Conduct worthy of a great Prince.



CHAP. XXIII.

ADOLPHUS of Nassau.



EVEN or eight Months after the Death of *Rodolphus*, the Princes of the Empire met at *Frankfort*, to elect an Emperor, and *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, Son to *Rodolphus*, solicited them to obtain their Votes; it being the usual Custom to choose that Person of the deceas'd Emperor's Family who was capable of receiving the Crown. But

Adolphus is elected, to the Exclusion of *Albert* of *Austria*.

Gerard

ADOL-
PHUS.

Gerard Elector of *Mentz* manag'd Matters with so much Address, in Favour of Count *Adolphus* of *Nassau*, his Relation, that that Nobleman carried it from *Albert*.

THE Archbishop, to compass this Design, had conferr'd privately with the Electors, one after another; and, knowing they had all Enemies, he made 'em severally believe all the Votes were for giving the Empire to that Prince who was hated by each of them; and thus dexterously sowing an Apprehension in the Minds of all of them, they conjur'd him separately to elect whomsoever he pleas'd, rather than the Person who, as he had told them, was propos'd. Hereupon, he nam'd *Rodolphus*, to the Surprise of all the others, who were for *Albert* of *Austria*, whom they thought even the Elector of *Mentz* would himself have chosen.

1292.
His Man-
ner of
governing.

ADOLPHUS then was proclaim'd Emperor the twentieth of May 1292; but altho' he was endued with all the Qualities of a great Prince, he was not rich enough to support the Imperial Dignity, with his own Patrimony alone, without other Assistance. On the other hand, as he was a better Soldier than Politician, he paid too much Deference to the Counsels of his Officers, and did not set Value enough upon the Advice of the Princes of the Empire, which alienated the Minds of most of them, inso-much that they afterwards espous'd the Duke of *Austria's* Party.

1293.
League be-
tween the
Emperor
and the
King of
England,
against
France.

THE Kings of *France* and *England* were then engaged in a sharp and bloody War, on Account of some Provinces to which each pretended exclusive of each other; and the King of *England* imagining the Assistance of the Empire might be of great Service to him, propos'd to *Adolphus*, that if he would aid him with Troops to retake
what

Chap. XXIII. of the EMPIRE.

315

what the King of *France* detain'd from him, he would come in Person into *Germany* with Men and Money, to assist the Emperor to recover the Territories which *France*, as he said, usurp'd also from the Emperor. This Offer was received by *Adolphus* with the more Joy, upon the propos'd Conditions, as it was accompany'd with a good Sum of Money, which he immediately employ'd in levying a formidable Army.

ADOLPHUS.

THE *French* King being appriz'd of the League made between the Emperor and *England*, endeavour'd to put himself in a Condition to oppose them, and, in order to that, had recourse likewise to the Assistance of the *German*s, and engag'd *Albert* Duke of *Austria* in his Party, who said, on this Occasion, That there was no more Dishonour in being Pensioner to the King of *France*, than to the King of *England*.

The King of France gains over Albert Duke of Austria to his Party.
1294.

HOWEVER, the Money received from *England*, instead of being advantagious to the Affairs of *Adolphus*, ruin'd him entirely; for his most affectionate Friends, and, amongst others, the Elector of *Mentz*, being incens'd at his not giving them a Share of this Subsidy, as likewise at his not consulting them upon his most important Affairs, which he always undertook of his own Head, changed their Friendship into Hatred, and form'd underhand a Design to dispossess him of the Empire.

1295.

1296.

THE Emperor being informed of these Intregues, and knowing that Duke *Albert* had declared himself the Chief of his Enemies, design'd to have march'd against him with the Army he had rais'd with the *English* Money, with Intention to subdue *Albert*, before he went to the Assistance of the King of *England*; but he was press'd upon so hard by the *English*, that he was at last forced to leave *Germany* free, and

ADOL-
PHUS.

1297.

and march towards *Alsatia*, to make a Diversion in their Favour. In the mean while Duke *Albert*, having rais'd a considerable Number of Forces, observ'd all the Emperor's Steps, and took the same Rout, during which the Elector of *Mentz*, by the Advice of the other Princes of the Empire, invited Duke *Albert* to come to *Mentz*, with a Promise of electing him King of the *Romans*. Accordingly he went, and arriv'd there at the same Time as the Electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenbourg*, who were no better satisfy'd with the Government of *Adolphus* than the others, and yet less with his Undertaking this War, and divers other Affairs of the Empire, of his own Caprice, and without their Advice: Whereupon they deliberated together, and resolv'd to depose *Adolphus*, and choose Duke *Albert* Emperor. This Resolution being taken, they met on the twenty third of *June* 1298, in the sixth Year of *Adolphus's* Reign, and elected *Albert*; and as he was incamp'd without the City with his Army, the Electors went to him, to notify his Election, wishing him all manner of Prosperity, promising to assist, protect, and maintain him against all Opposers.

1298.

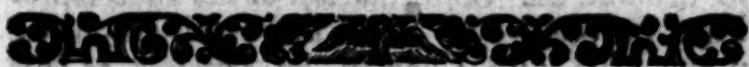
A Battle
between the
two Com-
petitors,
wherein
Adolphus
is kill'd.

ADOLPHUS being inform'd of this Election, rais'd the Siege he had laid to *Ruffach* in *Alsatia*, and march'd to *Spires*, where he encamp'd with his Troops, which were reinforc'd with those of the Count Palatine *Rodolphus*, Duke *Otho* of *Bavaria*, with the Cities of *Spires*, *Worms*, and some others, that continued faithful to him till his Death. *Albert* advanced also with his Army, each of them being determin'd to decide by Force of Arms who should enjoy the Imperial Crown. In fine, they fought on both sides with great Courage, between *Geinheim* and the Cloister of *Rosendal*, where *Adolphus* and
Albert

Albert meeting, engaged Hand to Hand. Hereupon the Emperor, attacking the Duke with infinite Valour, said: *This is the Place where You must yield me both the Empire and your Life;* upon which the Duke answer'd very briskly, *That is as GOD pleases;* and at the same Time gave him a Cut across the Face, which made him fall from his Horse to the Ground, where some other cut his Throat. Hereupon Duke *Albert* immediately put a Stop to the Slaughter, and gave Quarter to all; the Count Palatine, and the Duke of *Bavaria*, making their Escape to *Heidelberg*, and thence to *Bavaria*.

ADOLPHUS.

As for *Adolphus*, his Body was interr'd in the Cloister of *Rosendal*, or (as others say) in the Cloister of *Frawensfelt*; the Emperor *Albert* not suffering him to be buried at *Spires*, with the other Emperors, tho' he was afterwards carry'd thither by the Order of the Emperor *Henry* of *Luxemburg*,



C H A P. XXIV.

A L B E R T I.



THE Emperor *Albert I*, call'd the *Triumphant*, on Account of his Generosity, his Courage, and the many Battles he had gain'd over his Enemies, was also nam'd the *One-ey'd*, because that having drank some Poison in his Youth, which had almost cost him his Life, and the Physicians hanging him up by the Heels to make

1298.
He is confirm'd in the Empire by a Diet.

ALBERT I. make him vomit, he could not escape so well, but that he lost one of his Eyes.

THO' he had already been elected King of the *Romans*, before his gaining the Victory over the Emperor *Adolphus*, he was apprehensive of their contesting his Election, because the Electors of *Treves*, and the Palatine, did not assist thereat. Wherefore immediately after that Battle, he summon'd all the Electors to *Frankfort*, and delivering the Crown into their Hands, desired them to proceed to a new Choice, which they did, and nam'd him unanimously on the ninth of *August*, after which they conducted him to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crown'd the twenty fourth of the same Month. The Solemnity of this Coronation was so famous, and the Concourse to see it so great, that the Duke of *Saxony*, the Emperor's Brother-in-Law, and several other Persons, were stifled in the Croud.

ALBERT being thus establish'd, sent to *Rome*, to demand the Confirmation of his Election of Pope *Boniface VIII*; but his Holiness, being prepossess'd with Chagrin, on Account of this Prince's rising on the ruins of his Friend *Adolphus*, would not at first hearken to it, saying, That they could not set him upon the Throne without his Consent. But his ardent Desire to be reveng'd on *Philip* King of *France* at last induced him to confirm *Albert's* Election, and even to offer him the Crown of *France* in *Philip's* Prejudice. *Albert* thank'd him for this Offer; but represented to him that he could not ingage in a Quarrel of that Importance without being assured of some Assistance from his Holiness to carry on the War. But the Pope declaring that he would not contribute in the least to it, the Thing went no farther, and the Emperor

Emperor to be beforehand with *Poniface*, and prevent his sowing Dissention between the King of *France* and him, thereby to ruin them with more Ease, enter'd into a Negotiation with that Prince, which succeeded. *Philip* and he had an Interview at *Vaucoleurs*, where they renewed the antient Leagues between *France* and the Empire, and, to make their Agreement more firm, treated of the Marriage of *Rodolphus Albert's* Son, with *Blanch Philip's* Daughter, which however was not accomplish'd till the Year following.

ALBERT I.

In the mean Time the Emperor summon'd a Diet at *Nuremberg* on *St. Martin's* Day, when the Ecclesiastical Electors attended, as did likewise the King of *Bohemia*, the Elector Palatine, and divers other Secular Princes of the Empire. There he caused his Wife *Elizabeth*, Daughter to the Count of *Tirol*, to be crown'd, and conferred the Duchy of *Austria* on *Rodolphus* his eldest Son, creating him and his Successors Dukes of *Austria*.

The Emperor causes his Wife to be crown'd, and declares his Son Duke of Austria.

'Tis observable that he publish'd the Statutes concerning the Offices of the Electors of the Empire, and their Function, and that they were accordingly perform'd there by those who were there present. At the breaking up of the Assembly *Albert* (taking into Consideration the Conduct of the Ecclesiastical Electors, and some other Princes, who had taken Possession of the Customs, and other Revenues, that formerly were set apart for the Maintenance of the Emperors, which they likewise increased, as they thought fit) commanded them to restore the Toll on the *Rhine*, to its antient Footing, on Pain of lying under Disgrace. To this they answer'd, that they enjoy'd these Revenues in the same manner as their Predecessors had before them, with-

1299.
Recovers the Rights belonging to the Empire, from the Princes that usurp'd them.

ALBERT I. out being disturb'd either by the Emperors, or Kings of the *Romans*, and that they hop'd to have been maintain'd in those Rights, whence they could not recede.

1303. **HEREUPON** *Albert* complain'd to the Pope of this Answer, by *Peter* Bishop of *Basil*, but, his Holiness turning a deaf Ear to all his Remonstrances, the Emperor saw that he should be oblig'd to have Recourse to Force, to do himself Justice. To this Intent, by his Friends Advice, he declared his Dissatisfaction to the Ecclesiastical Electors, summoning them before the Princes and States of the Empire at *Mentz*, to answer to the Accusations made against them, according to the Custom of those Times.

THE Electors regarded this Citation but little, and retiring to the Elector Palatine before him, as a Competent Judge, form'd a Complaint against *Albert* himself, for having kill'd *Adolphus* without Reason, thereby eluding the Emperor's Demand; but he did not suffer them to play upon him with Impunity. For he made War upon these four Electors, beginning with the Palatine, and reduced them all to Reason one after another, which lasted the Years 1301, 1302, 1303. Thus they were oblig'd to restore the Duties of the *Rhine* upon the antient Foot, to the Emperor's Content.

The Swiss begin to recover their Liberty. **IN** one Thing he committed a great Error, that is, in treating the *Swiss* with so much Rigour, that the Cantons of *Ury*, *Schweitz* and *Underwald* rose up in Arms against his Officers, drove them out, entered into a Confederacy together for ten Years, and shew'd the other *Swiss* the Way to recover their Liberty.

1304. **THE** Affair he had most at Heart was, to satisfy his ardent Desire of translating the Kingdom of *Bohemia* into his own Family; for *Wenceslaus*

Chap. XXIV. of the EMPIRE.

321

Wenceslaus, Son to King *Wenceslaus*, having succeeded his Father in the *Bobemian* Throne, his Conduct was so irregular, that he was assassinated by his own Subjects, and died without Children. This leaving the *Bobemians* at Liberty to proceed to an Election, they chose *Henry* Son to the Count of *Carinthia*, and *Tirol*, Cousin German to *Albert*; but the Emperor alledging a previous Agreement, made with the Family of *Wenceslaus*, levy'd a considerable Army, and march'd into *Bobemia*, with an Intention to settle his Son *Rodolphus* in the Throne. *Henry*, not daring to wait his coming, quitted his Pretensions, and as *Rodolphus* had then lost his first Wife *Blanch*, Daughter to the *French* King, the Emperor made him marry *Isabella* the Widow of *Wenceslaus*, and this serv'd to establish him in Possession of the Crown; but he did not enjoy it long, for he died suddenly in 1306.

1305!

1306

His Death created new Divisions in the Kingdom, for some recall'd *Henry* Count of *Carinthia*, who had been dispossest'd by *Albert*, and others elected *Frederick* the Emperor's second Son, and Brother to *Rodolphus*. Then *Albert* who before had got the Start of *Henry*, was disappointed himself, for he found *Henry* so well establish'd, that he was oblig'd to return without being able to effect any Thing, but laying the Country of *Bobemia* waste. Nevertheless 'tis observ'd that both in this Expedition and others he had fought twelve Battles in Person, and gain'd them, and it was these Exploits which acquired him the Sir-name of *Triumphant*, as had been before observ'd.

1307

He did not express less Zeal with Respect to the other Territories that fell into his Power, than he did in making himself Master of *Bobemia*; he had by his Wife *Elizabeth* eleven

ALBERT I.

Children, all living, six Sons and five Daughters; and he endeavour'd to procure them all possible Advantages, this being what he most vehemently desir'd, and accordingly it cost him his Life, which happen'd thus:

His inordinate Desire to aggrandize his Children proves fatal to him.

THE Emperor, after the Death of his Brother *Rodolphus* Duke of *Suabia*, and Landgrave of *Alsatia*, who left only one Son, caus'd his Nephew to be brought to Court, and took upon himself the Administration of his Dominions, as his Governor. But Duke *John* being pass'd his Minority, had often solicited the Emperor very earnestly to restore his Patrimony to him, or at least Part of it; which *Albert* had deferr'd granting, on several Pretences, putting off the young Prince from Time to Time, without doing him Justice, as if he only sought an Opportunity to appropriate it to himself for his own Children, as was suspected by many.

THIS Suspicion was increas'd by the Intrigues he had us'd to get *Bohemia*, and the Marquisate of *Misnia*, where he had Recourse to Force, as he did likewise to get Possession of some other States whereof he made himself Master; which Conduct gain'd him the Aversion and Resentment of several Princes. They even sometimes rally'd the young Duke *John*, calling him a Duke without a Duchy, and this Affront touch'd him very sensibly; but he had the Presence of Mind to seem not to regard it.

1308.

ON the first of *May* 1308, the Emperor coming to *Basil*, to take the Air, Duke *John* hop'd he might there obtain something for his Interest; to which end he employ'd *John* Bishop of *Strasbourg*, whom he had prevail'd on to ask the Favour of the Emperor, that he would restore him some Castles of his Patrimony, with their Dependencies. Upon this Prelate's Persuasion

Chap. XXIV. of the EMPIRE.

323

suasion *Albert* answer'd, That he would make his Nephew a Colonel, and employ him in the *Bobemian* War, which being over he would content him. At this Answer the young Duke was so enrag'd, that he could not suppress what he thought it imported: *I see very plainly, cry'd he aloud, that he who robs me of my Birthright, will also rob me of my Life;* this said, he went immediately to find three of his Friends, with whom he had plotted to rid his Hands of the Emperor, in Case he could not obtain Justice, and resolv'd no longer to defer the Execution of this execrable Design.

HEREUPON he took his Time, when the Emperor after the Entertainment having in Gallantry crown'd all his Attendants with Flowers, set out on the Road to *Rhinsfelden*; and being arriv'd at the River *Rbus*, near *Schafhausen*, he went into a Boat with only Duke *John*, and his three Friends; the Emperor's Son, with the rest of the Retinue, waiting on the Bank-side for the Return of the Boat. *Albert* having cross'd the River, and walking alone in a Field new sow'd, Duke *John* with his three Friends, *Rodolphus* of *Warth*, *Walter* of *Eschebach*, and *Ulrich* of *Palm* coming up to him, the first gave him a Cut with his Sword in the Throat, *Warth* wounded him in the Breast, and *Palm* clove his Head and Face asunder. The Emperor's Son and Attendants saw this Massacre from the other side of the River, without being able to go to the Assistance of the Person assassinated, for want of a Boat, whereupon the Murtherers made their Escape.

As for Duke *John* he lay a while conceal'd, sometimes in one Place, sometimes in another, but was at last seiz'd in *Italy*, where he had taken Refuge, and perish'd in Prison, his Duchy of

Alas! I. 1. 1. 1.

The Pope's

mission of

the King of

France.

Suabia being seiz'd and confiscated for the Use of the Duke of *Austria*, *Palm* lay hid in a Nunnery, where he died some Time after, *Eschbach* turn'd Cowherd in a Village in the Country of *Wurtemberg* for 35 Years, at the End whereof he discover'd himself upon his Death-bed, and *Wurth* was taken, drawn, and broken on a Wheel. They built a Cloister nam'd *Koningsfelt* at the Place where *Albert* was kill'd, whence his Body, after having been some Time deposited there, was transferr'd to *Spires*, near his Predecessors. He had an extream Aversion to Flatterers and Detractors, using to say that he lov'd three Sorts of Persons in the World, Women of Honour, Churchmen that fear'd God, and brave Men.



CHAP. XXV.

HENRY the seventh.

The King of France aspires to the Empire by means of the Pope.



AFTER *Albert's* Death, the Juncture of Affairs made it apprehended that the Electors would not agree very soon together, and that the Obstacles they laid in the Way, to retard the pitching upon a Person to fill the vacant Throne, might be of ill Consequence. For *Philip the Fair*, King of *France*, aspir'd to the Empire, and that he might attain it the more easily, resolv'd to take a Journey to *Avignon*, where Pope *Clement* then was, and treat personally with him: 'Twas said that the King had rais'd him to the Popedom, on Condition

dition that, in Recompense, he should assist him in his turn to obtain the Empire.

HENRY VII.

HIS Holiness being appriz'd of the Design of the Visit which *Philip* intended him, was in great Pain how he should come off with Honour; for as he was oblig'd to keep in *France*, on Account of the Commotions in *Rome* and *Italy*, he could not see any fair Pretence to refuse what the King desired of him, but he knew also that it was not in his Power to grant it; that the Imperial Crown was at the Disposal of the *Germans* ; and that, tho' the Popes had by their Bulls arrogated to themselves the Right of conferring it, it was only verbally, and not in Effect.

The Pope dissident of the King of France.

BESIDES this the Pontif consider'd that, if on this Occasion he should assume to himself this Right, it would be to run a Risque of making the *Germans* explain themselves, and deprive the Court of *Rome* in plain Terms of this Pretension, because they would maintain themselves in their Rights; as also that they might apprehend that, if the King of *France* should restore the Imperial Dignity to his Family, he might also recover the antient States, Rights, Prerogatives, and Pretensions which *France* formerly had in the Empire.

ADD to this, that his Holiness was not ignorant of a Thing known to every one, viz. that *Philip* had been in no ways content with the Court of *Rome*, since the Injury he had received from Pope *Boniface VIII*, who, to mention it *en passant*, had set himself up for a Master over the King of *France*, by exhorting, or rather commanding him, by his *Nuntio's*, after a very imperious Manner, and on Pain of Excommunication, to make War against the *Turk*, for the Recovery of the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*. But *Philip*, first imprisoning the *Nuntio's*, con-

HENRY
VII.

ven'd the Ecclesiastical and Secular Estates of the Kingdom, to know of them whether they would acknowledge the Pope, or him for their lawful Prince, and whether his Holiness could deprive him of the Crown, and give it to any other.

HEREUPON they unanimously concluded that they ow'd Obedience to the King, as their natural Prince, and that 'twas neither in the Power of the Pope to confer, nor take away Kingdoms; that his Kingdom was not of this World, and that his Authority extended only to Spirituals. In Consequence of this Declaration the King prohibited his Subjects carrying any Money to Rome, on any Account whatever.

CLEMENT V, who succeeded Benet XI, successor to Boniface VIII, being in this Quandary, Cardinal Nicholas Prat advis'd him to dispatch Nuntio's underhand (as he instantly did) to the German Electors, to press them to elect an Emperor, and declare that, in Case they did not proceed speedily to a Choice, the Imperial Dignity would be in Danger of reverting from Germany into France, and that in order to facilitate this Election, he propos'd Henry Count of Luxembourg to them, as a Person of Virtue, and Merit.

Henry of
Luxemburg
chosen Em-
peror.

IN Compliance with the Pope's Advice, the Electors immediately met at Frankfort, and concluded on this Election about the Beginning of Advent, sending to inform Count Henry of Luxembourg thereof; whilst on the other hand King Philip, being acquainted with it, as he was on the Road to Avignon, return'd back to the same Place whence he set out. The Count was very much surpriz'd to hear that the Electors had conferr'd on him that high Dignity, as thinking himself not powerful enough to support it; however he accepted it with many

Acknow-

Acknowledgments, and was crown'd at *Aix* on Twelfth Day 1369. That Ceremony being over he went along the *Rhine* to receive the Homage and Oath of Allegiance of the Princes, Lords, and Cities, and the same Year summon'd an Imperial Diet at *Spire*, whither the Electors and other Princes came in great Numbers, with the Deputies of the Cities.

HENRY
VII.
1309.

ELIZABETH, Daughter and Heiress to the deceas'd *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, and a Daughter of the Emperor *Rodolphus*, was also at this Assembly, because she had been contracted to *John*, the Emperor *Henry's* Son; but as the Marriage was deferr'd, she resolv'd either to have it consummated, or know the Reasons why it was not concluded. The Count *John* of *Luxemburg* was seventeen Years old, and the Princess four Years elder than he, of a strong Constitution, and well made; but some Rumours having been spread derogatory to her Honour, the Emperor deferr'd from Day to Day the Consummation of the Marriage, on divers Pretences.

THE Princess, on the other hand, being very much surpriz'd at these Delays, us'd her utmost Endeavours to discover the Cause; and, being inform'd of it, resolv'd to go into the Emperor's Antichamber, where, in Presence of her Ladies and Women, she undress'd herself to her Shift, and presenting herself very respectfully, in that Condition, before *Henry*, address'd him thus: *Sir, I have been inform'd that your Imperial Majesty has had some Suspicion of my Conduct, and that this was the Reason that has delay'd my Marriage with the Prince your Son; I have always been such an Enemy to Immodesty, and it is so certain that no Man ever touch'd my Body, that I have taken the Liberty to come to tell you, that this Suspicion*

Henry's Son married to the Heiress of Bohemia, who gives the Lye publicly to those who had aspers'd her Honour.

HENRY
VII.

picion, which I have never merited, afflicts me to that Degree, that I can't leave this Affair in the Condition it is at present. Wherefore I humbly beg your Majesty, to do me the Favour to send for Matrons or Midwives, to confound this Calumny, which was design'd to do me such an ill Office with your Majesty.

THE Emperor being much astonish'd at her knowing the Myſtery, ask'd her Pardon, and gave her Hopes that the Marriage ſhould be conſummated aſſoon as poſſible; however the Princeſs remain'd ſtedfaſt in her Reſolution of being juſtify'd, and Henry being no longer able to reſuſe it, was oblig'd to cauſe ſome Ladies of Quality, and Midwives to come from the City, who atteſted upon Oath, that the Princeſs was a Virgin. Immediately after this Juſtification, the Emperor cauſ'd the Nuptials to be ſolemniz'd with great Magnificence, in Preſence of the Electors, and other Princes and Lords of the Diet. This done, the new-married Couple went by his Order into *Bohemia*, attended by divers Princes and Noblemen; and after their Departure Henry cauſ'd his Expedition into *Italy* to be reſolv'd on in the ſame Diet, having a ſufficient Number of Troops granted him, according to his Deſire, for that Purpoſe.

1310.
The Count
of Wirtem-
berg put to
the Ban of
the Em-
pire.

DURING the Reign of the Emperor *Albert I*, Count *Everard* of *Wirtemberg* had begun to moleſt the Imperial Cities of *Suabia*, and continued to perſecute them even after his deceaſe, wherein he acted with ſo much Violence, that they were oblig'd to complain to the Diet at *Spires*. The Count being cited thither to anſwer thereunto, came with ſo many Forces, that the Emperor and other Princes took Umbrage thereat, and endeavour'd to terminate the Affair by fair Means; but he rejeſted the Propoſal, and retired without heark-
ning

ning to any Accommodation. On this Refusal Henry put him to the Ban of the Empire, and resolv'd with the States to levy a Body of Troops, in order to make use of Force to reduce him to his Duty. The Lord of *Winsberg* had a Commission to raise this Army, and also to command it; and in a little Time he made himself Master of almost all the Count's Dominions. Hereupon the Count, giving Way to his ill Fortune, made his Escape secretly to the Marquis of *Baden*, where he waited the Emperor's Death with Patience, after which he reconquer'd his Territories without Difficulty.

Henry VII.

1311.

As after *Frederick II's* Death in 1250, none of his Successors had been in *Italy*, the Rights of the Empire were lost and buried in Oblivion; every Nobleman set himself up for a Sovereign, and the two Parties of the *Guelphs* and *Gibelins* had never before been so inveterate against each other. Pope *Clement V*, who kept at *Avignon*, during these Troubles, and to whom Henry was partly oblig'd for his Election to the Empire, press'd him to march into *Italy* to disperse the Sedition; the *Gibelins*, who were Imperialists, conjur'd him also to hasten his coming, to support them against their Enemies: Wherefore the Emperor, not being able to defer his Expedition, got the States of the Empire to consent to it. Hereupon leaving his Son *John* King of *Bobemia* his Lieutenant in the Empire, he march'd to *Italy*, with all the Troops that had been granted him two Years before. He was likewise accompany'd by the Dukes, *Leopold* of *Austria*, and *Rodolphus* of *Bavaria*, with *Baldwin* Archbishop of *Treves*, the Bishop of *Liege*, the Counts of *Savoy* and *Flanders*, and other Lords of the Empire, with the Militia of all the Imperial Cities.

The Emperor goes into Italy with a Design to re-establish the Rights and Authority of the Empire.

1312.

POPE

HENRY
VII.The Pope
arms him-
self against
this Expe-
dition.

POPE Clement, tho' from the beginning of Henry's Reign, he had never ceas'd soliciting him to come to Rome, chang'd his Mind as soon as he saw him on the Road, with a sufficient Force, to re-establish the Imperial Sovereignty and Authority in Italy. Hereupon he enter'd into secret Negotiations on all sides to thwart his Designs; and, in order to put himself in a Condition to oppose him, committed the Government of Rome to Robert King of Apulia or Naples, (with whom he had enter'd into a League against the Emperor) who sent in his stead his Brother Prince John as Governor, with a good Body of Troops, and at the same Time, made a Confederacy with the Cities of Florence, Bologna, Sienna, Lucca, Cremona, Padua, Brescia, and some others, all of which being provided with strong Garrisons, and all Sorts of Ammunition and Provision, put themselves in a Posture to resist the Emperor.

Division of
the Citizens
of Rome.

As for Rome the Citizens were all in Confusion, those of the Colonna's Party, and their Adherents were for the Emperor, and had seiz'd upon St. John de Lateran, the Amphitheatre, and some other principal Places. These assum'd the old Title of *Gibelins*; and the others who were leagu'd with Prince John, were call'd *Guelphs*, and made themselves Masters of the Capitol, the Castle of St. Angelo, Adrian's Mole, and the Vatican. Henry, according to the Custom of his Predecessors, had dispatch'd Envoys towards the Cities of Italy, to give them Notice of his coming, with Orders to have the Provisions, and other Necessaries in Readiness for his Court, and for his Troops.

The Empe-
ror reduces
most of the
Cities of
Italy.

THE City of Milan, and other Places of Lombardy, received the Emperor with Joy, and paid him a considerable Sum of Money upon

on the annual Arrears, and the City of *Cremona*, being the first that resolv'd to oppose him, he took it by Force, and oblig'd it also to pay the Arrears that were due; but *Parma*, *Vicenza*, and *Piacenza* agreed with him on reasonable Conditions. *Padua* paid 100,000 Crowns, and received one of the Emperor's Colonels as Governor of the City; the *Venetians* presented his Majesty with a considerable Sum of Money, and an Imperial Crown of Gold embellish'd with Diamonds, and a Chain of Silver gilt, exquisitely wrought. *Brescia* made some little Resistance, but was oblig'd, as well as the rest, to contribute to the Expences of the War. From hence *Henry* having received the Iron Crown at *Milan*, and appointed a Governor there, as well as at *Verona*, *Parma*, and *Mantua*, march'd directly to *Genoa*, where he was magnificently received, and entertain'd by that City.

IN fine, on his arrival at *Pisa*, he there met the Express sent him by the *Colonna's*, who were of his Party, begging him to advance with all Speed to *Rome*, which he did, and took it Sword in Hand. There he caus'd himself to be crown'd on the first Day of *August*, in *St. John de Lateran's* Church, by three Cardinals who resided there in the Pope's Name, and were oblig'd to perform that Ceremony, in spite of the secret Intrigues of his Holiness himself, who was averse to it. Before his Coronation the Emperor us'd to allow those Cardinals who came to visit him the Honour of dining at his Table, but after that Solemnity he would no longer permit any of them to sit with him. On his Departure from *Rome* he appointed the Count *de Bouchet*, and *Stephen Colonna* Governors, who a little after triumph'd over the *Guelphs*, and reduc'd all the City under his Power.

Reduces
Rome, and
is crown'd
there.

FROM

HENRY VII.

The King of
Naples put
to the Ban
of the Em-
pire.

1313.

The Pope
and Empe-
ror embroil-
ed together.

The Empe-
ror's Expe-
dition a-
gainst
Robert
King of
Naples.

FROM Rome Henry return'd to Pisa, whither he summon'd all the Princes of Italy, and order'd them to pay him regularly, for the future, their annual and usual Tribute, after which, having deliberated with them upon the Act of Hostility which Robert King of Naples had committed against the Empire, he caus'd him to be cited before him, as a Feudatary thereof on Account of his Kingdom, and, on his refusal to appear before him, put him to the Ban, on the twenty fifth of April 1313, confiscating his Kingdom, and giving it to Frederick King of Sicily, who was in the Emperor's Interests. The Pope, not being willing to see his Ally entirely ruin'd, wrote very urgent Letters to Henry, to incite him to an Agreement; but they had a contrary Effect, for they were dictat'd in such Terms, as seem'd as if 'twas a Lord who treated with his Vassal, even so far, as that his Holiness said, that the Emperor was bound to him by his Oath of Allegiance. Henry, enrag'd at these Letters, sent for Notaries, and protested, by a publick Declaration, that neither himself nor any of his Predecessors had ever been dependent on any one; whereby it seem'd that the Pope took the Oath the Emperor made at his Coronation, for an Oath of Allegiance. But it was quite otherwise, as Henry made him sensible; for he only swore to be Protector and Defender of his Holiness, and the Holy See, which is the same Oath as all Kings take when they swear to protect and defend the Church.

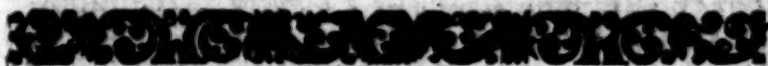
ACCORDINGLY the Emperor left nothing undone to shew his Resentment against the Pope, and, in order to put the Sentence pass'd against Robert more easily in Execution, he join'd his Forces with those of Frederick, King of Sicily, and caus'd Robert's Dominions to be attack'd

Chap. XXVI. of the EMPIRE.

335

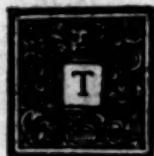
attack'd both by Sea and Land. But resolving to be in Person at this Expedition, altho' already very much indispos'd, and being advanced as far as *Buenconvento*, he there terminated both his Exploits, and his Life, for he died there of Poison, the twenty fourth of *August* 1313, and his noble Projects, for the Re-establishment of the Imperial Authority in *Italy*, died with him. His Successors took the same Care of his Funeral Pomp, as he did of his Predecessors the Emperors *Albert* and *Rodolphus*; for he caus'd the Body of the first to be carried from *Koningsfelt* to *Spires*, and that of *Rodolphus* to be also transferr'd from *Rosendal* to *Spires*, interring them both in the great Church with a Royal Magnificence, attending it himself, and being accompany'd by several other Princes and Noblemen.

HENRY
VII.



CHAP. XXVI.

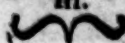
LEWIS the Fifth of Bavaria, and
FREDERICK the Third of Austria
called the Fair.



THE Disorders and Dangers which had already begun to interrupt the Commerce in *Germany* during the Life of *Henry VII*, increas'd after his Death to such an Excess, that certain Cities upon the *Rhine* were oblig'd to unite themselves together, with the Prince Palatine *Rodolphus* Duke of *Bavaria*. He sign'd the

*Disorders in
the Em-
pire during
the Inter-
regnum.*

LEWIS V.
and FRE-
DERICK
III.



1314.

the Act of Confederacy the same Year 1313, both in his own Name, and in that of his Brother *Lewis*, to protect himself from Robbers and their Abettors, or Relations, who undertook to revenge the Death of such as were punish'd, and even dar'd attempt upon the Inhabitants of the Cities where they were executed. This Confederacy was to subsist till the Election of an Emperor, and the *Interregnum* lasted from the fourteenth of *August* 1313, when *Henry* died, to to the eighteenth of *October* 1314, during which *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, and Duke *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, both Cousin-Germans, and Grandsons to the Emperor *Rodolphus*, made Interest for the Empire, by the Assistance of their respective Friends.

The States
dividing,
chose two
Emperors at
the same
Time,
Lewis of
Bavaria,
and *Frede-
rick* of
Austria.

IN fine, *Peter* Archbishop of *Mentz*, *Baldwin* Archbishop of *Treves*, who was also Count of *Luxemburg*, and Brother to the Emperor *Henry VII*, and *Henry* of *Virnberg* Archbishop of *Cologne*, with *John* King of *Bobemia*, Son to the same Emperor *Rodolphus*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and *Lewis* Duke of *Bavaria* his Brother, *Volmar* Marquis of *Brandenbourg*, *Rodolphus* Son to *Albert II*, Duke of *Saxony*, and *Eric* Son to *John III*, Duke of *Lower Saxony*, arriv'd at *Frankfort* on the *Mein*, in the beginning of *October*; but when they came to deliberate upon the Choice of an Emperor, the Electors were divided. Those of *Mentz*, *Treves*, *Bobemia*, and *Brandenbourg* declared publicly for *Lewis* Duke of *Bavaria*, who was then in the very City of *Frankfort*, and the Archbishop of *Cologne*, the Count Palatine, and Duke of *Saxony*, for *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, whose Quarters were at *Saxenhausen*, on the other side of the River. Hereupon *Lewis* set out immediately for *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crown'd by the Arch-
shop

Chap. XXVI. of the EMPIRE.

335

shop of *Mentz*; the rest of the Electors not being able to go there, continued at *Bon*, where the Elector of *Cologne* crown'd Duke *Frederick*: Thus *John* King of *Bavaria* was excluded from the Imperial Crown; but we shall soon see it upon the Head of his Son *Charles IV*.

LEWIS V.
and FREDERICK
III.

THE two Emperors being thus crown'd, us'd their utmost Endeavours to gain the Imperial Cities, and procure themselves all the Advantage they could possibly to the Prejudice of each other. This Dispute, which had almost caus'd the total Ruin of all the States of the Empire, lasted till *Michaelmas Day* 1322, when the Emperors came to a general Battle near *Muldorf*, with each of them an Army of 30,000 Men; for before that they contented themselves with harrassing each other, without coming to any decisive Engagement, but only ruining the Country by their Quarters.

The Dispute of the Emperors causes the Ruin of the Empire.
1315.

1312.

1320.

THEY fought with great Obstinacy, and when *Frederick* thought he had gain'd the Victory, having put his Enemies to Flight, an experienced Captain of *Lewis's* Party, nam'd *Scupperman*, rally'd the Fugitives so readily, and lead them on so briskly to the Charge, that it appear'd that their Flight was but a Feint, the better to take their Advantage: This Stratagem gain'd *Lewis* the Battle. The first Prisoner that was brought him, was Duke *Henry*, *Frederick's* Brother, wounded to Death; then the Burgrave of *Nuremberg* presented him the Emperor *Frederick* himself, who after having fought with surprizing Valour, and kill'd fifty Men with his own Hand, had surrender'd himself to him, finding himself abandon'd by all his Men. The Emperor *Lewis*, seeing himself Master of *Frederick's* Person, immediately gave Orders to his Troops to give over the Pursuit of their

1322.
The two Emperors came to a Battle, where Frederick is taken Prisoner.

Z

Enemies

Enemies, and secured his Prisoner in the Castle of *Transuirz*, where he staid three Years.

L E W I S *alone.*

LEWIS V

MOST of the Princes of the Empire who had espous'd *Frederick's* Party, seeing it entirely ruin'd by this compleat Defeat, and the Imprisonment of their Leader, reconcil'd themselves to *Lewis*, and acknowledg'd him for the lawful Emperor; and they who made a Difficulty of submitting to him were oblig'd to it by Force. But his Resentment appear'd more manifestly against *Rodolphus* Count Palatine his Brother, who had favoured *Frederick's* Election, and still upheld his Party; for he drove him out of his Dominions, and constrain'd him to retire into *England* with his Family, where he died in extream Poverty. But his Children were recall'd after his Death, and *Lewis* restor'd them to their paternal Estate, but nevertheless he made the Electoral Dignity alternative between them and himself, on Condition however that they should enjoy it first.

By the Consent of the Princes and States of the Empire, he also appropriated to his Family the Marquisate of *Brandenbourg*, vacant by the Death of *Wolmar* II, and *John* IV his Brother, who died a few Days after him, and was the last of the Marquisses of *Brandenbourg*, of the Posterity of *Otho* I, Count of *Anbalt*. Insomuch that, seeing he had nothing to apprehend from *Germany*, he no longer put himself in Pain about pacifying Pope *John* XXII, who was his declar'd Enemy, and had us'd his utmost Endeavours to render his Election void.

THIS

THIS Pontif, however, did not cease travers-^{LEWIS. V.}
ing him all that lay in his Power, being,
besides his own Inclination thereto, strongly
solicited to it by the Princes *Leopold*, *Otho*, and
Albert, Dukes of *Austria*, *Frederick's* Brothers,
who left no Stone unturn'd to dethrone *Lewis*.
His Holiness was not wanting herein, but, to
dispose Things for that Purpose, order'd a Bull
to be drawn up, whereby he declared that the
Imperial Dignity had been a Fief of the Holy
See, from the Time that the *Roman* Empire had
been transferr'd from the *Greeks* to the *Romans*,
in the Person of *Charlemagne*.

To prove this, he alledg'd this Reason, that
from that Time it was ordain'd, that the E-
lection of an Emperor should not be valid till
it had been approv'd of, and confirm'd by the
Pope, who was the Father or Prince of all *Chri-
stendom*; and that the Prince elected should not
assume the Title of Emperor till his Ele-
ction had been so ratify'd. He added, that the
Empire being vacant by Death, or otherwise,
the Pope alone was to take Care of it, and have
the Administration of Affairs during the *Inter-
regnum*, and even during the Contest of the two
Competitors, neither of them being able to call
themselves Emperor till that Title should be
adjudg'd them by his Holiness, and they had
taken the Oath of Allegiance to him, as Vicar
or Lieutenant to him who is Emperor of Heaven
and Earth: Farther, that as it belongs to the
Soul and Understanding to command and go-
vern, and to the Body to submit to their Orders
and obey, so in *Christendom* frail and perish-
able Things ought to be subject to those that
are Celestial and Eternal, the Profane to the
Sacred, and the Corporeal to the Spiritual: And
that this is accomplish'd when the Pope, by his

LEWIS V.

own Authority, acts in both Capacities, when the Church governs, and when the Empire and all its Powers were subject, and humbled themselves to its Laws.

HENCE he concluded, that since the Princes of *Germany* were divided after the Death of *Henry VII*, and had elected two Princes, both of whom pretended to the Crown, it was his Right to adjudge it to one of the Competitors, and govern the Empire in the interim. Wherefore, as *Lewis* had incroach'd upon his Authority, he commanded him, by Virtue of the Power given him by Heaven, to quit the Imperial Dignity, lay aside all the Functions of an Emperor, and prohibited him from ever more pretending to it without the Pope's exprefs Permission and Command; enjoining moreover all Patriarchs, Bishops, Priests, Lords, and Communities, to forsake him, and refuse him any Obedience.

THE Emperor seeing this Bull, summon'd an Assembly of all the most learned Persons in *Germany*, whether Ecclesiasticks, Doctors of the Civil Law, or Councillors, to examine it, and deliver their Thoughts thereupon. They unanimously answer'd, that it was unjust, unreasonable, contrary to the Christian Religion, and that he ought to appeal to a general Council. *Lewis* comply'd with this Opinion, and having made his Protestations against the Bull, and answer'd it Article by Article, reproaching the Pope that he was himself a Favourer of Heresy, since he would abolish the Sovereign Authority of Princes, which was establish'd by GOD himself, he notify'd his Appeal with all the Formalities requisite in the like Cases. But the Pope was so offended thereat, that he immediately proceeded to his Excommunication.

THIS

Chap. XXVI. of the EMPIRE.

339

THIS News coming to the Ears of the Princes and States of the Empire, oblig'd them to meet at *Ratisbon*, where 'twas resolv'd to beg the Emperor to give Orders that the Imperial Dignity should not be trod under Foot, and the *German* Liberty be thus reduc'd to Slavery. 'Twas also determin'd there, that the Pope's Procedure should be held as abusive and null, and that they, who should have regard to those Bulls, should be punish'd as Disturbers of the publick Tranquillity, and Enemies of the Empire. Hereupon his Holiness, finding that the Pretence he had made use of for the Excommunication of *Lewis* shock'd all the *German* Princes, thought it proper to have recourse to another: Wherefore he declared him a Heretick, and a Favourer of Hereticks, and issued out the Excommunication against him on this Account, after which he gave Orders to *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, *Frederick's* Brother, to assemble some Princes and Noblemen to execute the Sentence. The Archbishop of *Mentz* oppos'd this, but at the same Time he desired the Emperor to consider that *Germany* had never been so well united but the Popes had found means to disturb its Repose by their Artifices, and that he could not defend himself against them any Ways better than by agreeing with his Enemies, especially the Princes of *Austria*.

HEREUPON *Lewis* follow'd the Archbishop's Advice, and causing such Proposals of Peace to be made to *Frederick*, as he was willing to consent to, it was agreed between them that he should be set at Liberty, on Condition he would renounce his Pretensions to the Imperial Dignity during *Lewis's* Life. This Treaty was punctually executed; and the Reconciliation of the two Princes was concluded at *Mourpach*,
Z 3
where

Lewis V. where they communicated together, and *Frederick*, to give a certain Proof of the Sincerity of his Intentions, promis'd *Lewis*, by an authentick Deed, that none of the House of *Austria* should ever pretend to the Imperial Crown, when they knew any of the *Bavarian* Family aspired to it.

THIS Peace gave *Lewis* Leisure to think of the Affairs of *Italy*, which he resolv'd to apply himself to in good Earnest, with a View not only of causing himself to be crown'd at *Rome*, but to strengthen the *Gibelins* Party against the Pope, and the King of *Naples*, who had sent a considerable Army, compos'd almost wholly of *French* and *Gascons*, to the Relief of the City of *Florence*, then besieg'd by *Castruccio*, in the Emperor's Name. The *Gibelins* had valued the Thunder of his Holiness no more than *Lewis*; it had only animated them the more to maintain their own Party, and ruin that of *John*, supported by the *Guelpbs*, and King *Robert* their Head. Besides, the *Romans* had driven the Pope's Creatures from the City, and sent boldly to tell him to come and reside at *Rome*, threatening otherwise to set their Affairs in Order themselves; and hearing that he had no Intention to satisfy them, they resolv'd to press the Emperor to hasten with all speed into *Italy*, and no longer defer coming and being crown'd at *Rome*.

Lewis resolves upon his Expedition into Italy, and sets out.
1327.

HEREUPON *Lewis*, seeing it a proper Juncture to undertake the Expedition, summon'd a Diet at *Spires* in 1326, where, upon the Remonstrances he made of the general Situation of Affairs, the Princes and other States granted him both Troops and Money for his *Italian* Expedition. He set out then accordingly, and in the beginning of the Year 1327 arriv'd at *Trent*, where the Heads of his Party, the Deputies

ties of Cities, and such as were Disaffected to the Pope resorted to him, to receive him as the Deliverer they had so long desired and expected. Being arrived at *Milan*, with the Empress his Consort, he was there crown'd King of *Italy*; then advancing the next Year towards the City of *Rome*, the Governor and Senators came out to meet him, received him with great Pomp, and crown'd him at *St. Peter's Church*, with the Imperial Diadem, in Presence of the Empress, with the usual Ceremonies, and universal Applause of the Noblemen and People.

*Jan. seven-
teen 1328.*

THE Emperor stay'd at *Rome* nine Months; during which he regulated all Things, and restor'd Peace to *Italy*; in the mean while the Pope, for his Part, again publish'd his Bulls of Excommunication and Deposition against him, and would in no ways hear of an Agreement, unless *Lewis* would resign the Sovereign Authority, and, as a private Man, submit to whatever Sentence it should please him to pronounce, with regard to his Election; In short, he treated him so injuriously, that, losing all Patience, it oblig'd him to resolve on proceeding to the Choice of another Pope.

To prepare the Way for this Election, he call'd together a numerous Assembly at *Rome*, on the fourteenth of *April*, where he depos'd *John*, on Pretence of his being a Heretick, and having deserted his Church, prohibiting all the Subjects of the Empire to acknowledge him as Pope. The twenty third of the same Month he made a Law, enjoining all Bishops, and his Holiness expressly by Name, not to be absent from their Sees longer than three Months, nor above two Days Journey, without the Consent of their respective Chapters; ordering also, that, in Case they had been thrice summon'd home, and

LEWIS V. did not obey, they should no longer be acknowledged as Bishops, but that they should proceed to a new Election, in the same manner as in Case of Demise. And on the twenty-eighth of April, according to a Law made the fourteenth, whereby he condemn'd all declared Hereticks to Death, he pass'd Sentence of Death against *John de Cabors* ('twas thus he call'd Pope *John XXII*) as being convicted of manifest Heresy, and of high Treason, for having incroach'd upon the Rights of the Empire, turning out the Deputies establish'd by the Emperor, and supplying their Places with others, by his own proper Authority.

He creates
another
Pope, in
John's Ab-
sence.

LEWIS regarding these Steps but as the Preludes to his Vengeance, assembled all the most considerable Persons, either in his Court, or Rome, and, causing a Cordelier, call'd Father *Peter de Corvaria*, to come near him, placed him on his left Hand, in a Chair something lower than his own, where, asking the Assembly thrice if they would choose this Father *Peter* Pope, and they answering, *Tes*, he invested him with the Papacy, by putting a Ring on his Finger, and a Cope over his Shoulders. Then placing him on his right Hand, in a pontifical Chair, he saluted him Pontif, by the Name of *Nicolas V*, took him by the Hand, and led him into St. *Peter's* Church, where the new Pope celebrated Mass, and gave the Papal Benediction to the People. Some Days after, *Lewis*, to give his Holiness more Authority, was again crown'd by his Hand, the Solemnity being perform'd on *Whit-Sunday*.

THE Emperor also resolv'd to recover the Imperial Rights and Territories, which *Robert* King of *Naples* and *Apulia* had usurp'd by *John's* Order; but having given that Prince Time to put

Chap. XXVI. of the EMPIRE.

343

put himself in a Posture of Defence, he was oblig'd to change his Design. Wherefore, establishing the best Order he could in the City of Rome, partly by the Consent of the Inhabitants, on the Hopes he gave them to return and reside there as soon as he had regulated Affairs in Germany, he went to pass some Months at Pisa, where the new Pontif follow'd him, and Lewis renew'd the Sentence pronounced against Pope John.

LEWIS V.

THIS done, he set out on his Way towards Germany, where he arriv'd in the End of the Year 1329, and found so much Business upon his Hands, that he could think no more of Rome. His Enemies, who cut out this Work for him, were not ignorant thereof; and the Romans themselves seeing he did not return, whatever Intreaties they made, chang'd their Inclinations on a sudden, recall'd the Cardinal Legate, and the Guelphs, and put themselves under John's Government, without any farther Reflexion. Nicholas, on the other hand, finding himself forsaken, took a Resolution to retire from Pisa, go to Avignon, and submit himself to the Pope's Discretion; whereupon his Holiness gave him his Palace for his Prison, where Nicholas ended his Life three Years after.

1329.
Returns to
Germany.

The Romans
change their
Minds, and
the Anti-
Pope is re-
concil'd to
the Pope.

JOHN XXII did not long survive him, for he died the Year following, on the fourth of December 1334, and was succeeded by Bennet XII. But John's Spirit still subsisted in the Factions he had fomented against the Emperor; for John King of Bohemia, elate with the Hopes given him by France and Rome, of setting the Imperial Crown on the Head of his Son Charles of Luxembourg, had strengthen'd himself with the Alliance of the Kings of Hungary and Poland. He had also levy'd a considerable Army, with Design

1334.
Pope John
dies, War
between the
King of
Bohemia
and the
Emperor,
who gain
a Victory
over him.

LEWIS V. Design to carry the War into the Heart of *Bavaria*; but *Lewis* putting himself in a Condition to march against him, harass'd him in such a manner, that he was oblig'd to come to a general Battle. The Fight was bloody and obstinate for a long Time; but at last the *Bohemians* were utterly put to the Rout, with all their Auxiliaries; however, this Defeat neither disheartened them, nor dash'd the Hopes of their King, who depended upon the Friendship and Assistance of the *French*. Hereupon he concerted new Measures with the King of *France*, unto whom he dispatch'd his Son *Charles* on this Account; and the Emperor, to break them, bethought himself of making a League, as he accordingly found Means to do, with *Edward* King of *England*, against the *French*.

1337.
The States
defend the
Rights of
the Empire
against the
Pope's Pre-
tensions.

NEVERTHELESS, he left no Stone unturn'd to regain the Affection of the Holy See, in the Person of *Bennet*; but that Pontif resolving not to hear of any Reconciliation, for fear of disobliging the King of *France*, both the Ecclesiastical and Secular Princes of the Empire met together, declared the Empire independent of the Pope, and *Lewis* of *Bavaria* lawful Emperor, without having any Occasion for either the Consent, Approbation, or Confirmation of the Holy See. This done, they sent to desire his Holiness to annul the Sentences of his Predecessor, and declared to him that in Case of Failure, they would provide against them another Way.

THE Pope refusing to give the States of *Germany* this Satisfaction, the Emperor summon'd a Diet at *Frankfort* the eighth of *August* 1338, where that celebrated Constitution was made, in Form of Law, whereby the Independence of the Empire was establish'd to Perpetuity.

T H E

THE Year following, *Lewis*, pushing his Point, *Lewis V.*
 took off the Interdict sent by *John XXII* by *Lewis takes*
 his own Authority; driving out of the Churches off the
 such as were refractory, which Severity at last *Pope's In-*
 made all obedient. But whilst the Emperor *terdict, and*
 was thus employ'd in abridging the Pope's *re-esta-*
 Temporal Authority in *Germany*, his own went *blishes Af-*
 to ruin in *Italy*, and all was at Rack and Man- *fairs by his*
 ger, when *Bennet* happen'd to dye at *Avignon*, *own Reso-*
 the twenty fifth of *April* 1342, and *Clement* *lution.*
VI, a *Frenchman* by Nation, and Archbishop of *1342.*
Rouen, was chosen in his Stead. This new *Fresh Trou-*
 Pontif, by his Bulls of the twelfth of *April* *bles between*
 1343 renew'd all the Sentences of Excommuni- *the Pope*
 cation issued by *John XXII*, and *Bennet XII* *and the*
 against the Emperor, and even strove to ex- *Emperor.*
 cite all *Italy* against him. *1343.*

HEREUPON *Lewis*, whom one may truly call
 a Martyr to the *Independency*, as *Henry V* had
 been to the *Investitures*, resolving to manifest
 his Innocence to all *Europe*, sought the Pope's
 Friendship, even during the height of his Per-
 secution; and accordingly, in the Year 1344,
 sent a famous Embassy to treat of his Recon-
 ciliation. But the Conditions prescrib'd the
 Ambassadors were so very unreasonable, that
 they could proceed no farther therein; where-
 upon they return'd to *Germany* to make their
 Report thereof. *1344.*

THE Emperor, having seen these Articles,
 shew'd himself a better Politician than the
 Pope, who had given them in Writing; for,
 sending Copies thereof to all the States of the
 Empire, they caus'd such a general Indignation
 in all the States of the Empire, and at the same
 Time gain'd *Lewis* so much Favour, that all the
 Princes and States assembling at *Frankfort* in
 September 1345, the Articles being read pub-
 lickly *1345.*

LEWIS V. lickly, were rejected, as an Outrage committed against the Honour of the Empire; and a second Embassy was order'd to be sent to his Holiness, in the Name of all the States, to beg him to retract these Articles, or that otherwise they would themselves take such Measures as they thought proper on that Account.

1546.

THE Pope, more enraged than ever, that they did not subscribe implicitly to his Desires, thunder'd out fresh Excommunications the Year after, against *Lewis* and his Adherents, without regarding the Request made to him from that Prince in particular, to moderate those Articles. He even push'd the Matter farther, being himself spurr'd on by *Philip* of *Valois* King of *France*, who, altho' he had made Peace with the Emperor, was not displeas'd at finding him Employment: For he tamper'd with as many Princes as he could, to secure himself of their Suffrages, and prevail on them to proceed to the Election of another Emperor.

Charles of
Luxemb-
bourg e-
lected by
the Pope's
Intrigues.

As all these good Offices were in Favour of *Charles* of *Luxembourg*, Son to *John* King of *Bobemia*, who was one of the most considerable Voices in the Electoral College, and they were assured of that of *Baldwin* Archbishop of *Treves*, Uncle to the said King of *Bobemia*, they only endeavour'd to gain the other Votes. *Clement* had excommunicated *Henry* of *Wernebourg*, Archbishop of *Mentz*, because he was in the Emperor's Interest; wherefore he was at no Trouble in having Count *Gerlac* of *Nassau*, Canon of *Mentz*, at his Devotion, whom he had promoted to that Archbishoprick.

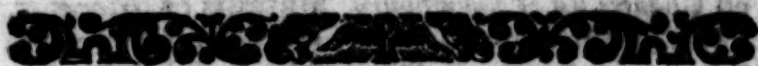
THE Suffrage of *Walderan* of *Juliers*, Archbishop of *Cologn*, was bought for 8,000 Marks in Silver, and *Rodolphus* Duke of *Saxony* had 2,000 given him for his. These were the Prin-
ces

ces, who, meeting at *Rentz*, near *Coblentz*, elect-^{LEWIS V}
ed Charles of Luxembourg, Marquis of *Moravia*,
 King of the *Romans*, who, not having it in his
 Power to be crown'd at *Cologne*, because that
 City would acknowledge no other Emperor but
Lewis of Bavaria, was crown'd at *Bon* in the
 same Year by the new Archbishop of *Mentz*.

THE other Princes and States of the Empire ^{The other}
 continued firm and faithful to *Lewis*, annull'd ^{Princes con-}
 this Election, and united themselves yet more ^{tinues faith-}
 strongly to that Prince; neither did his good ^{ful to the}
 Fortune stop there; for he had the Happiness to ^{old Emperor,}
 hear that his Son *Lewis*, Marquis of *Luxembourg*, ^{who gains a}
 had attack'd *Charles* the new King of the Ro- ^{Victory a-}
mans some Time after in *Tirol*, and defeated ^{new One.}
 him. Thus he reign'd to the End of his Life,
 belov'd and esteem'd by all his Subjects.

WHAT made him the more belov'd, was, that
 he did not frequent the Imperial Cities, to have
 his Court maintain'd at their Expence, as was
 usually done by his Predecessors; but content-
 ed himself with going thither at the Time of
 holding Diets, and when the Necessity of his
 Affairs requir'd it. He took great Pleasure in
 his own Duchy of *Bavaria*, and diverted him-
 self more in hunting than in any other Exer-
 cise, but it cost him his Life; for on the 11th
 of *October*, the Year following, being in pursuit
 of a Bear, he fell from his Horse, being seiz'd,
 as was believ'd, with an Appoplexy, and re-
 ceiv'd such a Contusion, that he died, having
 but just Time to recommend himself to the
 Divine Mercy, and was buried at *Munich*.





C H A P. XXVII.

C H A R L E S *the Fourth.*

*His Birth
and Edu-
cation.*



HIS Prince, Son to *John King of Bohemia*, Count of *Luxembourg*, and Grandson to *Henry VII*, was born at *Prague* the fourteenth of *May 1316*, and was nam'd *Wenceslaus* at his Baptism; but his Father sending him into *France*, in 1323, to King *Charles the Fair*, who was married to *Mary of Luxembourg* his Sister, and Aunt to *Wenceslaus*, the King and Queen of *France*, who were the more fond and tender of him, as they had no Children themselves, caus'd him to be call'd *Charles*, on his receiving Confirmation, which Name he retain'd. They also provided him excellent Tutors, under whom he learn'd the *Latin*, *French*, and *Italian*, besides the *German* and *Bobemian* Tongues, which were natural to him.

At the Age of seventeen, his Father invested him with the Marquisate of *Moravia*, which he govern'd with so much Reputation, that he was advanced to the Throne of *Bobemia* after his Father's Death with little Difficulty; and the less, in that the Year before he, by the Pope's Persuasion, was thought worthy of being chosen King of the *Romans* by some Electors and Princes assembled at *Rentz*, on the *Rhine*.

A F T E R

AFTER his Father's Decease, he prepar'd immediately to renew the War, and having rais'd a considerable Army, took the Rout towards *Bavaria*, to take his Revenge of the Emperor *Lewis*; but hearing, on his March, of that Emperor's Death, he said immediately with a Sigh, *Praise be to GOD, who, in the Wonders of his Providence, has saved me the Effusion of Christian Blood, and remov'd the Occasion of taking revenge of my Enemies.*

CHARLES
IV.

UPON this News, he directed his March towards the Territories of the Empire, and caus'd himself to be acknowledg'd King and Emperor of the *Romans*, by the Cities of *Ratisbon*, *Nuremberg*, and twenty four other Imperial Cities on the *Rhine*. After this he return'd to *Prague*, the Capital of his Kingdom of *Bohemia*, where, in the following Year 1348, he began to build the new City of *Prague*. As soon as he was retir'd into *Bohemia*, the Electors (*viz.*) *Henry* Archbishop of *Mentz*, *Robert* Count Palatine, *Lewis* Marquis of *Brandenbourg*, and *Eric* Duke of *Saxony*, who did not assist at his Election, met together, and chose *Edward* King of *England* Emperor; but he not caring to accept of that Dignity, thank'd the Electors, and desired to be excus'd; which obliging them to a new Choice, they nam'd *Frederick* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, who, being afflicted with the Gout, was easily persuaded by *Charles* to renounce the Imperial Dignity, in Consideration of 10,000 Marks in Silver.

Is acknowledg'd by the Emperor.

1348. Some States choose other Emperors, and lastly Gunther of Schwartzembourg.

HOWEVER, these Electors, not being at all dishearten'd, at last elected *Gunther* Count of *Schwartzembourg*, a brave Nobleman, and a Person of Merit: He accepted of the Honour, on Condition that the Electors should conduct him to *Frankfort*, and cause him to be there publickly

1349.

CHARLES
IV.

lickly proclaim'd Emperor, which they solemnly promis'd. He exacted this of them, because he had reason to apprehend that the Magistrates and Burghers of that City would take Advantage of an antient Privilege, which was to refuse Entrance to any King of the *Romans*, or Emperor, who should be chosen but by one Part of the Electors, especially whenever there was another nam'd by a contrary Party, or, when the Electors being divided among themselves, one Party had nam'd one, and the other Party another. For in these Cases the City would not receive either, till one of them had decided the Quarrel with his Competitor by Force of Arms; and 'twas not till then that the Inhabitants would open their Gates to the Conqueror.

ACCORDINGLY the Electors, in Performance of their Promise, assisted Count *Gunther* to raise an Army sufficient to force the City to open its Gates, in Case of a Refusal; which happening, as was foreseen by the Count, he besieg'd it, and at the End of two Months the Citizens thought themselves oblig'd to receive him; because the Emperor *Charles* had not attempted to raise the Siege, which was a Sign he confess'd himself vanquish'd.

*Gunther
poisoned.*

DURING the Count's Stay at *Frankfort*, he was indispos'd, and, upon taking a Purge wherein Poison had been mix'd, lost the Use of his Limbs; hereupon he was so earnestly solicited, during his Sickness, to give up his Election, in Consideration of 22,000 Marks of Silver, that he consented, and dying a Month after, was honourably buried by the Emperor *Charles*, who was present.

THIS done, he chastized the City of *Frankfort*, for having received *Gunther*, and as a Punishment

Chap. XXVII. of the EMPIRE.

351

Punishment, depriv'd her of her Privileges and her Fair, and transferr'd it to *Mentz*, without having any Regard to her pretended Rights. However, some Time afterwards he restor'd her to the same Rights and Privileges, as likewise to her Fair, in Consideration of a Fine of 20,000 Marks in Silver. However, as soon as he saw himself deliver'd from his Competitors, to leave no Room to doubt of the Validity of his Election, he gain'd over the Electors who had not assisted thereat, insomuch that it was confirm'd by them, and he was crown'd, not at *Aix*, on Account of the Plague that then raged there, but in another City, resolving to be crown'd at *Rome* as soon as he could undertake that Expedition.

CHARLES IV.

1354.
Charles crown'd in Germany.

THE Year following, the Affairs of *Germany* permitting him to pass the *Alps*, he set out on his March, and arriving fortunately at *Rome*, was there received with the utmost Magnificence, by the Legates, Senators, the Pope's Deputies, and the *Roman* Clergy and People, as had been agreed between him and *Innocent VI*, after which he was there crown'd on *Easter-Day*, with his Empress *Anne* Princess Palatine, by the same Legates. This Ceremony being perform'd, he bent his Thoughts wholly upon returning to *Germany*, according to the same Agreement between the Pope and him.

1355.
Crown'd also at Rome.

ON his Return, he found the Empire full of Troubles, which proceeded from the Princes having an Opinion of their being upon an Equality with each other. As 'twas observ'd that this Pretension to Equality had taken its Rise from the Election of the Emperors, the Forms whereof had never been digested into Writing, and the Number of Electors being neither fix'd, nor appropriated to any certain Princes, more than

He endeavours to root out the Troubles of the Empire.

CHARLES
IV.

than the rest, insomuch that the principal States call'd themselves Electors, because they had all a Right to elect, the Emperor apply'd himself wholly to settle Matters so well, that they should no more fall into the like Confusion on that Account.

1356.
Institution
and Publi-
cation of the
Golden Bull.

HEREUPON he called a Diet at Nuremberg, in January 1356, where the Electors, with other Princes, Counts, Lords, and Deputies of the *Hans Towns*, assembled in great Number. Herein 'twas not only resolv'd to reduce, into the Form of Constitutions, several Customs which had never yet been digested, or drawn up in Writing, and were increas'd by divers wholesome Regulations that were useful, and conducive to the Publick Good, but they also made the famous Edict call'd, the *Golden Bull*, (which was thus term'd on Account of its golden Seal, then nam'd a Bull) concerning the Form and Ceremony of electing Emperors, the Number of Electors, their Functions, Rights, Privileges, and all that had Relation to the general Government of the Empire.

Of thirty Articles whereof it consisted, but three and twenty were then pass'd, which the Emperor, by the Consent of all the Princes and States of the Empire then present, caused to be read and publish'd in his Presence, as he sat on his Throne, with the Crown on his Head, and vested with all the other Imperial Ornaments. Then, towards the latter End of the Year, he held another Diet at Metz, wherein he added the other seven Articles, which were also published in Presence of the same Electors, Princes, and States of the Empire, the Cardinal of *Alba*, and Charles the eldest Son of France, Duke of *Normandy* and Dauphin of *Viennois* his Nephew. And because this is a
pragma

pragmatical Sanction, which is observ'd to this Day, we have insert'd it at the End of this Work, to serve for a more particular Instruction.

CHARLES then having observ'd all the Formalities necessary for this Edict, to make it a fundamental Law of the Empire, began to have it put in Execution, by the Service he desired of the Electors, and others, in a magnificent Entertainment which he made the next Day.

THE Emperor and Empress, vested in their Imperial Ornaments, having first heard a solemn Mass, accompany'd by all the Prelates, and Princes, went to the Place where the Entertainment was prepar'd for them. This was in the Middle of the Market-Place, where the Table was spread upon an Ascent, rais'd on Steps for that Purpose. As soon as their Imperial Majesties were placed, the three Ecclesiastical Electors (*viz.*) *Levis* Archbishop of *Mentz*, *Connon* Archbishop of *Treves*, and *Frederick* Archbishop of *Cologne*, came on Horseback as Arch-Chancellors of the Empire (the first being Arch-Chancellor of *Germany*, the second of the *Gauls*, and the third of *Italy*) with each of them a Seal hanging about their Necks, and a Letter in their right Hands. After them came also the four Secular Electors on Horseback, first *Wenceslaus* Duke of *Saxony*, carrying in his right Hand a Silver Peck full of Oats, as Arch-Marshal of the Empire, and as 'twas likewise his Office to place the Princes, each of them according to their Rank, he rang'd his Colleagues in their respective Places. Next *Otho* Marquis of *Brandenbourg*, alighting from his Horse, held the Water for the Emperor and Empress to wash, in a gold Basin and Ewer; then *Robert* the Red, Count Palatine, dismounting, carry'd up the

CHARLES
IV.

golden Dishes to the Imperial Table; after him *Wenceslaus* Duke of *Luxembourg* and *Brabant*, the Emperor's Nephew, representing his Imperial Majesty as King of *Bohemia*, quitting his Horse, set a golden Flaggon of Wine on the corner of the Imperial Table, and presented Wine to the Emperor in a golden Cup. After the Electors rode the Marquis of *Misnia*, and the Count of *Schwartzembourg*, both great Huntsmen, blowing the Horn, follow'd by their Huntsmen, and their Hounds, and kill'd a great Stag, and a large wild Boar before the Emperor. After Dinner his Imperial Majesty, having presented the Electors, and Princes, with Gifts of great Value, dismiss'd them, and broke up the Diet.

1357.
Charles in-
creases his
patrimonial
Dominions.

Sells Privi-
leges to
the Cities
and other
States.

THIS done, *Charles*, returning into *Bohemia*, bent all his Thoughts upon accumulating Treasure, and extending the Frontiers of his hereditary Kingdom, which he look'd upon as his only real Patrimony, and whereunto he had already added *Silesia*, a Fief of *Poland*, and *Lusatia* a Fief of the Empire. Not only so, but, to enrich himself yet more, he sold new Privileges to divers Cities, and also increas'd the Rights and Authority of other States, in Consideration of a Sum of Money; in short, he neglected no Opportunity, but even prevented those who offer'd to give, sell, mortgage, or alienate the Imperial Territories for his Profit, as if he had held an Intelligence with Foreign Princes to weaken it.

N O T but he was otherwise a very good Prince; for altho' the *Germans* had no great Reason to praise him, because he did not perform any thing to which he was oblig'd for the Dignity of the Empire, yet they could not deny but he had very uncommon Qualities Amongst

Amongst the rest, he was a perfect Master of several Languages, and a great Admirer of Learning, and Men of Letters. Of this he gave an exemplary Proof, in Founding the University of *Prague* in 1361, upon the same Model as that of *Paris*, having taken Copies of the Statutes from thence, during the Time of his studying there. He express'd a great Aversion to Ambition, and the Pomp and Pride of Churchmen, which was excessive at that Time; and when the Bishops did not endeavour, as much as lay in their Power, to restrain this Licence, he reprimanded them publickly, and obliged them to it.

CHARLES
IV.

1361.

He was very careful of the Administration of Justice, assisting often himself at the Imperial Tribunal, and doing Justice himself to every one; But, on the other hand, he was inexcusably negligent with Respect to the Affairs of *Italy*, where all things were in the last Confusion. He had sold the Dependencies of *Lombardy*, with the State of *Milan*, to Duke *Sforza*, in Consideration of a large Sum of Money; and, as his own private Interest was not concern'd therein, had taken no Care about recovering the Cities of *Padua*, *Verona*, *Vicenza*, nor the other Demesnes of the Empire, with their respective Jurisdictions, the Possession whereof the *Venetians* had by degrees appropriated to themselves, and enjoy'd them peaceably. However, as 'twas represented to him, that it was his Interest not to suffer all the Imperial Demesnes and Rights in *Italy* to be usurp'd, without opposing it in some Manner, he resolv'd to go to *Avignon*, to make a League with *Urban V.* and some other Princes of *Italy*, against *Barnaby Tyrant of Milan*, and some others.

CHARLES
IV.

1365.

HE was receiv'd there very honourably by the Pope, and, during his Stay, Matters were transacted between them with many Testimonies of Friendship, insomuch that the Emperor assisted in his Imperial Robes at a solemn Mass which the Pope celebrated on *Whit-Sunday*; after which he went to *Arles*, and was there crown'd King of that City, as some say, by the Archbishop, or, according to others, by his Holiness himself. This done, *Charles* return'd to *Avignon*, where the League was concluded between him, the Pope, and divers *Italian* Noblemen, against the Usurpers of the Church's Patrimony, and the Imperial Dominions in *Italy*. And as 'twas resolved by this Treaty that he should, as soon as possible, levy a Number of Troops to march against these Usurpers, and their Adherents, and reduce them to Reason, his Holiness granted him the Tenth of the Revenues of the *German* Clergy, to enable him to support the Expences of the War.

HOWEVER, he did not undertake this Enterprize till three Years after, or thereabouts; so little did he regard what concern'd the Empire beyond the *Alps*. To give an Authentick Proof hereof, one need only relate what certain Historians say of him, (*viz.*) that for one single Dinner given him by *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Charles V* the *French* King, at *Ville neuve d'Avignon*, he yielded up the Sovereignty of *Dauphiné* (which had been reserv'd to the Empire, by the Gift made by *Humbert*, the last *Dauphiné* of the *Viennois*) to the Crown of *France*.

THIS done, *Charles* return'd to *Bohemia*, where, having settled the Affairs of that Kingdom in good Order, and put himself in a Condition to march into *Italy*, to satisfy the pressing Intreaties

ties of *Urban V*, who was then at *Rome*, in Compliance with the Treaty sign'd by them at *Avignon*, he set out thither with an Army, and join'd his Holiness in *October*. Then, having had some Conferences together, he enter'd *Lombardy*, and seeing that all his Efforts against the Viscounts, and other petty Tyrants, were vain, made a Peace with them, which was confirm'd by the Pope, but not to the Credit of either of them. After this he staid some Time in *Etruria*, and having squeez'd great Sums of Money from divers Cities, and even *Florence* itself, not to molest them, retir'd to *Bobemia*, where he remain'd till 1376, without doing any thing that deserves Mention; for his whole Business was to fill his Treasury, that he might secure the Empire to his Son *Wenceslaus*.

CHARLES
IV.

1376.

ACCORDINGLY, the same Year, returning into *Germany* for that Purpose, he manag'd Matters so well, and employ'd his Money to such Advantage, that, in Consideration of 100,000 Ducats paid to each of the Electors, they elected *Wenceslaus* King of the *Romans*, tho' then but fifteen Years old. However, that he might not wholly exhaust his Treasure, he mortgag'd the Toll on the *Rhine* to some of them, which we see to this Day in the Hands of the Electors, whose Dominions are adjacent to that River, and sold Cities to others. *Boppard* and *Oberwesel*, were sold to the Elector of *Treves*; *Kaiserlauter*, *Oppenheim*, *Obernheim*, and *Ingelheim*, to the Elector Palatine; and some others to the Duke of *Austria*; which made divers say, that he had weaken'd the Empire, and pull'd the Eagle's Feathers.

IN fine, *Charles IV* having caus'd his Son *Wenceslaus* to be acknowledg'd Emperor in some Imperial Cities, return'd to *Prague*, where he died

CHARLES
IV.1378.
He dies.

died the twenty ninth of November 1378, after reigning about thirty one Years, from the Decease of Lewis IV his Predecessor. He was four times married, but had no Children by his two first Wives, (*viz.*) *Blanch* Daughter to *Charles* Count of *Valois*, and Sister to *Philip* King of *France*, and *Agnes* Daughter to *Rodolphus*, Count *Palatine*. His third Consort was *Anne*, Daughter to *Boleslaus*, Duke of *Svenitz*, by whom he had *Katharine*, Wife to *Rodolphus* IV, Duke of *Austria*; and *Wenceslaus*, who was Emperor after him. His fourth Wife, was *Elizabeth* Daughter to *Boguslaus* V, Duke of *Stetin*, who was Niece, or Grand-Daughter, to *Casimir* King of *Poland*; by whom he had first *Sigismund*, King of *Hungary*, afterwards Emperor; and *John*, Duke of *Gorlis*, with several Daughters. He died with this Reputation, that he was a good Prince, and a bad Emperor,



C H A P. XXVIII.

W E N C E S L A U S.

The little
Merit of
Wenceslaus
the Remis-
ness of his
Govern-
ment, and
his bloody
Temper.



THE Emperor *Wenceslaus* enter'd upon the Government of the Empire, and the Kingdom of *Bohemia*, at the Age of eighteen; but was endued with such vicious Qualities, both of Body and Mind, that it might be said he could not have had worse: And if one may be allow'd to found any Prognostick of a Man's future Actions by his first Effays, one might have judg'd by his what was to

to be expected from his Reign. His Cruelty was in a manner foretold, by his causing his Mother's Death at his Birth: as was also the Filth wherewith he profan'd the Font, by pissing therein at his Baptism: and his Ordure wherewith he profan'd the Altar, when sat upon it at the Age of two Years, in order to be crown'd King of *Bohemia*, a Presage of the vile Crimes wherewith he fully'd his Reign.

WENCESLAUS.
1379.

ALL his Actions were but one continued Series of Debaucheries, Cruelty, and Baseness; after his Father's Example, he sold all the Imperial Rights that remain'd undispos'd of in *Germany*; and ransom'd the Cities and Provinces that had been alienated by the late Emperor, to confirm them in their Privileges. He also pass'd blank Patents, to be fill'd up at the Pleasure of the Purchasers; whence the most Powerful, Rich, and the greatest Reprobates, took Occasion to oppress the Weak, the Poor, and the Men of Probity.

THIS they did with such Impunity, that there was neither any Safety for Commerce, or Order, or civil Government in the Empire; this caus'd Troubles, and civil Wars, which arm'd the Cities of *Suabia*, and the *Rhine*, against their Neighbouring Princes, the chief whereof were the Count Palatine, the Count of *Wirttemberg*, and the Duke of *Austria*. The Electors, and other Princes and States, being weary'd out with all these Disorders, and with seeing *Germany* without a Leader, having likewise Information of the Alienations of the Imperial Territories, made by *Wenceslaus*, to raise Money for his own Advantage, sent an Embassy to him at *Prague*, in 1383, to desire him to take up his Residence in the Empire. On hearing their Proposal he made them this Answer: *Our dear Ambassa-*

1380.

WENCES-
LAUS.1383.
The States
of the Em-
pire take
notice of
the Extra-
vagancies
of Wences-
laus.

Ambassadors! All the World knows that we are Emperor; if there be any one in the Empire, who desires to see us, he may come to Bohemia, and have all manner of Liberty of Access. This Answer seem'd ridiculous to the Ambassadors; but however they could not obtain any other, tho' nevertheless they were very handsomely entertain'd.

THE Electors were very much scandaliz'd at the Success of this Embassy, and the Contempt *Wenceslaus* shew'd of their Advice, insomuch that, finding there was nothing to be hop'd from him, they were forc'd themselves to take Care of the Affairs of the Empire. Most of them interpos'd between the Disputes which several States had with their Neighbours, and 'twas with great Difficulty they brought them to an Agreement; so violent was their Animosity.

As to *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, Son to *Albert the Wise*, he thought with the Troops he had levy'd, wherewith he had form'd a considerable Army, that he was strong enough to reduce the *Suiss* again under his Government, whence eight Cantons had already withdrawn themselves. But, venturing to offer them Battle, he lost both that and his Life, and thereby gave them an Opportunity entirely to shake off the Yoke of their Princes, and their Subjection to the Empire, which entic'd the rest of the Cantons to do the like.

THINGS were in this Posture in *Germany*, without *Wenceslaus* giving himself any manner of Trouble about them, he continued always in *Bobemia*, where, by the little Care he took of Affairs, or to prevent what might disturb the publick Tranquillity, he suffer'd the * first Seeds of *Wickliff's* Heresy to be sown in that

* Some Notice was taken of this, and the following Reflections on the Dawn of the Reformation, in the Preface.

Kingdom,

Kingdom, which happen'd thro' the Means of a *Bobemian* Gentleman who had study'd in *England*. This Gentleman had brought over the Books of that Arch-Heretick, and communicated them to several Persons, even to the Masters of the University at *Prague*, amongst whom was *John Hus*, who imbib'd the Venom, and afterwards diffus'd the Poison every where.

WENCESLAUS.

IN the mean while, *Wenceslaus* plunging himself into all Sorts of Debauches, both with Wine and Women, render'd himself more and more despicable to his Subjects; but at last he drew their Hatred on him, by the extraordinary Taxes wherewith he loaded them, and by his Cruelty, which he exercis'd indifferently upon all Sorts of Persons; to which he was so much accusom'd, that he made no Scruple of keeping Company with the common Executioner, whom he call'd his Friend, nor of beheading the Magistrates of *Prague*, without any Form or Process.

1393.

THE chief Lords of *Bobemia*, finding that his Excesses and Cruelties increas'd daily, judg'd it proper to put a Stop to them, and could think of no better Method, than to confine him, according to the Advice of his own Brother, *Sigismund*, King of *Hungary*. Hereupon, they put him into a close Prison, whence he made his Escape after four Months, and fled to one of his Fortresses; but not mending his Conduct, they retook him, and had him carefully guarded, sometimes in one Castle, and sometimes in another. Nevertheless, he again got away, and regaining Possession of the City of *Prague*, by the Means of some Noblemen his Friends, he re-assum'd his Authority, and maintain'd himself therein, on Condition of leading a more regular Life.

1396.

HOWEVER

WENCES-
LAUS.

HOWEVER, this did not oblige him to take more Care of the Affairs of the Empire than before, excepting in what related to his own private Interests, or any Thing that could yield him any Profit. As he neglected no Opportunity with respect to this Point, he received the Embassy very agreeably that was sent him by *John Galeas*, Count *de Vertus*, Nephew and Successor to that *Barnaby*, the Viscount, who, as has been said, had got Possession of the Duchy of *Milan*, and several other Cities, as *Piacenza*, *Cremona*, *Pavia*, *Lodi*, *Brescia*, *Bergamo*, *Vercelli*, *Novarra*, *Tortona*, and others of the *Milanese*, and *Lombardy*, that were Fiefs of the Empire.

THE Subject of this Embassy was, to purchase of him the Lordship and Regalities of all those Territories, with the Title of Duke of *Milan*, which he sold him, in Consideration of a large Sum of Money, without the Consent of the Electors and Princes of the Empire; which was one of the Causes why some Time after they resolv'd in good Earnest on his Deposition. For they saw that he made it his Study to dismember the Empire for his own sordid Interest, at a Time when the Schism then reigning divided it already but too much, and the *Turks*, taking Advantage thereof, had, on every Occasion, gain'd such signal Advantages over the *Christians*, which were follow'd by the famous Victory won by *Bajazet* in 1396, near *Nicopolis*. But at last the Electors, after many Delays, thinking the publick Safety depended on their no longer deferring to choose an Emperor capable of re-establishing, protecting, and maintaining the Imperial Dignity, met by the Advice of Pope *Boniface IX*, at the Castle of *Laenstein* on the *Rhine*, in the Archbishoprick

bishopricks of *Treves*, declared *Wenceslaus* incapable of the Empire, and depos'd him. The Sentence of this Deposition was pronounced and publish'd the twentieth of *August* 1400, with a Revocation of all the Rights, Exemptions, Privileges, and Demesnes sold, or mortgag'd by his own particular Authority, without the Consent of the Princes and States of the Empire. 'Twas then said, that if *Charles* and *Wenceslaus* had never been Emperors, the Empire had never been reduced to the deplorable Condition wherein it then was, both by the prodigious Presents the Father had made to aggrandize his Son, and by the Son's squandering his Treasure and Possessions, to wallow in Sloth and Debauchery.

THE Electors at the same Time proceeded to the Choice of a new Emperor, and nam'd *Frederick*, Duke of *Brunswick* and *Lunenbourg*, an experienc'd and brave Prince; but divers Authors say, that the Archbishop of *Mentz* caus'd him to be assassinated by Count *Waldec*, as he was on the Road to *Frankfort*, to take the Imperial Crown: Hereupon, the Electors substituted *Robert* Count Palatine in his Stead, who was elected on the tenth of *September* the same Year.

WENCESLAUS seem'd insensible on receiving the News of his being depos'd; they even report that he said these Words; *We are glad to be discharged from the Burthen of the Empire, in Hopes we may apply our selves the better to the well governing our Kingdom.* Accordingly, during the nineteen Years he reign'd afterwards in *Bohemia*, his Subjects found his Conduct more reasonable and prudent than before. One must also do him this Justice to own, that he apply'd himself very seriously to suppress the Sedition that *John Hus*, Professor of Divinity in the University of *Prague*, had rais'd by his new
Tenets.

WENCES-
LAUS.
1400.

WENCES-
LAUS.Rise of the
Schism of
John Hus.

Tenets; but he had not the Satisfaction to see his Care take much Effect, because he had let this Doctrine take too deep Root. In fine, this poor Prince died of an Apoplexy, in the Year 1419, at the Age of fifty seven, after reigning twenty two Years as Emperor, and fifty five as King of *Bohemia*.



C H A P. XXIX.

R O B E R T.

He is elec-
ted and con-
firm'd.

HO' *Robert*, or *Rupert*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, call'd the *Short* and the *Debonair*, had been elected Emperor with the usual Forms, by all the Electors at his Camp near the *Rhine*, the *Saturday* after *Lady-Day*, and afterwards crown'd and confirm'd by the Archbishop of *Cologne*, in his Metropolitan Church, the People of *Aix* would not suffer him to be crown'd in their Church, on Pretence they were not discharg'd from their Oath of Allegiance to *Wenceslaus*; but, in Reality, out of their Affection to that Prince: Accordingly, they were put to the Ban of the Empire, and misus'd, till they had done Homage to *Robert*, and taken the Oath to him. The Inhabitants of *Nuremberg* were more fortunate; for they were discharg'd from their Oath of Allegiance, in Consideration of some Pieces of *Bacharac* Wine which they presented to *Wenceslaus*.

AFTER his Advancement, the new Emperor bent all his Thoughts upon redressing the Disorders

Disorders and Divisions that had arisen in the Empire, during the Reigns of *Charles IV*, and his Son; as likewise, on reclaiming the States alienated by them. With this Intent he summon'd a Diet at *Frankfort*, the first Year of his Reign, where he deliberated with the Electors, Princes, Lords, and Deputies of Cities, upon the Means to re-establish Order, Tranquillity, and Safety in the Empire; whereupon they drew up divers Acts, which were put in Execution.

ROBERT.
Robert studies to heal the Breaches made in the Empire by the two former Emperors.

As the Electors, on their pronouncing the Sentence of Deposition against *Wenceslaus*, had alledg'd, among other Articles, that he had created *John Galeas*, who was but Governor of *Lombardy*, Duke of *Milan*; and that this new Duke, not satisfy'd with this Advantage, aim'd at withdrawing these Countries from the Imperial Jurisdiction, and at rendring himself Master of *Florence*, *Mantua*, *Bologna*, with other Cities and Territories, by Force of Arms, with Intent to incorporate them with his Duchy; Robert was oblig'd immediately to raise an Army, to re-establish the Affairs of *Italy* in their pristine State.

1401.
Passes into Italy, with Design to reduce Galeas by force of Arms, but in vain.

HEREUPON, he advanced, by long Marches, and incamp'd before the City of *Brescia* in the Duchy of *Milan*; but *Galeas*, having a good Body of Horse, had the Advantage over the Imperialists in every Skirmish, and had so harraß'd and weaken'd them, that altho' the Archbishop of *Cologne*, and Duke *Leopold* of *Austria*, came the same Year to his Assistance, with a considerable Re-inforcement, they were forc'd to return to *Germany*, with what Troops remain'd, without having done any Thing considerable.

BESIDES, they were constrain'd thereunto, because the other States of *Germany* did not proceed

ROBERT.

ceed with the same Vigour as them, but had been seduced by the Elector of *Mentz*, who (not content with hindring his Ecclesiasticks from paying the Tenths to the Emperor, which the Pope had permitted him to raise, for the *Italian Expedition*) had alienated almost all their Minds from him. Hereupon, the Year following, *Robert* was oblig'd to return back into *Germany*, without having gain'd any Advantage in *Italy*, either against *Galeas Duke of Milan*, or, in Favour of the Pope, against *Ladislaus King of Naples*, who, some Years after, took the City of *Rome*, and drove out his Holiness.

The Empe-
ror returns
to Germa-
ny, and
dies.

1410.

WHEN *Robert* was arriv'd in *Germany*, he apply'd himself wholly to put an End to the Disorders that reign'd there, in which he had Success; however, in the Year 1410, there arose another Misunderstanding between him and *John Elector of Mentz*, on Account of a Castle which the latter had built at *Hochst*, contrary to the Emperor's Will. Hereupon, *Robert* had recourse to Arms, and advanced with his Troops to hinder him by Force, but was prevented by a Sickness, which seiz'd him with so much Violence at *Oppenheim*, that he died there the eighteenth of *May* the same Year, and was buried at *Spires*, or, as others say, at *Heidelberg*.

SOME Authors say, and not without Appearance of Probability, that *Jodocus*, Marquis of *Moravia*, was elected Emperor after *Robert's* Death, and that he liv'd but six Months; but that, not having Leisure to get himself acknowledg'd, he was not reckon'd amongst the Emperors.



C H A P.



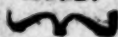
C H A P. XXX.

S I G I S M U N D.



IGISMUND, Son to the Emperor *Charles IV*, and Brother to *Wenceslaus*, before his Advancement to the Imperial Dignity, had reign'd twenty seven Years in *Hungary*, after the

SIGIS-
MUND.

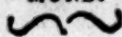


Death of his Father-in-Law *Lewis*, to whom he succeeded. And as his great Qualities, and good Conduct in the midst of the many Travels he met with in the Government of his Kingdom, oblig'd the Princes of the Empire to prefer him to all others, 'twill not be amiss to mention it here transiently, and even to relate after what Manner he came to that Crown.

THIS Prince had been sent very young to the Court of *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, who had but two Daughters, *Mary* and *Hedwig*, Heiresses to his Kingdom. The youngest of these had been promis'd to *Jagello*, great Duke of *Lithuania*, to whom she was afterwards married, and he attain'd to the Kingdom of *Poland*; but *Mary* the eldest was contracted and design'd for *Sigismund*. For this Reason *Lewis* had him educated with great Care, and caus'd him to be acknowledged as Successor to his Kingdom, as soon as his Marriage with *Mary* should be accomplish'd. But before that Ceremony could be perform'd, *Lewis* died in the Year 1383, and *Mary* took upon her the Government of the Kingdom, under the Regency of her Mother *Elizabeth*, and

B b

by.

SIGIS-
MUND.

Broils in
Hungary
during Si-
gismund's
Minority.

by the Advice of *Nicolas Gare*, Count or great Master of the Palace, because *Sigismund* was not yet married to *Mary*, as being but fifteen Years old.

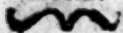
THIS Minister exercis'd an absolute Authority, under these two Queens; and became so arrogant, that he no longer remember'd there was a God, who gives Wisdom and Prudence to govern People and States, and must be constantly invoc'd to obtain his Grace. He began then to behave with such ill Conduct, that, by his malicious Practices, he render'd the Grandees, and principal Noblemen of the Kingdom, suspected to the Queens, and even incens'd these Princesses against them. In fine, having caus'd a general Aversion to their Government, the States, unmindful of their Duty, sent the Bishop of *Zagabria* secretly to *Charles de Duras* King of *Naples*, a Relation of the young Queen's, to offer him the Crown of *Hungary*. This Prince received the Proposal very agreeably, notwithstanding the earnest Intreaties of the Queen his Wife, and his most faithful Servants, who begg'd him to refuse it; and having settled the Affairs of *Sicily* in proper Order, prepar'd immediately to set out for *Hungary*.

THE Queen *Elizabeth*, being inform'd of these Intrigues, and that *Charles* was on the Road to take Possession of the Kingdom, with Design to marry his Son *Ladislaus* to *Mary*, thereby the better to secure the Crown in his Family, endeavour'd, by all possible Means, to defeat his Projects. Wherefore, first, she hasten'd the Consummation of *Sigismund's* Nuptials with *Mary*; and because he was not yet strong enough to wage open War with *Charles*, made him retire immediately after into *Bohemia*.

IN the mean while, towards the End of the Year 1386, *Charles* arriv'd at *Offen*, which was then the Residence of the *Hungarian* Court; and the Queens, having recourse to all imaginable Dissimulation, received him very honourably, and, in all Appearance, join'd their Consent to the Inclination the *Hungarians* had discover'd to declare him their King. He was no sooner acknowledged as such, but he took upon him the Administration of Affairs, and bent all his Thoughts upon his Coronation, which Ceremony was perform'd the last Day of the same Year, with great Magnificence. But it happen'd, on this Occasion, as it almost inevitably does in all popular Resolutions, that have no other Foundation but Passion; for the Nobility and People, growing soon weary of *Charles's* Government, began to change their Tone, and speak publicly in Praise of the two Queens.

THE Queen *Elizabeth* (who amus'd *Charles*, with the Assurance that *Sigismund*, who continued still in *Bobemia*, would yield him up the Kingdom, by a Treaty they would conclude together) observing this Alteration in the Nobles and Populace, thought it proper to take Advantage of this Opportunity, insomuch that she resolv'd to rid herself of the new King; and this was the Expedient concerted, to crown their Enterprize with Success. The Queens, *Mary* and *Elizabeth*, with the *Palatine Gare*, invited the new Monarch to their Apartment in the Palace, to communicate to him a Letter relating to the Cession of the Kingdom, which they pretended to have received from *Sigismund*.

ACCORDINGLY, *Charles* went thither immediately, sat down without the least Mistrust by the Queen *Elizabeth*, and was follow'd soon after by the *Palatine*, accompany'd with a Man

SIGIS-
MUND.

who was privy to the Plot, and who, going behind the King, clove down his Head to his Eyes; however, that poor Prince did not dye till some Days after. This done, *Elizabeth*, thinking she had dispers'd *Charles's* Faction by his Death, re-establish'd herself in her former Authority, few daring to discover any Regret for this Murther, it being done with the People's Concurrence.

*A strange
Outrage
committed
by the In-
tendant of
Croatia up-
on the two
Queens of
Hungary.*

NEVERTHELESS, this Assassinate did not go unpunish'd; for some Time after, the Queens going into lower *Hungary*, with the Palatine *Gare*, and their ordinary Retinue, *Hiornard*, Intendant, or provincial Judge of *Croatia*, who had been advanced to that Post by *Charles* King of *Naples*, being inform'd of the Tragedy, form'd a Design to surprize the Murtherers. With this Intent he gather'd together a considerable Body of Men, lay in Ambush near the Passes, and the Court falling therein, were surrounded.

HEREUPON the *Croatians* massacred the Palatine, as well as the Person that clove the King's Head, and all the Palatine's Servants, tho' they defended themselves very valiantly; neither did they treat the Queen-Mother *Elizabeth* with less Inhumanity; for, to oblige her to give an Account why she committed this Assassination, they pull'd her out of her Coach, and dragg'd her by her Hair before the Provincial Judge. There, with very moving Reasons, she gave him to understand that King *Charles* had treated the Queen *Mary* with Derision and Contempt, and had unjustly dispossest her of her Kingdom; after this she fell upon her Knees, ask'd him Pardon for the Murther, and at the same Time begg'd him to remember the Favours he had received from her deceas'd Husband *Lewis*, and repay them on this Occasion. Queen
Mary

Mary also desir'd the same Favour on her Knees; but neither the one nor the other could prevail, for she was cast into a dismal Dungeon, and the Queen-Mother *Elizabeth* was miserably drown'd in the Rivulet of *Boseth*. These were the Fruits of her Minister's violent Counsels, whose Passion she had so blindly follow'd.

SIGIS-
MUND.

SIGISMUND, having received Advice, and the Particulars of this Catastrophe, immediately march'd strait for *Hungary*, with a considerable Army, which he had rais'd by Degrees, and was received there with open Arms, with the unanimous Consent of the Nobility, and other States of the Kingdom. *Hiornard* was not a little dismay'd at his Arrival, for he might easily imagine that his Crime would not go unpunish'd; however, to endeavour to disperse the Storm that threaten'd him, he thought proper to abate a little of his Rigour, and, for this Reason, had for some Days caus'd the Queen *Mary* to be removed into a handsom Chamber, and treated according to her Quality. Then he visited her himself, and proposing to her to let her return to *Hungary*, if she would give him an Assurance of his Life, his Office, and Estate; she received the Offer with so much Joy, that she promis'd upon Oath that she would regard him as her Father, if he would grant her that Liberty. Upon this tender Promise, the provincial Judge sent her back, and had her convoy'd by his Troops to *Offen*, where King *Sigismund* her Husband waited for her, and she was received with publick Rejoicings and Acclamations.

SOME Days after, the States of *Hungary* being met at *Croon-Weissembourg*, crown'd *Sigismund*, then but twenty Years old; which done, the King bent all his Thoughts upon the Means

*Sigismund
marches in-
to Hungary
against the
Rebels.*

*Sigismund-
being
crown'd
King of
Hungary,
punishes the
to Patricides.*

SIGIS-
MUND.

to revenge the Cruelty exercis'd upon the Queen his Mother-in-Law. The Queen, his Consort, had indeed promis'd and sworn that she would never punish this Parricide; but she had not sworn it in the King her Husband's Name, because 'twas not in her Power to make such a Promise; wherefore he resolv'd to chastize this Tyrant, and make an Example of him, to keep others in Awe. Hereupon he sent Men into *Croatia*, who seiz'd the provincial Judge, and his Accomplices, and conducted them to the City of *Five Churches*, or *Funskirken*. There *Sigismund* condemn'd this Judge to have his Hands ty'd behind him, be drawn through all the Streets, torn with red hot Pincers, quarter'd, and his four Quarters to be hung up in the Streets: As for his Accomplices, they were all beheaded.

The Queen
of Hun-
gary's
Death,
whereat
Sigismund
is so con-
cern'd that
as pushes
him on to
his Councils.

SOME Years after, *Sigismund*, returning from *Walachia*, was inform'd on the Road, that the Queen his Consort was dead of a short and violent Sickness, with which News he was so touch'd, that he staid some Time in *Offen*, as a Place of Retirement. At last, whether this Grief had renew'd another, or whether they had given any new Cause, he could no longer dissemble his Resentment against the Authors of the Resolution taken at the beginning of the Revolt, to call King *Charles* from *Italy*, and crown him King of *Hungary*, to the Prejudice of him, and the Queen *Mary*. He was the more incens'd against them, in that he saw them go and come unpunish'd, with all the Liberty imaginable, without ever asking him Pardon. He resolv'd then to have them secretly seiz'd, without taking Advice of his Council thereupon; and he gave this Commission to Colonel *George Weidassen*, who put it in Execution, with-
out

out considering what pernicious Consequences might ensue.

SIGIS-
MUND.

A prudent Prince ought never to undertake any Thing of Importance, for his own private Interest, till he has first consulted his Ministers; because their Opinions being severally examin'd, the one correct the other, and at the same Time moderate his Passion. But to proceed; this Colonel, having rais'd a good Number of Troops, on Pretence of going to visit the Lower *Hungary*, by Chance met these pretended Criminals, who being under some Apprehension of his coming, had already form'd a Body, and taken the Field. Hereupon he surrounded them in the Night, took them Prisoners, clap'd them in Irons, and sent them to the King at *Offen*. Being brought before his Majesty to give an Account why they had been guilty of such an Offence, they would not so much as pay him any Respect, and disdain'd even to make the least Answer to any Question ask'd them; such Indifference did they show for the Danger that threaten'd them.

WHEREUPON, *Sigismund* was so incens'd at their Haughtiness, that he immediately order'd them all to be beheaded upon the Spot. They were in all thirty two Noblemen, each of whom had deserv'd highly of the State by their Services: Amongst the rest was *Stephen Contus*, one of the chief of the Nobility. This Hero despis'd Death with so much Resolution, that he would not suffer the Hangman to behead him the common Way, but would have him cut off his Neck by the forepart. This barbarous Execution touch'd several Princes and Lords, and so far alienated their Minds from him, that they took up Arms against him one after another, and decry'd him every where as a Tyrant.

SIGIS-
MUND.*He is un-
successful a-
gainst the
Emperor of
the Turks.*

BAJAZET, Sultan of the Turks, seeing Hungary thus divided, and being undoubtedly call'd in by the Malecontents, thought the Opportunity so favourable, that he judg'd it proper to take Advantage thereof. Whereupon, in the Year 1396, or, according to others, in 1393, he began this bloody War, which prov'd so fatal to Hungary, by the Loss of *Nicopolis*; and *Sigismund*, resolving to defend that Place at the Head of above 100,000 Men, was defeated, and lost the greatest Part of the *Hungarian* Nobility, which weaken'd the Kingdom extreamly. After this terrible Disaster, instead of applying himself to the Re-establishment of Affairs, he gave himself up to his Pleasures; upon which several Governors of Provinces, and other Lords, began to abhor him more and more, till at last, in the Year 1410, they discover'd themselves breaking out into great Complaints of his ill Conduct, in the Administration of the Affairs of the Kingdom.

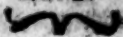
*His Debauches
make his
Subjects re-
volt, and
seize his
Person.*

THEIR evil Intentions went even to this Extremity, that they seiz'd on his Person, and committed it to the Custody of two Brothers nam'd *Garris*, whose Father had been one of the thirty two that were executed. Being miserably treated in Prison, he would sometimes sigh, and say, That he was a fine Example of Fortune's Inconstancy, it neither being in his Power to live or dye. But as he was well made, and had naturally the Gift of Persuasion, he prevail'd with so much Address on the Mother of the two Brothers who were his Keepers, that she undertook to deliver him. Upon this, she consulted thereupon with her Sons, and remonstrated to them, that Outrages committed against the Person of a Sovereign, were usually attended with fatal Consequences, and that 'twas exposing

*Sigis-
mund's Ad-
dress in get-
ting out of
Prison.*

exposing themselves to very great Danger, both from the Populace, who are always changeable, and his Successors; who take such Injuries as done to themselves.

SIGIS-
MUND.



AFTER this, she represented to them the Honour and Advantage they might promise themselves and their Families, if they would set the King at Liberty; and, in fine, persisting in her Importunity, she push'd Matters so far, that she made them waver in their Resolutions; insomuch that *Sigismund*, having sworn to her and her Sons, that he would regard them as his Brothers, and, in Recompence, would invest them with *Moravia*, he was releas'd by them, and conducted by their Troops into *Moravia*, whence he went into *Bobemia*.

HEREUPON, he immediately rais'd a considerable Army, and re-enter'd *Hungary*, where he made the Provinces pay him due Obedience, without meeting with any Resistance. As to the two Brothers who deliver'd him, he kept his Word to them, and, in short, behav'd himself with so much Goodness and Clemency, the rest of his Days, both to his Friends and Enemies, that he regain'd the Friendship and Love of his Subjects in general. The Experience he had learn'd, at his own Expence, had render'd this Maxim familiar to him; *That whoever, neither knows how to pardon, nor to seem not to see what he does see, is not Master of the Art of governing.*

He arms
and returns
to Hun-
gary, where
he amends
his Conduct.

His Reputation extended even to the neighbouring States, insomuch that the *Germans* thought they could not choose a more accomplish'd Prince, on whom to confer the Imperial Crown; however there was some Dispute about his Election. Out of five Electors, whereof the Electoral Assembly consisted, three indeed gave their Votes for him; but the other two, who were

SIGIS-
MUND.

were the Archbishops of *Cologne* and *Mentz*, refus'd him their Suffrages, reserving them for *Fodocus* Marquis of *Moravia*; and they manag'd Matters so well, that, preventing the Publication of *Sigismund's* Election, they made that of *Fodocus* pass for Valid and Legal. However, that Prince dying a few Months after, without having ever been acknowledged Emperor by the other States of the Empire, *Sigismund* was chosen unanimously, or, to speak more properly, confirm'd Emperor, by all the Electors, in the Year 1411.

1411.

He was then, according to most Accounts, in *Hungary*, where, having Advice of this good News, he resolv'd, in order to answer the great Opinion they had conceived of him, to apply himself principally to two Points (*viz.*) to re-establish the Affairs of the Empire, and to put an End to the Schism, which had reign'd in the Church upwards of thirty Years. Accordingly, he began, by ridding his Hands of the Electorate of *Brandenbourg*, in Favour of *Frederick* Burgrave of *Nurembourg*, of the Family of the Counts of *Hohenzollern*, a Prince of great Merit, from whom the present Electors of *Brandenbourg* are descended. This he sold to him for 400,000 Florins, reserving, nevertheless, to himself, and his Brother, the Right of Redemption, on re-imburfing the same Sum, on Condition of its reverting in Default of Heirs Male.

SOME Time after, he had a Dispute with the *Venetians*, concerning some Territories in *Dalmatia*, which oblig'd him to march that Way; and having put an End thereunto, he advanc'd, on divers Pretences, as far as *Lombardy*; but particularly, that he might have more Convenience to conclude the Negotiations he had already

ready enter'd into with *John XXIII.* The Intention of these was, to agree upon the calling a general Council, thereby to root out the Schism then made by three pretended Popes, and establish a solid Peace in the Church.

SIGIS-
MOND.

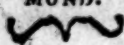
To this Intent, he had divers Conferences with the Legates sent him by *John*, who came himself to him at *Piacenza*, whence they went afterwards to *Lodi*, where the calling of a Council was finally resolv'd on. Hereupon, the Bulls were dispatch'd the ninth of *December*, for the meeting to be at *Constance* on the first of *November* following.

1413.]

In the mean while, *Ladislaus* King of *Naples*, contrary to an Alliance since made with the Pope, had a third Time taken Possession of *Rome*, with Design, not only to usurp all *St. Peter's* Patrimony, but even all *Italy*. After some Stay in that City, he march'd into *Tuscany*, with a powerful Army, because he had a Grudge against the *Florentines*, and Pope *John*, who was withdrawn to *Bologna*; but, on the eighth of *June*, 1414, he was seiz'd at *Perusa* with a violent Distemper, caus'd by Poison, which oblig'd him to retire to *Naples*, where some Months after he died.

[1414]

His Death, leaving *Italy* entirely in Peace, gave Pope *John*, the Cardinals, Archbishops, and Bishops of that Nation, full Liberty to go to *Constance*; and accordingly his Holiness went thither on the eighth of *October*, and there waited the meeting of the Assembly. In the mean while, *Sigismund*, being return'd to *Germany*, in order to be crown'd Emperor, before his going to the Council, stopping at *Spire*, for several Affairs that required his Presence, sign'd on the eighteenth of *October*, in that City, the Passport, under whose Protection *John Hus* went

SIGIS-
MUND.

went to *Constance*, to give an Account of his Tenets to the Council; after which *Sigismund* went to *Aix*, where he was crown'd the eighth of *November*.

THIS Ceremony was no sooner perform'd, but he set out for *Constance*, with the Empress his Consort, and a very splendid Court, where he arrived on the twenty third of *December* in the Evening. On the Morrow, he assisted at the Midnight Mass, which Pope *John* celebrated Pontifically, and served thereat, performing the Deacon's Office in the *Imperial Dalmatic*, as is usual on such Occasions. In the first Sessions, which was held the sixteenth of *November*, the second was put off till the second of *March* the Year following, to the End that the Emperor, who was then expected, might be present thereat. The appointed Day being come, the Fathers of the Council were employ'd in deliberating upon Expedients to put an End to the Schism, and re-establish Union in the Church. In order to this, they could find no better Method, than to make the three that had been elected renounce the Papacy; and they even prevail'd on *John XXIII*, who presided at the Council, to agree to it. Accordingly, he promis'd authentically, that he would abdicate, when *Angelo Corario*, call'd *Gregory XII*, and *Peter de Luna*, nam'd *Bennet XIII*, did the same.

1415.

HE had hardly made this Promise, when the Emperor arose from his Seat, went and threw himself at his Feet, and thank'd him for so Christian an Action; as did also the Patriarch of *Antioch*, in the Name of all the Council. But *John* repenting, some Days after, of having enter'd into such an Engagement, fled to *Constance*, whence he escap'd that Night in a Disguise,

guise, and retir'd to *Switzerland*. This, after several Proceedings, oblig'd the Council, in the twelfth Session, to pronounce the definitive Sentence of his Deposition, prohibiting all Christians to acknowledge him as Pope; ordaining likewise, that they should not proceed to the Election of any Pontif for the future, without the Deliberation and Consent of the Council; neither should they again elect, either him that was then deposed, *Angelo Corario*, or *Peter de Luna*.

SIGIS-
MUND.

JOHN, finding himself thus press'd upon, chose rather to give way to Force, than, by resisting, make himself liable to meet with worse Treatment; accordingly, when the Sentence was notify'd to him, he swore he would never act contrary to it, renounced the Papacy freely, and at the same Time laid down all the Marks of that Dignity. After his Example, *Corario* sent a Legate, some Days afterwards, to the Emperor and the Council, to make likewise a Renunciation of the Popedom, which was done in the fourteenth Session.

IN the following Session, the Fathers of the Council thought it proper to bring the Affair of *John Hus*, and *Jerome of Prague*, upon the Tapis. The former, as has been before observ'd, had extracted his new Doctrine from the Writings of *Wickliff*, an *Englishman*, and a famous Heretick; and having infected several in the University of *Prague*, and other Places, had acquir'd an infinite Number of Followers. Particularly, he had instill'd it so strongly into *Jerome of Prague*, a Master of Arts, one of his Pupils, that he easily prevail'd on him to join with him, and preach publicly against the Pope's Supremacy. His Holiness hearing hereof, caus'd them both to be summon'd to *Rome*; but they refus'd to go; but

Troubles as
rise on Ac-
count of the
Heresy of
John Hus

SIGIS-
MUND.His Exe-
cution.

but nevertheless, they appear'd, upon receiving afterwards another Citation to justify themselves at the Council of *Constance*.

John Hus came, relying upon the Emperor's Passport, and endeavour'd to give an Account of his Doctrine in Presence of the Pope, and the Fathers of the Council; but nevertheless, he was arrested Prisoner some Days afterwards; and, in short, his Process was made. Hereupon, he was convicted of having publicly taught thirty Articles, which were either heretical, seditious, or scandalous; wherefore, he was by the Council declared seditious, and a Favourer and obstinate Defender of the Heresiarch *Wickliff*, as also a harden'd Heretick; and, as such, after being degraded, he was deliver'd over to the Secular Judge, who condemn'd him and his Writings to be burnt: accordingly, they proceeded to his Execution on the sixth of *July*.

WHEN he arriv'd at the Place appointed, his Sentence was read to him, and publicly pronounced, according to Custom; after which, he was ty'd to a Stake, and surrounded on all sides by Wood and Straw. Then the Duke of *Bavaria*, and Count *Papenheim*, approaching the Pile, before Fire was put to it, exhorted him to recant; but, far from that, he would have harangu'd the People, persisted in protesting his Innocence, and inveigh'd against the Emperor and Fathers of the Council; whereupon, the Duke retired, and order'd the Executioners to do their Duty.

SOME Protestants of *Germany* have made him a Prophet, by making him say, when upon the Pile, *You now burn a Goose* (for that is the Signification of *Hus* in the *Bohemian* Tongue) *but, in a hundred Years, a Swan will arise out*

Chap. XXX. of the EMPIRE.

381

out of his *Ashes*, which you will not burn. They pretended that he meant *Luther* by the Swan; but the whole is but a Fiction, and a Story made at Pleasure.

SIGIS-
MUND.

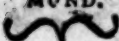
AFTER this Execution, the Council resum'd the Affair of *Peter de Luna*, who persisted obstinately in resolving to retain the Papacy; whereupon, the Emperor offer'd to go in Person into *Arragon*, where he had fled for Refuge, to induce *Peter*, by the Mediation of *Ferdinand* King of *Arragon*, to make his Renunciation, in the same Manner as *Corario*, without waiting the last Resolutions of the Council. His Journey was resolv'd on in the 17th Session; and he set out three Days after, accompany'd with twelve Deputies from the Council, both Prelates and Doctors. Accordingly, he arriv'd at *Perpignan*, where all Things were transacted with *Peter de Luna* by Negotiation, the Result whereof was sent to the Council; but in the End this Result had not all the Success that was expected from it.

THIS done, that he might omit nothing that wou'd contribute to establish the Peace of the Church amongst Christian Princes, and particularly the Kings of *France* and *England*, he visited King *Charles VI.* by whom he was magnificently entertain'd at *Paris*: He also made a Tour into *England*, but the Truce he propos'd between the two Crowns was never sign'd. On his Return to *France*, he was solicited by *Amadeus VIII.* Count of *Savoy*, to erect his Earldom into a Duchy; whereupon, he granted him the Letters of Erection, which were dated from *Chambery*, 19 February, 1416.

1416.

NOTWITHSTANDING *Sigismund's* Absence, the Fathers of the Council went on with their Affairs, and were then upon *Jerome* of *Prague*, who, to avoid receiving a like Sentence with

John

SIGIS-
MUND.

1417.

John Hus, had publickly abjur'd *Wickliff's* Herefy the Year before in full Council. But falling again into the same Errors, he was condemn'd in the twenty first Session, as an obstinate *Relapse*, and deliver'd over to the secular Judge, who caus'd him to be burnt alive. On *Sigismund's* return to *Constance*, they proceeded against *Peter de Luna* for Contumacy; and, in the thirty seventh Session, held the twenty sixth of *July* 1417; the Definitive Sentence of his Deposition was pronounced and publish'd. After this, the Emperor's greatest Care was to have a Pope elected; and accordingly *Odo*, or *Otho Colonna*, a *Roman*, was propos'd, and elected on *St. Martin's Day*; whence he took the Name of *Martin V.* This Election was made with the Approbation of all the World. After this, they dispatch'd all the other Affairs that remain'd to be regulated by the Council; and, in fine, this illustrious Assembly broke up in the 47th Session, which was held the 22d of *April*, 1418.

1418.

THE Decrees of the Council were no sooner publish'd, than *Wenceslaus King of Bohemia* set about putting them in Execution against the *Hussites*; with this Intent he expressly forbid their assembling to receive the Communion under both Kinds. But most Part of the Inhabitants of *Prague* were so exasperated thereat, that, having forced the Town-House, they threw both the Burgo-Master, and those who had assisted at the publishing the Prohibition, out at the Windows; during which the rest of the People received those, who were cast into the Streets, upon Pikes and Halberds.

A religious Zeal set on Flame is attended with Consequences too well known; wherefore, 'tis unnecessary to enlarge upon the Particulars of all the Wars wherewith *Bobemia* was afflicted,
from

from that very Moment, till the Emperor was constrain'd both to grant them Peace, and Part of what was desired for Liberty of Conscience, and the Exercise of their Religion. Only we shall mention that *Sigismund*, having succeeded *Wenceslaus* in the Kingdom of *Bohemia* in 1419, and being crown'd in 1420, was oblig'd (in order to reduce these Rebels) to employ the Army he had design'd against the Turk. But he could not compass his End; and they, growing more insolent by the frequent Advantages they had gain'd over their Prince, under the Conduct of *John Zisca* their Captain, put all to Fire and Sword in such Places as would not espouse their Party; and they exercis'd enormous Barbarities and Cruelties, particularly against the Ecclesiasticks, without sparing either the Churches, or the Altars.

1419.

1420.

THESE Outrages, which continually increas'd, oblig'd the Emperor to arm the whole Empire against them; whereupon he enter'd *Bohemia* with a considerable Army, being attended with several great Princes, as the Duke of *Saxony*, the Marquis of *Brandenbourg*, and the Archbishop of *Treves*, who would accompany him in Person. Notwithstanding all these Forces, both the one and the other were defeated, more by a panick Terror, than by the Arms of the *Hussites*, whose continual Victories at last forc'd *Sigismund* to offer such honourable and advantageous Conditions to *Zisca*, that he had the Assurance to go to meet him, to conclude with him in Person the Agreement that had been propos'd to him; but *Zisca* unfortunately dy'd of the Plague on the Road. This Death made some Alteration in the Affairs of the *Hussites*; but nevertheless they still seem'd very resolute, and express'd a great deal of Zeal for the Advancement of the

1424.

SIGIS-
MUND.

Common Cause; even so far as to cover a Drum with the Skin of their deceas'd Captain, in order to march and fight, even after his Death, under his Command.

1430.

'Twas about this Time that the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, who were dependent on the Empire, degenerating from the Virtue of their Predecessors, lost a good Part of *Prussia*, whereof the *Poles* depriv'd them, after having defeated them in several Engagements. This was the Beginning of the Ruin of those Knights, in that Country, notwithstanding some Recruits which *Sigismund* continued to send them, in the midst of the great Troubles this Order was involv'd in against the *Hussites*. They had then enter'd *Silesia*, and having divided their Army into three Bodies, attack'd *Hungary*, *Poland*, and *Austria*, at the same Time, putting all to Fire and Sword; so great was their Rage against the Catholics. Pope *Adrian*, being appriz'd of their Progress, sent Orders to Cardinal *Julian*, Legate *a Latere* to *Sigismund*, to press the German Princes to enter into the *Croisade*, which had been decreed against the Hereticks. The

1431.

Legate accordingly published it anew the twenty first of *March* at *Nuremberg*, where *Sigismund* had assembled the Electors, and other Princes, both Ecclesiasticks and Seculars, most Part of whom engaged themselves therein voluntarily. And, to the End that every one might contribute proportionably, the Emperor, by their Consent, made a Regulation, which is the first Rule that was ever made for the Contributions, which every Prince or State should furnish in Money or Soldiers, not only for that present Occasion, but also for all others relating to the Empire.

ACCOR-

ACCORDING then to this Regulation, these Princes prepar'd for the War, and that with so much the more Ardor, as they were again incited theretoby new Exhortations from the same Legate, in the Name of *Eugene IV*, who succeeded after the Death of *Martin V*, who died the twentieth of *February* that same Year. Hereupon they levy'd an Army of 40,000 Horse, and as many Foot, the Command whereof was given by the Emperor to *Frederick* Marquis of *Brandenbourg*. The Legate, entring *Bohemia* with all his Troops, fell at first vigorously upon the *Hussites*; but, upon the Approach of the Enemies Army, they were seiz'd with such a panick Fear, that they betook themselves to Flight, without the Legate's being able to stop them, either by Remonstrances, or otherwise. Their Flight was so precipitated, that they abandon'd all their Baggage, and Riches, among which the Enemies found the Legate's Cross, with all his Vestments, whereof they made execrable Raillery.

THIS Expedition being so unfortunate, the Cardinal *Julian* went to *Basil*, to hold a Council, which had been ordain'd for the Affairs of the Church, in Compliance with the Decrees of the Council of *Constance*; during which *Sigismund*, having settled Things in *Bohemia* as well as lay in his Power, pass'd the *Alps*, and went to *Milan*. There he received the Iron Crown on the twenty fifth of *November*, from the Hands of the Archbishop, with the Ring, the naked Sword, the Scepter and the golden Apple. This done, he used his utmost Endeavours to accommodate the Differences between Pope *Eugene* and the Council; and having succeeded therein so far that the Pope confirm'd the Council, he bent his Thoughts on going to *Rome* to be crown'd.

1432.

SIGIS-

MUND

1433.

ACCORDINGLY, a few Days after he set out, and as he drew near, his Holiness sent out several *Roman* Cardinals, Prelates, and Noblemen, with most of the Clergy and People, to meet him; who all conducted him into the City with great Magnificence. There he was received by the Pope with great Ceremony, at the Steps of the *Vatican* Church, and admitted to kiss his Mouth and Feet, and on *Whitsunday* his Holiness crown'd him, and saluted him with the Title of Emperor *Augustus*. *Sigismund* having resided some Time at *Rome*, set out for *Ferrara*, and from thence to *Mantua*, which he erected into a Marquisate, in Favour of *John-Francis de Gonzaga*, who was Possessor thereof, and gave him for Arms those of the Empire. This done, he went to *Basil*, where the Fathers of the Council were employ'd in treating with the Deputies of the *Hussites*, and finding Means to reconcile them to the *Romish* Church. They had then assum'd the Name of *Taborites*, on Account of the City of *Tabor*, which *Zisca* had built to serve him for a Place of Refuge.

1434.

DURING these Transactions, the Emperor being inform'd that the *Hussites* were divided among themselves, and that the Barons and Nobility could not bear the Tyranny of those who call'd themselves *Taborites*, but had separated from them, resolv'd to march that Way, that he might the better take Advantage of their Division. Besides this, he found that the Council had continual Disputes with the Pope, which could not be accommodated, by Reason the Council were of Opinion that they were Superior to his Holiness in all Things, whose Thoughts were quite different: Wherefore his Majesty determin'd to return to *Germany* the Year following.

ON

ON his Arrival at *Ulm*, he received Information that the *Taborites*, who had several Months been employ'd at the Siege of *Pilsna*, which had always continued steadfast in the *Romish* Religion, had been utterly defeated by the Barons of *Bobemia*, before-mentioned, who were join'd by the Catholicks. Hereupon he took Advantage of this Juncture, to reconcile both the one and the other to himself; and he manag'd Matters so well by the Ambassadors he sent them, that they acknowledg'd him as lawful Heir to his Brother *Wenceslaus*; and being advanced as far as *Ratisbon*, where he held a general Diet of the Empire, the Deputies of the *Bohemian* States, with the Remainder of the *Taborites*, came thither and acknowledged him as their King.

HEREUPON he us'd his Interest with the Deputies of the Council, to facilitate their Reconciliation to the Church; and after various Negotiations and Disputes, he appointed an Assembly at *Iglave*, in the Diocese of *Olmütz*, where the same Deputies of the Council met, as well as the *Bohemians*. There all Things were regulated by an Act made the fifth of July 1436, which was seal'd both with the Signet of the Emperor and the Deputies, to render it more authentick. Conformable to this Act, the *Bohemians*, having protested in Presence of the Emperor and all his Court, that they would for the future be obedient to the Church of *Rome*, were absolv'd from the Excommunication, and other Censures that had been issued against them; being at the same Time introduc'd into the Church by the Deputies of the Council.

BUT the Emperor, resolving to establish a solid Peace in that Kingdom, and judging that

SIGIS-
MUND.

Ecclesiastical Revenues, which had been usurp'd during the Wars, might serve as a Pretence to disturb it, and create new Disorders, made an Agreement with the Head Noblemen upon that Account; whereupon they own'd themselves the more oblig'd to him, as the Deputies of the Council would not consent thereunto. As a farther Testimony of their Acknowledgment, they conducted him to *Prague*, where they receiv'd him magnificently, and crown'd him on the twenty fourth of *August*; after which the Barons and Deputies of the Cities did Homage, and took the Oath of Allegiance to him.

Soon after his Coronation he again began to use Violence, to oblige some of the Heads of them to abjure their Religion, which Proceeding, in some Measure, reviv'd the *Bohemians* Hatred against him; insomuch that *Sigismund*, not being able to live amongst a People whom he did not love, resolv'd at the latter End of his Life to give himself some Rest, and, in order to that, to retire to *Hungary*. But as, in his Way thither, he would go to see his Daughter who liv'd at *Znaim* in *Moravia*, he died there the ninth of *December* 1473, at the Age of seventy, full of Glory, both for his good Qualities of Mind and Body, and his great and good Actions.

1473.

He was of a fine Shape, Liberal, and Learned, a Lover of Men of Letters, and Master of several Languages; and, what is uncommon in a Sovereign Prince, a mortal Enemy to Flatterers, using ordinarily to say, That they were not only real Ravens, but were worse than them, because those Birds only pick'd out the Eyes of dead Men, whereas the Flatterers peck them out of living Men.

HE

HE was first married to *Mary* Daughter to *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, and a second Time to *Barbara-Elizabeth*, Daughter to *Herman* Count of *Cilley*, by whom he had *Elizabeth* Wife to *Albert* of *Austria*, his Successor in the Empire, and the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*.

SIGIS-
MUND.

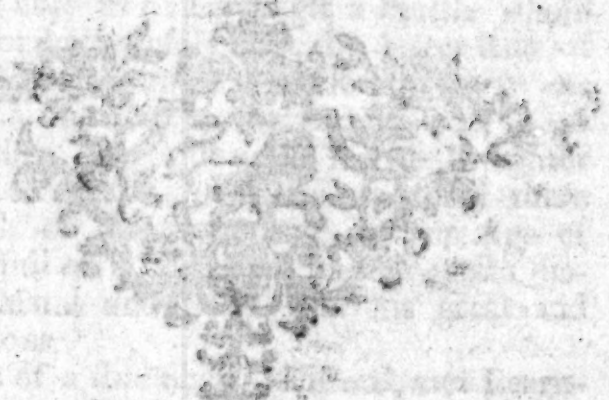
The End of the First VOLUME.



THE HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
FROM THE FIRST SETTLEMENTS
TO THE PRESENT TIME
BY JAMES M. SMITH

THE HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES
OF AMERICA
FROM THE FIRST SETTLEMENTS
TO THE PRESENT TIME
BY JAMES M. SMITH



THE HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES
OF AMERICA
FROM THE FIRST SETTLEMENTS
TO THE PRESENT TIME
BY JAMES M. SMITH

INDEX

INDEX of the FIRST VOLUME.

A

- A** **DRIAN I**, Pope; his Reception of *Charlemagne*, 18, 23. His Death, 38.
- Adrian IV*, elected Pope, 225. His Interview with the Emperor *Frederick I*, 226. Embroiled with the Emperor, 227. Another Broil, 229. The Pope's Death, *ibid*.
- Adolphus of Nassau* chosen Emperor, exclusive of *Albert of Austria*, 313. His Manner of governing, 314. A League between this Emperor and the King of *England* against *France*, *ibid*. *Albert of Austria* his Competitor, 316. He is vanquish'd in a Battle, and loses his Life, 317.
- Albert I*, Duke of *Austria*, elected Emperor during the Life of *Adolphus*, 316. Gives *Adolphus* Battle, and gains it, where *Adolphus* is kill'd, 317. Nam'd the *One-ey'd*, *ibid*. Is confirm'd in the Empire by a Diet, 318. Takes Precautions with the King of *France* against the Artifices of *Rome*, 319. Interview between these two Princes, *ibid*. Causes his Wife to be crown'd, *ibid*. Resumes the Rights belonging to the Empire, *ibid*. By his ill Usage obliges the *Swiss* to recover their Liberty, 320. Resolves to make himself Master of *Bobemia*, *ibid*. His too great Desire of aggrandizing his Children costs him his Life, 322. &c.
- Alexander IV*, chosen Pope, 229. The Emperor *Frederick I*, disputes his Election, 230. Excommunicates the Emperor, *ibid*. Takes Refuge in *France*, 231. Returns into *Italy*, 233. Is reconcil'd to the Emperor, 235. His Death, 241.
- Alphonso King of Castile*, elected Emperor, 295. His Death, 296.
- Ambassadors, Saracens*, entertain'd by *Lewis the Debonnair*, 63.
- Anabaptists*, Outrages of those *Hereticks* against the *Catholicks*, 379. &c. They choose a Taylor King, *ibid*.
- Apulia*, its King put to the Ban of the Empire, 332.
- Arnold*, Duke of *Lombardy*, informs *Charlemagne* of the Conspiracy form'd against him by his Son *Pepin*, 36.
- Arnold, Carloman's Son*, attains the Empire, 98. Utterly routs the *Normans*, 99. His Death, 100.
- Avarians* conquered by *Charlemagne*, notwithstanding the Strength of their Frontiers, 32. &c.
- Augustus Caesar* made Emperor, &c.

The INDEX.

B

BAMBERG erected into a Bishoprick, 140.
Beranger conquered by *Otto I*, 123. That Emperor's Liberality to him, *ibid.* Revolts soon after, 124. Condemn'd to perpetual Imprisonment, 125.
Bernard, King of *Italy*, revolts against the Emperor *Lewis* the *Debonnair*, and is punish'd, 63, 64.
Bishops obliged to submit to their Sovereigns, as well as other Subjects, 50.
Bobemia, that Duchy erected into a Kingdom, 228. Troubles in that Kingdom, 321.
Boniface VIII, Pope, confirms the Emperor *Albert's* Election, and offers him the Crown of *France*, 318. His imperious Usage of the *French King*, 325, &c.
Bull, the golden one, Institution and Publication of this Bull, 352.

C

CALISTUS II, chosen Pope, 205. His Negotiations for the Re-union of the Church and Empire, *ibid.* Arms against *Gregory* his Competitor, 206. His Death, 209.
Carloman, Son to *Lewis* King of *Germany*, Sir-nam'd the *Germanick*, divides the Empire with *Lewis* and *Charles* his Brother, 93. Disputes the Empire with *Lewis III*, Sirnam'd the *Stammerer*, 94. Proclaim'd Emperor at *Rome*, *ibid.* His Death, *ibid.*
Celestine III, elected Pope, instead of *Clement III*, 254. Circumstances observ'd by him at the

Coronation of the Emperor *Henry VI*, *ibid.* He confirms the *Teutonic Order*, 249.
Charlemagne attains the Empire of the West, 11. His *Encomium*, 56. His Birth, 12. A Prodigy at his Birth, *ibid.* His Conquests, 13, &c. Subdues the *Saxons*, 20, &c. His Expedition into *Italy*, 18. His Journey to *Rome*, and his Actions there, *ibid.* Besieges and takes *Pavia*, 19. The Reasons that induced this Prince to make War upon the *Saxons*, 21. He takes *Lampeluna*, 23. His second Tour into *Italy*, *ibid.* Chastises the *Saxons*, 24, &c. His third *Italian Expedition*, 28. Refuses to give his Daughter in Marriage to the Emperor of *Constantinople*, 29. The *Romans* pay him Tribute, *ibid.* Reduces *Tassilon* Duke of *Beveria* to his Duty, *ibid.* His Clemency to that Duke, 30. Subdues the *Slavonians*, *ibid.* Reduces the *Huns*, 31. The Eastern Emperor's Defeat by *Charlemagne*, 32. He reduces the *Avarians*, *ibid.* &c. He renders the Designs of the King of *Denmark* abortive, 35. *Pepin* his Son conspires against him, 36. His Sovereignty over *Rome*, 38. His Reception at *Rome* by Pope *Leo III*, 40. Is crown'd Emperor of the West, *ibid.* His Conquests, 42. His Right to the Empire, 43. He confirms the Gift made to the Pope by his Father *Pepin*, 53. He makes his Son his Associate in the Empire, 54. His Death, 55.
Charles, King of *France*, arms against his Brother *Lothaire*, and why, 87. Is victorious, 88.
Charles

The INDEX.

- Charles II*, surnam'd the *Bald*, usurps the Empire from his elder Brother, 92. His Death, 94. Is the first to whom the Pope gives the Name of *Most Christian*, *ibid.*
- Charles III*, call'd the *Gross*, is crown'd Emperor, 96. His Greatness but of short Continuance, *ibid.* His Misfortunes, 97. His Death, *ibid.*
- Charles the Simple*, King of *France*, overcome by the Emperor *Henry I*, 115.
- Charles Duke of Anjou*, crown'd at *Rome*, with *Beatrice* his Wife, by Pope *Clement*, 299. His Victory over *Conradin Duke of Suabia*, 300.
- Charles IV*, Emperor, 348. Makes himself acknowledg'd Emperor, 349. Builds the City of *Prague*, *ibid.* Is crown'd in *Germany*, 351. And at *Rome*, *ibid.* Endeavours to appease the Troubles in *Germany*, *ibid.* Institutes the *Golden Bull*, 352. Increases his Patrimonial Dominions, 354. Sells Privileges to the Cities and States, *ibid.* Institutes the University of *Prague*, 355. Enters into a League against the Tyrant of *Milan*, *ibid.* Gives up the Province of *Dauphine* to *France*, 356. Has his Son elected King of the *Romans*, 357. His Death, *ibid.*
- Clement III*, chosen Pope in the Diet of *Brescia*, in the Room of *Gregory VII*, 177.
- Clement V*, does the King an ill Office, 326. Takes Precautions against the Emperor's Expedition into *Italy*, 330. Embroils himself with the Emperor, 332.
- Conrad I*, elected Emperor, 112. Is cross'd, 113. Defeats *Arnold Duke of Bavaria*, *ibid.* His Death, *ibid.*
- Conrad II*, nam'd the *Salique*, elected Emperor, 142. Is crown'd at *Rome*, 143. His Wars, *ibid.* His Death, 145.
- Conrad III*, elected and crown'd Emperor, 216. A Revolt against him in *Apulia*, 217. His Voyage to the *Holy-Land*, 221. His Death, 222.
- Conrad IV*, succeeds his Father *Frederick II*, 289. He escapes a great Danger, *ibid.* His Expedition into *Italy* where he dies, 290.
- Constantine*, Son to *Constantine the Great*, assumes the Title of Emperor of the West, and re-unites the two Empires in his own Person, 9.
- Constantine* was the first Christian Emperor, 6. The Reason of his Conversion, *ibid.* Conquers *Maxentius*, 7. Transfers the Seat of the Empire from *Rome* to *Constantinople*, *ibid.* Divides the Empire into two Parts, call'd the Eastern and Western Empires, 8. His Death, *ibid.*
- Croisade of Frederick II*, to the *Holy-Land*, 276. *Croisade* against the *Hussites*, 384.

D

DIDIER surrenders himself to *Charlemagne*, 19. Diet of *Aix la Chapelle*, with the Reason thereof, 81. Diet of *Goslar* to depose Pope *Gregory VII*, 172. Diet of *Worms* call'd by *Frederick I*, 226. The Sentence pronounced there against some *German Princes* that had revolted, *ibid.*

Duke,

The INDEX.

Duke, the Signification of that Word, 14.

E

EAGLE, the Time when the Romans took the Eagle for their Ensign, 3, &c.

Elizabeth, of *Bohemia*, clears herself of the Suspicion that prevented the Accomplishment of her Marriage with Count *John* of *Luxembourg*, 327.

Emperor, what that Word signify'd at the Beginning, 4. The fatal End of most of the Heathen Emperors, 6. Emperors of *Italy*, 117. &c.

Empire of *Germany*, the Time when it was establish'd, and by whom, 7, &c. Why transferr'd to *Constantinople*, *ibid.* Re-union of the Empire under *Constantine*, 9. Partition of the Empire under *Theodosius* the Great, 9, 10. End of the Eastern Empire, 11. The Empire confin'd to the West under *Charlemagne*, *ibid.* The Reason why it was hereditary in *Charlemagne's* Family, 12. Is transferr'd from *France* to the *Germans* in the Person of *Conrad* I, 111. Another Division and Decay of the Empire, 255. Is refus'd by *St. Lewis*, 279. New Division of the Empire, 293. Disorders happen in the Empire, 333, 351, &c.

Eugene II, elected Pope in the Room of *Paschal*, 67. His Death, 70.

F

FRANKFORT, the Right of that City in opening its Gates to the Emperors, 349, 350.

Frederick I, elected Emperor, 222.

Crowns the King of *Denmark* with his own Hand, 223. Is crown'd at *Rome* by Proxy, *ibid.*

Terminates the Differences between the Princes of the Empire, *ibid.* His Dispute with the Pope accommodated, 224.

Italy revolts against him, 225.

His Interview with the Pope, 226. He conducts the Pope to

Rome, and is crown'd there, *ibid.* His Return to *Germany*,

ibid. Another Broil between him and the Pope, 227. His second Expedition into *Italy*, 229.

Assembles a Council to support the Election of Pope *Viktor*, 230. Is excommunicated by *Alexander*, 231. Ravages the *Milaneze*, 232. His Return to *Germany*,

ibid. His third Expedition into *Italy*, 233. A League enter'd into by all *Italy* against him, *ibid.* His fourth Expedition into *Italy*, 234. He makes

Peace with Pope *Alexander* III, *ibid.* Ratification of this Peace by him and the Pope in Person, 238.

His Return to *Germany*, 240. His fifth Expedition into *Italy*, 241. His Return to *Germany*,

242. He enters into a *Croisade* for the *Holy-Land*, and divides his Territories amongst his Children, *ibid.* His Departure for that Expedition, 243.

His Death, and Encomium, *ibid.*

Frederick II, declared Emperor under the Tuition of *Philip*, by Part of the *German* Princes, the others having elected *Otto*, 255.

Is confirm'd Emperor, 268. Is crown'd at *Rome*, *ibid.* Is excommunicated, 270. His Reconciliation with the Pope, 271.

His Marriage, *ibid.* He enters

upon

The INDEX

upon a *Croisade* for the *Holy-Land*, 272. His quick Return incenses the Pope, 273. He is again excommunicated, *ibid.* He embarks again for *Jerusalem*, *ibid.* His Return, 274. He makes War with the Pope, *ibid.* His Reconciliation with the Pope, who takes off his Excommunication, 275. His Son *Henry* convicted of Rebellion, 276. He marries again, *ib.* Confines *Henry* in a Prison, 277. Causes *Conrad* his second Son to be elected King of the *Romans*, 278. His Progress in *Italy*, *ibid.* He is again excommunicated by the Pope, 279. Another Excommunication issued against him by another Pope in the Council of *Lyons*, 282. Lays siege to *Parma* in vain, 284. They attempt to poison him, 285. His Camp is pillag'd 286. Takes Refuge at *Naples*, 287. Divides his Territories, 288. His Death, *ibid.*

Frederick III, chosen Emperor at the same Time with *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, 334. Is overcome, and taken Prisoner by his Competitor, 335.

G

GELASIUS II, created Pope, 204. His Death, 205. Genealogy of the *French* Emperors, 106, &c.

Godefrid, King of *Denmark*, his Design proves abortive, 35.

Goths, the short Duration of their Reign, 10.

Gregory IV, elected Pope, and is confirm'd by the Emperor, 70. Offers himself as Mediator to reconcile the Differences between *Lewis* the *Debonair* and his Sons, 75.

Gregory VII, elected Pope without the Emperor's Consent, but nevertheless confirm'd by him, 170. He excommunicates several Members of the Empire, 171. Cites the Emperor *Henry* the Great to *Rome*, 172. Excommunicates him, 176. His Death, 179. *Gregory IX*, succeeds *Honorius*, 272. Excommunicates the Emperor, 273. Is reconcil'd to him, 275. Excommunicates him again, 279. His Death, 280.

Guelphs and *Gibelins*, the Rise of those Names, 218. Time when those two Factions first discover'd themselves, 273, 280.

Gunther elected Emperor in Concurrence with *Charles IV*, 349. Is poison'd, 350.

H

HENRY I, Duke of *Saxony*, chosen Emperor, 114. Gains a signal Victory over the *Hungarians*, *ibid.* And over *Charles* the Simple, 115. His Orders for the Subsistence of his Troops, *ibid.* Fortifies the Towns, and exercises the Nobility, 116. His Death and Encomium. *ibid.*

Henry II, Duke of *Bavaria*, elected Emperor, preferably to his Competitors, 139. Is crown'd at *Milan*, 140. His Journey into *Hungary* to induce Duke *Stephen* to turn Christian, *ibid.* His Wars with several Princes, 141. His Interview with *Robert* King of *France*, *ibid.* His Death, *ibid.*

Henry III, surnam'd the Black, elected Emperor, 145. His Wars, *ib.* Deposes the King of *Hungary*, *ib.* His Expedition into *Italy*, 147. Names *Clement II*, Pope, of

The INDEX

of his own Authority, 148. He confirms the *Romans* Election of *Vistor* II, 149. Declares his Son King of the *Romans*, 150. His Death, *ibid.*

Henry IV. Sir-nam'd the *Great*, attains the Empire, 151. Is carried away, 152. Establishes Peace in his own Dominions, 153. The Reason why the *Saxons* declare War against him, *ibid.* The States combine against him, 154. He prepares to resist them, 155. He agrees with the Rebels, 156. Another Insurrection, where he offers to fight a Duel, 157. Fortune contrary to this Prince, 159. A new Rebellion of the *Saxons* against him, 161. The Conditions of Peace he makes with them, 164. His Dispute with the Court of *Rome* about Investitures, 165. He confirms *Pope Gregory VII's* Election, 169. Is summon'd to *Rome* by that Pope; and he, on the other Hand, deposes him in a Diet, 172. The Pope excommunicates him, *ibid.* Indignities, to which he submits, to satisfy that Pontif, 173. Is excommunicated again, and depriv'd of the Imperial Dignity, 176. Goes into *Italy*, and takes *Rome* by Assault, 178. His Coronation, 179. His Son *Conrad* rebels against him, 182. Causes *Henry* his second Son to be declared King of the *Romans*, 183. Who revolts against him, 185. He is depos'd 187. His Poverty, 189. His Clemency, 190. His Death, 191. His Entomium, *ibid.*

Henry V. proclaim'd Emperor during his Father's Life, 187. Is thunderstruck, 194. His Avarice, *ibid.* Makes War against

the *Poles*, and is defeated, 195. His Dispute with the Pope about Investitures, 197. His Expedition into *Italy*, *ibid.* His bad Reception at *Rome*, 198. Conditions of the Agreement between him and the Pope, 199, &c. His Coronation, *ibid.* Gives the Emperor his Father Burial, 201. His second Expedition to *Rome*, 202. His Coronation, 204. Creates a Pope, *ibid.* Is excommunicated at the Council of *Rheims*, 206. Makes an Agreement with the Pope, 207. Is absolv'd from his Excommunication, 208. Reduces the Rebels, 210. His Death, *ibid.*

Henry VI. elected Emperor in the Room of his Father *Frederick I*, 244. Is crown'd at *Rome* by the Pope, *ibid.* *Tancred*, natural Son to *William* King of *Naples* and *Sicily*, usurps those two Kingdoms from him, 245. He confirms the *Teutonic Order*, 248. His Cruelty, 250. His Precaution on the Lying in of the Empress his Consort, 251. Causes his Son to be chosen King of the *Romans*, *ibid.* His Death, 252.

Henry VII. elected Emperor, 326. His Coronation, 327. Marries his Son to the Heiress of *Bohemia*, 328. Puts the Count *de Wirtemberg* to the Ban of the Empire, *ibid.* Goes to *Italy* with Design to re-establish the Rights and Authority of the Empire, 329. Reduces most of the Cities of *Italy*, as well as *Rome* it self, where he is crown'd, 331. Puts the King of *Apulia* to the Ban of the Empire, 332. Embroils himself with the Pope, *ibid.* His Expedition against the King of *Naples*, and his Death, *ibid.*

Henry

The INDEX.

Henry de Walpot elected Great Master of the Teutonic Order, 249.

Henry, Landgrave of *Thuringia*, elected King of the *Romans*, 283. Gains a Battle over the Emperor *Conrad IV*, 284.

Hildebrand, the Monk, intermeddles in the Papal Affairs, 148. And endeavours to deprive the Emperors of the Right of Investitures, 165, &c.

Honorius III, succeeds Pope *Innocent III*, 268. Excommunicates the Emperor *Frederick II*, 270. Is reconcil'd to him, 271. His Death, 272.

Hungary erected into a Kingdom, 140. Broils in this Kingdom, 368.

Hus, Rise of the Schism of *John Hus*, 361. A Council call'd to destroy it, 378. Troubles that ensued thereupon, 379. This Heretick condemn'd to be burnt, 380.

Hussites, an Order issued against them, 382. Violences exercis'd by these Hereticks against the Ecclesiasticks and Catholics, *ibid.* They are reconcil'd to the Church, 387.

I

JEROME of *Prague*, a Heretick, condemn'd to be burnt, 311.

Incumbents, their Duty to submit to their Sovereigns, 50.

Innocent III, Pope, who succeeded *Celestine*, uses his utmost Efforts to deprive the House of *Suabia* of the Empire, 253. Foment Divisions in *Germany*, 255. U-surps the Imperial Territories, 264. Excommunicates the Emperor, *ibid.*

Innocent IV, inherits his Predecessor's Hatred against the Emperor, 281. The Reason of his Broils with the Emperor, *ibid.* Takes Refuge at *Lyons*, where he assembles a Council, to which he summons the Emperor, 282. The Emperor excommunicated there, *ibid.*

Interregnum in the Empire, 297. Disorders that happen in another *Interregnum*, 333.

Investitures, Origin of the Emperor's Right to invest or appoint Bishops, 50. Definition of Investitures at the Beginning, 175. By whom they were given, *ibid.* Difference between the Emperor *Henry V*, and the Pope, on Account of Investitures, 197. Dispute about Investitures ended under Pope *Calistus II*, 208.

John XXII, that Pope's pretended Right over the Government of the Emperors, and the Administration of the Affairs of the Empire, 337. Excommunicates the Emperor, 338. His Death, 343.

Julius Caesar attains the Empire, 4. His Death, 5. The Reason, and Accomplices, of his Death, *ibid.*

K

KING of the *Romans*, Conditions settled for their Election. *Vid.* Vol. II.

D

LABARUM, Signification of this Word, 7.

Leo III, elected Pope instead of *Adrian I*, 38. Takes Refuge with *Charlemagne*. His Clemency to his Accusers, 40. His Death, 62.

The INDEX.

Leo VIII., this Pope's famous Decree, whereby he acknowledg'd *Otto I.*, as Emperor of the Romans, and Sovereign, and King of Italy, 126.

Lewis, Son to *Charlemagne*, is made Associate in the Empire with his Father, 54. Is proclaimed Emperor under the Name of *Lewis the Debonnair*, 55. Takes Possession of the Empire, 59. Makes several Regulations in the Empire, 61. Is crown'd at *Rheims* by Pope *Stephen V.*, 62. Treats the *Saracen* Ambassadors magnificently, 63. Punishes the Treason of *Bernard* King of Italy, *ibid.* Defeats *Mortmen* Duke of *Brittany*, 64. He is reconcil'd to his Brothers, 65. His Son's revolt, 71, &c. Is made Prisoner, and afterwards releas'd 73. He pardons his Sons, *ibid.* They unite and make War against him jointly, 75. He surrenders himself to them in their Camp, 76. They canton out the Imperial Territories into three Parts, *ibid.* He is ill us'd by his Son *Lotbair*, 77. Is deliver'd from Prison, and re-advanc'd to the Throne by his two Sons *Lewis* and *Pepin*, 78, &c. Pardons *Lotbair*, 80. Punishes the Rebels, 81. Divides his Territories, 82. Agrees with his Son *Lewis* King of *Bavaria*, *ibid.* And with *Lotbair*, 83. The last Division of this Emperor's Dominions, *ibid.* His Death, 85.

Lewis, second Son to *Lewis the Debonnair*, is made King of *Bavaria* by his Father, 63. Provinces added to his Kingdom, 68. He joins his Brothers, 75. Delivers and re-establishes his Father, 78. Arms against his

Brother *Lotbair*, 87. Is defeated, *ibid.* Is victorious in his Turn, 88.

Lewis II., eldest Son to *Lotbair I.*, is proclaim'd Emperor, 90. His great Qualities, *ibid.* Reduces *Adalgises* Duke of *Benvento* to an Agreement, *ibid.* His Death, 91.

Lewis, King of *Germany*, his Death, 93.

Lewis III. Sir-nam'd the *Stammerer*, crown'd Emperor, 94. *Carloman* disputes the Empire with him, 95. His Death, *ibid.*

Lewis IV., Son to the Emperor *Arnold*, elected Emperor, 100. Is conquer'd by the *Hungarians*, and oblig'd to pay them Tribute, 101. Dies with Sorrow, 102.

Lewis V., of *Bavaria*, Emperor, Competitor with *Frederick III.*, 334. Defeats and takes *Frederick* Prisoner, 335. Reigns alone, 336. Is excommunicated by the Pope, 338. His Expedition into Italy, 340. Causes himself to be crown'd at *Rome*, 341. Creates a Pope by the Name of *Nicolas V.*, 342. His Return to *Germany*, 343. His Victory over the King of *Bohemia*, 344. Takes off the Pope's Interdict, 345. His Advantages over *Charles* of *Luxembourg* his Competitor, 347. His Death, *ibid.*

Lindavir, Duke of *Croatia* defeats Part of *Lewis the Debonnair's* Army by Treason, 65. Is conquer'd, and oblig'd to save himself in a Castle where he dies, 66.

Lotbair, Son to *Lewis the Debonnair*, declar'd Co-regent of the Empire by his Father, 63. His Marriage with *Hermingarde*, Daughter

The INDEX.

Daughter to Count *Hugh*, 64. Causes himself to be crown'd Emperor, 66. Is declar'd Succesor to *Lewis the Debonnair*, 68. Takes Possession of the Government, 73. He joins with his Brothers to make War upon his Father, 74. Misuses his Father, 77. Is reconcil'd to his Father, who pardons him, 80. The Reason why he revolts again, 82. Agrees with his Father, 83. Causes himself to be acknowledg'd Emperor, under the Name of *Lothaire I.*, and seizes on his Father's Dominions, 85. Arms against his Brothers, 87. Is defeated, and escapes, 88. Agreement between him and his two Brothers, 89. Disposes of his Dominions in Favour of his Children, *ibid.* Turns Monk, and dies, *ibid.*

Lothaire II., elected and crown'd Emperor, 212. Pays great Honours to the Pope, 213. Goes into *Italy* to re-establish Pope *Innocent II.*, 214. Introduces the Roman Law into the Empire, *ibid.* His second Expedition into *Italy*, 215. His Death, *ibid.* *Luitgard* vanquish'd and condemned to Death by *Charles-magne*, 22.

M

MAGNENTIUS, the Infidelity and Death of the Tyrant, 9.

Marquiss, Signification of that Word, 14.

Maxentius overcome by *Constantine*, 7.

Michael, Emperor of *Constantinople*, sends Ambassadors to *Lewis the Debonnair*, 70. His Death, 71.

Milan, that City taken and ruin'd by *Frederick I.*, 232.

Mortality in *France* and *Germany* in the Year 829, 67.

Mortman, Duke of *Brittany*, defeated by *Lewis the Debonnair*, 64.

N

NIEDERMUNSTER, the Antiquity of that Abbey, 71.

Nicolas V., created Pope by the Emperor, 342.

Normans wage War with *France* under *Charles the Gross*, 97. Conquer'd by the Emperor *Arnold*, 99.

O

OSTROGOTHS, their Government but of short Continuance, 10.

Otho, Duke of *Saxony*, refuses the Empire, 112.

Otho I., call'd the Great, elected Emperor, 119. His Coronation, 120. His Wars against *Boleslaus*, Usurper of the Duchy of *Bohemia*, 121. Against *Henry* his Brother, 122. Goes into *Italy*, 123. Marries *Alix* Widow to *Lothaire* King of *Italy*, *ibid.* His Generosity to *Beranger*, *ibid.* His Son *Luitolf* revolts against him, *ibid.* He pardons him, 124. He goes to *Rome*, where he is crown'd Emperor by Pope *John XII.*, *ibid.* He assembles a Council at *Rome*, at which he presides, 125. Is acknowledg'd Sovereign of *Italy*, 126. Besieges and takes *Rome*, 127. Revenges himself of the Perfidy of *Nicephorus* Emperor

[The INDEX.

of Constantinople, 129. His Piety, *ibid.* His Death, 130.

Otho II, succeeds his Father, 130. Reduces Henry of Bavaria to Reason, who would dispute the Empire with him, *ibid.* Gives the Duchy of Lorraine to Charles, Brother to Lothaire King of France, 131. Is taken by Pyrates, 132. Defeats the Saracens in Italy, *ibid.* Causes the Throats of divers Romans to be cut at an Entertainment, *ibid.* By this Action acquires the Name of Bloody, *ibid.* His Death, 133.

Otho III, succeeds his Father Otho II, altho' an Infant, 133. His Expedition to Rome, 135. Is crown'd there by the Pope, *ibid.* Causes the Empress his Wife to be burnt, 136. His second Expedition into Italy, where he is poison'd, 138. His Encomium, 139.

Otho IV, Duke of Saxony, elected Emperor by several German Princes, 254. His Advantages over Philip, Regent of the Empire for Frederick II, 255. His second Coronation, *ibid.* Disgraces that befall him, 256. His Wager with the King of France, 261. Manages the Ecclesiasticks, 262. His Expedition to Italy, 263. His Coronation at Rome, *ibid.* His Feint to reside at Milan, 264. Retakes what the Pope had usurp'd, *ibid.* Is excommunicated by the Pope, *ibid.* Makes War with Philip Augustus King of France, 266. Is overcome, *ibid.* His Death, 267.

Ottocarus, King of Bohemia, opposes the Election of the Emperor Rodolphus, 266. Is de-

clared a Rebel to the Empire, *ibid.* Is kill'd in a Battle against the Emperor, 308.

P

PASCHAL I, elected Pope in the Room of Stephen, 62. His Incroachment upon the Imperial Rights, 66. His Death, 67.

Paschal II, deprives the Emperor of the Investitures, 194, 202. His Death, 204.

Pepin, King, Father to Charlemagne and Carloman, divides his Dominions between them, 12.

Pepin, Son to Lewis the Debonnair, made King of Aquitain, and sent by the Emperor his Father against the Saracens, 69. His Revolt, 72. The Emperor pardons him, 73. He escapes from the Prison where his Father had confin'd him, and takes Refuge in Gascony, 74. He joins Lothaire and Lewis to make War against his Father, 75. He delivers and re-establishes his Father by the Assistance of his Brother Lewis, 78. His Death, 82.

Philip declared Regent of the Empire, and Guardian to Frederick II, 253. Elected King of the Romans, 255. Excommunicated by the Pope, *ibid.* The Success of his Arms, *ibid.* His second Coronation, 256. His last Efforts against Otho, 257. Remains Master of the Empire, *ibid.* Is reconcil'd to the Pope, 258. And to Otho, *ibid.* His Death, *ibid.* His Encomium, 259.

Philip the Fair, King of France, aspires to the Empire, 324.

Popes,

The INDEX

Popes, Proofs that it was not in their Power to confer the Empire, 43. They never had any Right to give away Crowns, 45. Definition and Extent of the Pope's Authority, *ibid.* &c. Upon what Foundation some maintain that the Popes have a Right to confer the Empire, 47. Explication of this Gift, 49. The Multiplicity of Popes disturbs the Church, 379. *Prodigies* in the Air, 70.

R

REGALIA, Definition of the Rights of the *Regalia*, 59. Difference between the *Regalia*, and the Rights of the Prerogative, *ibid.* &c.

Reisinger, Domestick to Henry IV, carry'd away by the Devil, 159. *Richard*, of England, elected Emperor, 294. His Death, 296.

Robert, chosen Emperor, 364. Endeavours to heal the Breaches in the Empire, 365. The Reason of his going into Italy, *ibid.* Returns to Germany, where he dies, 366.

Rodolpbur, Duke of *Suabia*, elected Emperor, 175. Crown'd by the Pope, 176. His Defeat and Death, 177. &c.

Rodolpbur of Hapsbourg, surnam'd the *Merciful*, chosen Emperor, 303. His singular Piety, 302. His Coronation, 304. He re-establishes Peace in Germany, 305. His Election disapprov'd by *Ottocarus* King of *Bobemia*, 306. Conquers *Austria*, 307. Defeats *Ottocarus*, who is kill'd in Battle, 308. He sells the Privileges to the Cities which they enjoy at Present, 349. Or-

ders the *German* Tongue to be us'd in the Empire, *ibid.* Would have secured the Empire to his Son, but is oppos'd by the States, *ibid.* He foretels his own Death, 310. His Death and Encomium, *ibid.* His free Manner, *ibid.* His Sagacity in administering Justice, 312. His Modesty in his Dress, 313.

Romans erect themselves into a Commonwealth, under the Government of two Consuls, 2. How advantageous this Government was to them, *ibid.* Reasons why they have no Right to confer the Empire, 43. The Opinion of those who maintain the contrary, and upon what founded, 47. They take an Oath never to elect any but a *German* Prince Emperor, 128.

Rome besieg'd and taken by *Otho* I, 127.

Romulus, when he had laid the Foundation of the *Roman* Empire, 2.

S

SAXONS overcome by *Charlemagne*, 17, 20. Conquer *Charlemagne's* Army in their Turn, under the Command of *Adalgises* and *Geilon*, 24. Agreement of the Saxons with *Charlemagne*, and their Conversion to the Faith, 27. They revolt against the Emperor *Henry* IV, 153, 161, &c. 177. *Schism*, about the Election of a Pope, 229.

Sigismund, Broils in Hungary during his Minority, 368. A strange Outrage committed by the Intendant of *Croatia* upon his Queen and Mother-in-law, 370. * *Marches*

THE INDEX.

Marches into Hungary against the Rebels, 371. His Wife de-liver'd to him, *ibid.* Is crown'd King of Hungary, *ibid.* Punishes the Parricide committed on his Mother-in-Law, 372. His Con-cern for the Death of his Queen drives him on to ill Counsels, *ib.* Is overcome by *Rajaket*, 374. His Debauches oblige his Sub-jects to confine him, *ibid.* His Address in getting his Liberty, *ibid.* Arms and returns to Hun-gary, 375. Is elected Emperor by Part of the Electors, *ibid.* Sells the Electorate of *Branden-bourg*, 376. Calls a Council to procure the Peace of the Church, and extirpate the Schism of *John Hus*, 377. Visits the King of France, 381. Receives the Iron Crown at *Milan*, 385. Is crown'd by the Pope, *ib.* His Return to Germany, 386. Is crown'd in *Bohemia*, 388. His Death and Encomium, *ibid.*
Stephen V, chosen Pope in the Place of *Leo III*, 62. His Death, *ibid.*
Swiss begin to recover their Li-berty, 320.
Synods held for the Church Dis-cipline, 55.

T

TANCRED makes him-self Master of the King-doms of *Naples* and *Sicily*, 245.

Tabarists. Vide *Hussites*.
Teutonic, Institution of that Or-der, 246. Its Statutes, 248. The Number of its Knights at the Beginning, 249. Decay of this Order, 384.
Theodosius the Great divides the Empire, 9.
Triumvirate, by who form'd, 5.
Turks, Progress of these Infidels in Hungary, 374.

V

VICTOR IV, chosen Pope, 229. The Emperor sup-ports his Election, 230.

W

WENCESLAUS, Em-peror and King of *Bo-hemia*, 358. His All Qualities, 359. The States take Notice of his Extravagancies, 360. His Debauches, 361. Is put in Pri-son, *ibid.* Escapes, *ibid.* Sells the Rights of the Empire, 362. Is deposed, 363. His Death, 364.
Wilhelmachus, Tragical End of this Duke of *Brittany*, 67.
William, Count of *Holland*, chosen Emperor, 291. His Misfortunes, and Death, 292.
Wurtemberg, the Count of that Name, put to the Ban of the Em-pire, 328.

FINIS

